



教您亲子互动英语 构建孩子双语思维

## 两棵树 教您亲子互动英语 构建孩子双语思维

	群系	名称	时间	形式内容	准入条件
QQ	两棵树 双语阅读群 (群号: 461093213)	双语习得 日常交流与答疑	-	-	无
		赫爸讲牛津 阅读树	周一、三、五 (晚8:30)	如何为孩子讲牛津阅读树。赫爸文字授课(语音辅助),学员发语音或文字回答。全英文交流。	无
	两棵树 亲子实践群 (群号: 94610538)	每日一练	周一到周五	英文绘本、国学经典朗读。每日更新。家长(或带孩子)发语音朗读,双语共同进步。	无
		We Show	周二 (晚8:30)	主题亲子英文会话,现场提问互动交流,Show出你的精彩。全英文交流。	报名参加 (每组限10人)
	两棵树 小课堂 (群号: 289757721)	赫爸讲绘本	半月一次	如何为孩子讲经典绘本,包括Let's read and find out science等科学绘本。赫爸文字授课(语音辅助),学员发语音或文字回答。全英文交流。	限条件参加。督促家长学习,不做懒父母。
		大家谈	不定时	邀请各领域的牛爸牛妈谈教育,谈如何为孩子引导国学、科学、历史、数学、哲学等学科知识,提升家长教育格局。	加入方式:“赫爸牛津阅读树课”半月内交5次作业者可申请加入,半月内不足3次者将被移出
微信	微信公众号	liangkeshu2015	赫赫爸双语育儿经验分享,牛津阅读树亲子阅读互动及拓展方法,育儿专题英语推送,让你和孩子用英语有话可讲!0到12岁各阶段亲子英语启蒙方法、资源、路线;手把手教你与孩子进行原版绘本阅读、互动、游戏。		
	赫爸微信号	seaview2008			



# 声明

此PDF为两棵树网友为方便个人学习，根据台湾广厦出版集团出版发行的《美国家庭亲子英语》一书所收录文字，版权归该书原版权方所有，以下内容严禁用于一切商业目的，请于下载后24小时内删除，如有需要，请购买实体书使用！

## 爸妈最常使用的50句英文

Time to wake up!	该起床了！
Good morning!	早安
Did you sleep well?	睡得好吗？
come and eat your breakfast.	快来吃早餐吧。
Don't be picky about your food.	不要挑食。
Wash your face and brush your teeth.	洗脸刷牙。
Daddy is leaving. Say goodbye.	爸爸要出门了，说再见。
Let's get dressed.	来穿衣服吧。
What do you want to wear today?	今天你想穿什么呢？
Let me comb your hair.	我来帮你梳头。
Did you put some lotion on your face?	你的脸上擦乳液了吗？
Hurry up.Honey!You'll be late.	快点，宝贝！要迟到了。
Here's the elevator.Let's get in.	电梯来了。我们进去吧。
Push button one.	按一楼。
Let's get out.	我们出去吧。
Have a nice day.	祝你有个美好的一天。
Watch out for cars.	小心车子。
How was school today?	今天学校如何？
Are you hungry?	你饿了吗？
Go wash your hands.	去洗手。
Let's have a snack.	我们吃点心吧。
Do you want some more?	还想要多吃点吗？
Recess is over!	休息时间结束了。
It's time to study!	该学习了。
Sit properly.	坐好。
Do you have any homework?	你有作业吗？
Are you done with your homework?	你作业做完了吗？
Did you do well on your test?	考试考得好吗？
What score did you get on the test?	你考了几分？
Good job!	你做得很好！
Move back from the TV.	从电视那里往后退。
Turn off the TV now.	现在关掉电视。
Who made such a mess?	是谁弄得这么乱？
Put your toys away.	把你的玩具收拾好。
Are you sick?	你不舒服吗？



Do you want to pee/poop?  
Do you want a piggy-back ride?  
Do you want me to hold you?  
Give me a kiss!  
Don't fight with your little brother/sister.  
Don't hit your brother/sister.  
Don't bother your sister.  
Play nicely with your friends.  
Stop whining.  
Don't talk back!  
I'm sorry.Let's make up.  
Let me read you a story.  
It's time to go to bed.  
Good night!Sweet dreams!  
Don't forget that I love you.

你要尿尿/便便吗?  
要我背你吗?  
要我抱你吗?  
亲一下!  
不要跟弟弟/妹妹打架。  
不可以打弟弟/妹妹。  
不要打扰你的妹妹。  
要跟朋友好好玩。  
不要再嘀嘀咕咕了。  
不要顶嘴!  
对不起。我们和好吧。  
我来念个故事给你听。  
该睡觉了。  
晚安! 祝你做个好梦!  
不要忘记我爱你。

## 孩子最常使用的50句英文

Good morning, Mom and Dad.  
I'm awake.  
Have a nice day, Dad!  
I want to wear this shirt.  
I can do it by myself.  
Mom, I'm all grown up now.  
Do I look good, Mom?  
Tie my hair, please.  
Goodbye! I'm leaving.  
I'm home, Mom.  
Can you get me the scissors, Mom?  
Look at this, Mom.  
Mom, I'm bored.  
Play with me, Mom!  
Draw me a car.  
Can I watch TV?  
Please play Caillou.  
After this TV show.  
Can I play computer games for a little bit?  
Can I go play outside?  
Can I go play at Jina's house?  
I want to try it, Mommy!  
Minji hit me.  
It was not my fault.  
He started it.  
Don't get angry.  
I'm sorry. It won't happen again.  
I'm really angry.  
I'm not talking back.

爸爸妈妈，早安!  
我醒了。  
爸，祝你有个美好的一天!  
我要穿这件衬衫。  
我可以自己完成它。  
妈，我现在都长大了。  
妈，我美/帅吗?  
请帮我绑头发。  
再见! 我要出门了。  
妈，我回来了。  
妈，可以给我剪刀吗?  
妈，看这个。  
妈，我很无聊。  
妈，跟我玩。  
帮我画车。  
我可以看电视吗?  
请播放《Caillou》。  
等这个节目结束。  
我可以玩一会电脑游戏吗?  
我可以去外面玩吗?  
我可以去吉娜家玩吗?  
妈咪，我想试试看。  
敏基打我。  
不是我的错。  
是他先开始的。  
不要生气。  
对不起，我不再这样了。  
我真的生气了。  
我不是在顶嘴。



I'm glad you praised me.  
Can you get me milk, please?  
Can I have some more?  
Can I have some ice cream?  
I hate mushrooms.  
I don't feel like eating.  
I need to pee.  
I need to poop.  
I'm done, Mom.  
I'm tired.  
I'm sleepy./ I'm tired.  
I'm hungry./ I'm starving.  
My legs hurt.  
Hold me tight./ Give me a big hug.  
Give me a piggy-back ride.  
Can I take a break?  
Wait for me, Mom.  
Dad, when are you coming?  
Can you read me a story, Mom?  
Who do you love more, me or Minji?  
I love you the most in the world.

我很高兴你夸奖我。  
你可以把牛奶拿给我吗？拜托了。  
我可以再要一些吗？  
我可以吃些冰淇淋吗？  
我讨厌蘑菇。  
我没心情吃饭。  
我要尿尿。  
我要便便。  
妈，我好了。  
我累了。  
我困了。  
我饿了。  
我腿痛。  
给我一个大大的拥抱。  
背我。  
我可以休息一下吗？  
妈，等我。  
爸，你什么时候回来？  
妈，可以讲个故事给我听吗？  
你爱谁多一点，我还是敏基？  
在这个世界上，我最爱你了。

## CHAPTER01忙碌的早晨

### CHAPTER01-01起床

Time to wake up!  
Wake up, you sleepyhead.  
Rise and shine.  
Get up, please! Time to go to school.  
Still dreaming?  
I'll tickle you if you don't wake up.  
You should go to bed early to get up early.  
Want to sleep more?  
Can I sleep some more?  
I'm so tired that I can't get up.  
Mom, I can't keep my eyes open!  
Just five more minutes.  
I'll count to three. Come on!  
Hurry up, or you will be late.  
I'm awake.  
You don't have to wake me up. I'm already up.  
Wow! Did you get up by yourself?  
Did you not hear the alarm?  
Don't doze off. Sit right up.  
Let's see who gets up first.  
You're still sound asleep.

该起床了！  
起床了，你这个贪睡鬼。  
太阳都晒屁股了。  
快点起床！该去学校了。  
还在睡梦中吗？  
再不起床的话，我要抓痒痒了。  
你要早睡早起。  
还想睡吗？  
我可以多睡一会吗？  
我太累了，起不来。  
妈，我睁不开眼睛！  
只能再睡5分钟。  
我数到三，快点起床！  
快点，否则你要迟到了。  
我醒了。  
你不用叫我也没关系。我已经醒了。  
哇～！你自己起床的吗？  
你没有听到闹钟吗？  
不要打瞌睡了。做好！  
看看谁先起床了？  
你还在沉睡。



Stretch your body.

伸展下你的身体。

I'm not going to wake you up anymore.

以后我不会再叫你起床了。

## CHAPTER01-02早晨打招呼

Good morning, Mom and Dad!

爸爸妈妈，早安！

Did you sleep well?

你睡得好吗？

Hey! Did you get a good night's sleep?

早！睡得好吗？

Did you sleep tight, my sweetie?

宝贝，睡得好吗？

You slept in.

你睡懒觉了。

Was it not chilly at night?

晚上不冷吧？

You're already awake? Why so early?

已经醒了哦？为什么这么早醒呢？

Whoa! I've never seen this before!

哇！太阳打西边出来了。

My eyes just opened.

我刚睁开眼睛。

Seems like you're in a good mood.

看起来你的心情很好。

You look happy after a good night's sleep.

睡个好觉后，你看起来心情很好。

Why do you look grumpy this morning?

为什么今天早上你看起来心情不太好？

I'm still sleepy.

我还想睡。

You should say hello first thing in the morning.

起床后，你应该先打招呼。

You should say, "Good morning!"

你应该说：“早安！”

Let's kiss and say, "Good morning!"

亲一下，说“早安”吧。

Did you have sweet dreams?

你做好梦了吗？

Mom, want to hear about my dreams?

妈妈，要听听我做的梦吗？

Can you wake up your brother?

你可以叫你弟弟起床吗？

## CHAPTER01-03洗脸

Get up to wash your face.

起床洗脸了哦。

Wash your face and brush your teeth.

洗脸刷牙。

Wash your neck, too.

脖子也要洗哦。

Who wants to wash up first?

谁要先洗？

Want Mom to help you?

需要妈妈帮你吗？

Can you help me, Mom?

妈妈，你可以帮我妈？

If I do it by myself, I will get my clothes wet.

自己洗的话，我会弄湿衣服的。

I don't want to clean my face!

我不想洗脸！

I'll wash myself after I eat.

我要吃饭后再洗。

Are you done?

都洗好了吗？

I'm working, Mommy.

我正在洗，妈咪。

Get a clean towel.

那一条干净的毛巾。

Mom, there's no towel.

妈，我没有毛巾。

Mom, can you get me a towel?

妈，可以那条毛巾给我吗？

You look pretty after cleaning.

洗好后，你看起来好美哦。

Watch out for the slippery floor.

厕所的地板很滑，要小心哦。

## CHAPTER01-04刷牙

You should brush your teeth three times a day.

一天要刷三次牙。

Brush your teeth properly.

好好地刷牙。

Brush up and down.

刷牙要上下刷。

Don't forget to brush deep inside.

不要忘记也要刷里面哦。

Clean your teeth and gums thoroughly.

牙和牙床都要彻底刷干净。

Don't forget to brush your tongue.

不要忘记刷舌头。





Gargle and spit.

Put only a little toothpaste on your toothbrush.

Mom, squeeze the toothpaste for me.

We're out of toothpaste.

Brush for three minutes.

Has it been three minutes yet?

Don't leave the water running.

I hate brushing my teeth.

Brush my teeth for me, Mom.

Brush your teeth well, or they will turn black.

If you don't take care of your teeth, you'll get cavities.

If you don't brush well, you'll have bad breath.

Don't brush your teeth the wrong way.

## CHAPTER01-05吃早餐

It's time for breakfast.

come and eat your breakfast.

Sit at the table.

Dad, come and eat with us.

Can you call your brother, too?

Who wants to help me set the table?

Can you put the spoons on the table?

Let's say grace before we eat.

Let's have breakfast.

How is it? Isn't it good?

Don't you like it?

Don't you feel like eating?

Why aren't you eating?

I don't feel like eating much.

I can't eat in the morning.

Eating breakfast makes you strong.

Just take one more bite.

Just try and see if it's good.

You'll be late. Hurry up and eat.

Let's drink some water.

Don't spill the milk.

I can't reach that dish.

There is too much rice.

I'll feed you.

It's too hot.

Blow on your food to cool it off.

Are you finished?

Stop eating now.

I can't eat anymore.

I'm full.

Can't I leave some?

漱口，然后吐掉。

牙刷上要沾点牙膏。

妈妈，帮我挤牙膏。

我们没有牙膏了。

一定要刷三分钟。

三分钟到了吗？

不要忘记关水。

我讨厌刷牙。

妈妈，帮我刷牙。

要好好刷牙，不然的话，你的牙齿会变黑。

如果你不好好照顾你的牙齿，你会有蛀牙。

不好好刷牙的话，会有口臭。

不要用错误的方法刷牙。

该吃早餐了。

来吃早餐吧。

从餐桌旁。

爸爸，来和我们一起吃早餐。

你可以也叫一下你弟弟吗？

谁可以帮妈妈摆餐桌？

你可以把汤匙摆在餐桌上吗？

吃饭前，先来祷告吧。

吃早餐吧。

味道如何？好吃吗？

你不喜欢吗？

没胃口吗？

你为什么不吃？

我不怎么想吃。

我在早上不要吃东西。

吃早餐，会让你更健康。

再多吃一口。

先吃一口看看好不好吃。

要迟到了。快吃。

喝点水。

不要让牛奶洒出来。

我夹不到菜。

饭太多了。

我来喂你。

太烫了。

吹一下，让它冷一点。

都吃完了吗？

不要再吃了。

我再也吃不下了。

我饱了。

不可以剩一点吗？



Is it okay if I don't finish it all?  
I'm almost done eating.  
Looks good.Thank you!  
Thank you for the nice meal.  
The food was fabulous.Thanks.

可以不要全部吃完吗?  
我几乎都吃了。  
看起来好好吃。谢谢!  
感谢你这么好吃的一餐。  
食物相当好吃。谢谢!

## CHAPTER01-06用餐习惯和礼节

Don't be picky with your food.  
Don't walk around while you eat.  
Don't leave your food uneaten.  
You should eat by yourself.  
Be careful not to drop your food.  
Oops!You dropped your food.  
It's okay.I'll clean it.  
Eat slowly and don't rush.  
Clew well.  
Use your chopsticks right.  
Don't spit out the food.  
Sit down and eat at the table.  
Sit properly at the table.  
Don't talk with your mouth full.  
Put your bowl in the sink.  
Help me clean up the table.

不要挑食。  
吃饭的时候，不要走来走去。  
食物不可以剩下。  
你要自己吃。  
小心食物不要弄掉。  
哎呀！你弄掉食物了。  
没关系。我来收拾。  
慢慢吃。不要急。  
好好咀嚼。  
正确使用筷子。  
不要把食物吐出来。  
要坐在餐桌吃饭。  
好好坐在餐桌旁。  
嘴巴内有东西时，不要说话。  
把碗放在洗碗槽内。  
来帮妈妈收拾餐桌吧。

## CHAPTER01-07上厕所

I have to pee.  
I have to poop.  
I'm about to poop.  
Take off your pants first.  
Don't forget to flush.  
Don't use too much toilet paper.  
Phew!It's stinks!  
Tell me if you have to pee.  
Is it not coming out?  
Don't hold it.Go pee.  
It's not good to hold your pee.  
I don't want to sit on the toilet.  
Can you pee by yourself?  
Wash your hands after you poop.  
Flush the toilet only once.  
Call me when you're done.  
I'm done,Mom.  
Can you wipe my bottom?  
I keep farting.Hold your nose.  
Ugh.who cut the cheese?  
Fart in my face,and I'll get you!  
Did you pee in your pants?  
It looks like you were in a rush.

我要去尿尿。  
我要去便便。  
我快要大出来了。  
先把你的裤子脱下来。  
不要忘记冲水。  
不要用太多的卫生纸。  
唷！好臭喔！  
如果你要尿尿的话，要告诉我。  
尿不出来吗？  
不要忍，去尿。  
憋尿是不好的。  
我讨厌坐马桶。  
你可以自己尿尿吗？  
便便后，要洗手。  
水冲一次就好。  
好了叫我喔。  
妈，我好了。  
你可以帮我擦屁股吗？  
我一直要放屁。捏住你的鼻子。  
哦，谁放屁了？  
放屁在我脸上的话，我会抓住你。  
你尿在裤子上了吗？  
看起来，你很急。





Does your tummy ache?

Don't hold it till you have to pee in your pants next time.

你肚子痛吗?

下次，不可以忍到尿在裤子上。

## CHAPTER01-08爸爸去上班

Daddy is going to work.

Daddy is leaving. Say goodbye.

Say bye-bye, Sweetie.

Have a good day, Dad!

Good luck, Dad!

Give Daddy a kiss.

Honey, want to polish Dad's shoes.

Let me get your shoes ready, Dad.

Call us if you're going to be late.

Are you eating out with your coworker?

Come home early.

Don't be too late, Dad.

When are you coming back?

I want to go with you, Dad!

Come home early to play with me.

Don't drink and come home early.

See you later, Dad!

Bring me some goodies when you get back.

Dad, you look great!

Have fun all day, Sweetie.

Dad will go to work.

I'll miss you while I work.

Dad will call you at lunch hour.

Shall I bring you something good?

Have fun with Mommy.

I'll come back from work as fast as I can.

爸爸要去上班了。

爸爸要出门了，说再见。

说再见，甜心。

爸爸，祝你有美好的一天。

爸爸，祝你好运。

亲一下爸爸。

宝贝，要帮爸爸擦皮鞋吗?

爸爸，你帮我拿鞋子。

晚的话，打个电话回来。

你要跟同事去聚餐吗?

早点回来。

不要太晚，爸爸。

你什么时候回来?

我想跟爸爸一起出门!

早点回来跟我玩。

不要喝酒，早点回家。

爸爸，一会见!

回来时，要买好吃的给我。

爸爸，你看起来很帅!

甜心，今天也玩得开心。

爸爸去上班了。

当我在上班时，我会想你的。

午餐时，我会打电话给你。

我可以买什么好东西给你呢?

跟妈妈好好玩。

下班后，我会尽可能早回家。

## CHAPTER01-09挑衣服

What do you want to wear?

Choose what you want to wear.

I want to wear a skirt today.

What do you need to wear today?

Today, you need to wear your school uniform.

Today, you need to wear your PE clothes.

Get me my gym clothes.

Shorts are not good for this weather.

It's chilly, so you should wear a jacket.

I don't want to wear those clothes.

I don't want to wear this shirt. Give another one.

I will wear this coat tomorrow, too.

When did you buy these pants?

This jacket is too girlish/boyish.

I don't feel comfy in this shirt.

你想要穿什么呢?

挑一件你想穿的吧。

今天我要穿裙子。

今天你需要穿什么?

今天，你需要穿学校制服。

今天，你需要穿体育服。

给我运动服。

这个天气不适合穿短裤。

天气很冷，你应该穿外套。

我讨厌穿那些衣服。

我讨厌穿这件衬衫，给我另一件。

明天，我也要穿这件外套。

这条裤子你什么时候买的?

这件夹克太女孩子气/男孩子气了。

这件衬衫很不舒服。



This is too thin.  
It's very chilly out there.  
The pants don't match the shirt.  
We need to wash this shirt. Get another one.  
It's not fully dry yet. Wear it tomorrow.  
That dress looks perfect on my princess.

这件太薄了。  
外面非常冷。  
这条裤子跟那件衬衫不搭。  
这件衬衫要洗了，拿其他的吧。  
那件还没干，等明天再穿。  
那件连衣裙在我们公主身上太好看了。

## CHAPTER01-10穿衣服

Let's get changed.  
Can you get dressed by yourself?  
Do you want Mom to help you?  
Fold your sleeves.  
Put on your hat.  
Your socks don't match.  
Where is your other sock?  
Let's zip up your pants.  
Let's button your shirt.  
You buttoned your shirt wrong.  
You put on your shirt inside out.  
Take off your underclothes.  
Let's change into some new underwear.  
Can you help me put this on?  
Can you unbutton my shirt?  
Can you unzip me?  
This is too small/large.  
These pants are too small now.  
You have outgrown these clothes.  
Do I look good, Mom?

让我们来换衣服吧。  
你可以自己穿衣服吗？  
你需要妈妈帮忙吗？  
把袖子摺起来。  
戴上帽子。  
你的袜子不是同一双。  
你的另一只裤子在哪？  
拉上裤子的拉链。  
扣好你的衬衫钮扣。  
你的钮扣扣错了。  
你的衬衫穿反了。  
脱掉你的内衣。  
我们换新的内衣吧。  
你可以帮我穿上这个吗？  
你可以帮我解开衬衫的扣子吗？  
你可以帮我拉开拉链吗？  
这个太小/大了。  
这裤子现在太小了。  
你长大了，这些衣服都不能穿了。  
妈，我看起来好看吗？

## CHAPTER01-11自己穿衣服

Change your clothes.  
What should I wear?  
Look in your closet.  
Change into some comfortable clothes.  
Change into some clean clothes.  
Wear what you want to wear.  
Change into what you wear at home.  
Can I wear this?  
Isn't that too hot? Wear something else.  
I'll just stay in these clothes.  
That's dirty. Change now.  
Put your dirty clothes in the laundry basket.  
Change your underwear, too.  
Put on the clothes that are ready.  
Mom, where are the clothes ready to wear?  
What are you doing not getting dressed?  
You got dressed by yourself.  
Now you're a big boy/girl.

换衣服了。  
我要穿哪一件？  
在你的衣柜里找找。  
换上舒服一点的衣服。  
换上干净的衣服。  
穿你想穿的衣服。  
换上居家服。  
我可以穿这件吗？  
不会太热吗？穿其他件。  
我只要穿这些衣服。  
那脏了，要换掉  
把脏衣服放进洗衣机内  
内衣也要换  
换上准备好的衣服  
妈妈，我要穿的衣服在哪？  
你不穿衣服，还在做什么？  
你自己可以穿衣服了  
现在你是大男孩/女孩了



## CHAPTER01-12梳头发

Let's comb your hair.  
I will tie your hair pretty.  
Do you want it tied in a ponytail or pigtails?  
Let me part your hair.  
Don't move  
Your hair has grown a lot.  
Your hair is fluffy.  
You need a haircut at a beauty shop.  
Do you want hairpin?  
Do you want hairband?  
Which hairband do you want?  
Your hair is tangled up, so I can't comb it.  
Brush my hair softly.  
Mom, that hurts!  
Want me to braid your hair?  
Let me put your hair up.  
Can you hand me the hairpin?  
Please bring me the comb.  
Can you tie my hair?  
Can you cut my bangs?  
My hair is poking me in my eyes.  
Can you tie my hair like you did yesterday?  
I don't like this hairstyle.  
Can you tie it again, please?  
I want to untie my hair today.  
Tie my hair in a ponytail.  
Tie my hair in pigtails.  
Don't tie it too hard.  
Do you want your bangs to grow?

我们来梳头发吧  
我会把你的头发绑得很漂亮  
你要绑成马尾？还是辫子？  
让我来帮你把头发分开  
不要动  
你的头发长很多了  
你的头发很蓬松  
你需要去理发室剪头发  
你要别个发夹吗？  
你要绑发带吗？  
你要绑哪一个发带？  
你的头发都打结了，我梳不开  
轻轻的帮我梳头发  
妈妈，好痛！  
要我帮你绑辫子吗？  
我来把你的头发梳起来  
你能把发夹拿给我吗？  
请把梳子拿给我  
你能帮我绑头发吗？  
你能帮我剪掉刘海吗？  
我的头发戳到我的眼睛了  
可以帮我绑跟昨天一样吗？  
我不喜欢这个发型。  
请帮我重新绑，好吗？  
今天，我要把头发放下来。  
请把我的头发绑成马尾。  
请把我的头发绑成辫子。  
请不要绑太紧。  
你要把刘海留长吗？

## CHAPTER01-13准备学校用品

What are your supplies for school today?  
Did you pack your bag?  
Did you get your books?  
Did you get your homework?  
Do you have your lunchbox and water bottle?  
Do you have your indoor shoes?  
Oops, I forgot.  
I can't remember what I should bring.  
I should bring some art supplies.  
I need to get this paper signed.  
I got everything ready.  
What did your teacher ask you to bring?  
Do you have art class today?  
You should have your supplies prepared in advance.

今天的学校用品是什么？  
你整理好书包了吗？  
教科书放进去就吗？  
作业放进去了吗？  
便当和水瓶都准备好了吗？  
室内拖鞋准备好了吗？  
啊，我忘了。  
我忘记我要带什么了。  
我应该要带美术用品。  
这份考试卷要签名。  
我都准备好了。  
老师叫你要带什么呢？  
今天有美术课吗？  
你应该事先准备好学校用品。



Starting tomorrow, have it ready beforehand.  
Are you ready?  
Make sure you have everything.  
I forgot to pack your lunchbox.  
Do you need anything else?  
Wow, you got it ready. Good job!  
I have no homework/supplies today.  
I don't know what to bring to school.  
My teacher never told us anything.  
Where are my supplies, Mum?  
I thought I put them in your backpack.  
It's your job to get your supplies.  
You should stop by the stationery shop on your way to school.

从明天开始，要事先准备。  
你准备好了吗？  
确认你有没有都带了。  
我忘记装你的便当了。  
你还需要其他的吗？  
哇，你都准备好了。很棒！  
今天没有作业/学校用品。  
我不知道要带什么去学校。  
我们老师从不跟我们说任何事。  
妈，我的学习用品在哪？  
我以为我已经把它们放进你书包了。  
准备学校用品是你自己的事情。  
去学校时顺道去一下文具店。

## CHAPTER01-14催促

Hurry up, Honey!  
Mom's waiting.  
You'll be late.  
We still have time, Mommy.  
You'll be late for school if you don't hurry.  
The day will be over soon.  
Oh, no! It's too late.  
You're going to miss the school bus.  
Can you give me a ride?  
Look at the clock.  
Can't you tell the time?  
Do you know how late you are?  
Finish in five minutes.  
What time is it now?  
I'm doing my best.  
I'm sorry. I'll speed up.  
I'm not waiting for you any longer.  
I'm leaving before you.  
If you keep on being late, it will be a hard habit to break.  
I'll be outside waiting for you.  
Finish before I count to three.  
We need to leave now.  
You don't have enough time.  
Time is ticking away.  
Why should this happen every morning?  
happen 发生

快点，宝贝！  
妈妈在等喔。  
你要迟到了。  
我们还有时间，妈咪。  
如果你不快一点的话，你上学就会迟到。  
一天都要结束了。  
喔，不，太晚了。  
你会错过校车的。  
你能开车送我去吗？  
看一下时钟，  
你能告诉我几点了吗？  
你知道你晚了多久了吗？  
五分钟把它完成。  
现在几点了？  
我正在尽全力。  
不好意思，我会快点。  
我不等你了。  
我要先走了。  
如果你一直迟到的话，  
这个习惯将很难改掉。  
妈妈在外面等你。  
我数到三之前要完成。  
现在外面一定要出发了。  
你的时间已经不够了。  
时间飞快过去了。  
为什么每天早上都要这样混乱？

Sorry. It won't happen again.

对不起，不会再这样了。

## CHAPTER01-15穿鞋子

Put on your shoes.  
Get your bag and put on your shoes.

穿上你的鞋子。  
背好背包，穿好鞋子。





Change your shoes to sneakers.  
Your shoes are on the wrong feet.  
Switch shoes.  
Don't step on the back of your shoes.  
You need your sneakers if you want to run.  
Your shoes are old now.  
These shoes are old and torn.  
I still love these shoes. Don't throw them away.  
My shoelaces are untied, Mom.  
My shoelaces won't stay tied.  
Can you tie my shoes?  
I like Velcro shoes.  
Those shoes don't match your clothes.  
Put your shoes in the right place.  
Put your shoes on the shoe rack.  
They must be on the shoe rack.  
Your shoe size is 130mm.  
Do the shoes fit?  
Are they not too big/small?  
You've outgrown your shoes.  
Let me buy you a new pair.  
These new shoes hurt my feet.  
I want to wear my dress shoes.  
What shoes should I wear, Mom?  
They are very dirty. They need to be washed.

换上运动鞋。  
你的鞋子穿错脚了。  
交换穿一下。  
不要踩到鞋后跟。  
如果你要跑步的话，你需要穿运动鞋。  
你的鞋子好旧了。  
这鞋子又旧又破。  
我还是很喜欢这双鞋子。不要丢掉它们。  
妈妈，我的鞋带松开了。  
我的鞋带一直松开。  
你能帮我绑鞋带吗？  
我喜欢魔鬼扣鞋。  
那鞋子跟你的衣服不搭。  
把鞋子放在该放的位置上。  
把鞋子放在鞋架上。  
它们应该放在鞋架上。  
你鞋子的大小是130公分。  
合脚吗？  
鞋子太大/小？  
你已经长到鞋子穿不下了。  
让我买双新的给你吧。  
因为穿新鞋，脚好痛。  
我要穿我的皮鞋。  
妈妈，我要穿哪双？  
它们都好脏喔，要洗一洗了。

## CHAPTER01-15穿鞋子-鞋子的种类

运动鞋sneakers, sports shoes  
拖鞋slippers, flip-flops  
有跟的女鞋pumps

皮鞋dress shoes  
凉鞋sandals  
马靴boots

## CHAPTER01-16上学前打招呼

Have a good day.  
Have a good time.  
Have fun with your friends.  
Be happy all day long.  
Bow your head politely, Honey.  
You should say goodbye.?  
Shouldn't you say bye to Dad?  
Give me a kiss, Honey.  
Didn't you forget something?  
Goodbye!! I'm leaving.  
Study hard at school.  
Be good at school. Behave!  
Call me after school./Call me after you're done.  
I'll see you later in the afternoon.  
Come home right after school.  
I'll be waiting with a tasty snack ready.

祝你有个美好的一天。  
祝你度过美好的时光。  
跟朋友们好好玩喔。  
一整天都要快乐喔。  
要恭敬地鞠躬打招呼，宝贝。  
你应该说再见。  
你不该跟爸爸说再见吗？  
亲一下，宝贝。  
你没有忘了什么吗？（亲亲）  
再见，我走了。  
在学校好好用功。  
好好待在学校，要听话！  
放学后，打电话给我。  
等一下下午见。  
放学后，立刻回家。  
我会准备好吃的点心等你。



Will you be home when I come back?  
Come pick me up later.  
I'll go pick you up.

我回来时，你会在家吗？  
等一下，来接我。  
我会去接你。

## CHAPTER01-17妈妈的叮咛

Watch out for cars.  
Don't walk on the road.  
Always cross at crosswalks.  
Be careful when you cross the street.  
Look sideways while you are walking.  
Watch for the traffic lights.  
Make sure you walk when the light is green.  
Raise your hand when you cross the street.  
Don't play with your cell phone on the street.  
Don't run.Walk slowly.  
Don't rush  
Go straight to school.  
Don't ever follow strangers.  
Go along the broad street.  
Don't go down the narrow back street.  
Listen to your teacher.  
Ask your teacher if you want to go to the bathroom.  
Be nice to your friends.  
Turn off your cell phone at school.  
Eat plenty for lunch.  
Don't stop at the game machine.Just pass by it.  
What should you do when there is a bully?  
If you meet a bully,tell me at once.

要小心车。  
不要走到车道。  
穿越马路一定要走在斑马线上。  
你过马路时，要小心。  
走路时，要注意看旁边。  
要看红绿灯。  
确定是绿灯时，你才能走。  
过马路，要牵起你的手。  
不要在路上玩你的手机。  
不要跑，慢慢走。  
不要赶。  
直接去学校。  
绝对不可以跟陌生人走。  
要走在大马路上。  
不可以走到狭窄的巷弄。  
要听老师的话。  
如果你要去厕所，你要跟老师说一声。  
要跟朋友们好好相处。  
在学校时要关掉手机。  
午餐要吃饱。  
不要在游戏机前停留，走过去就好。  
当有恶霸时你应该怎么做呢？  
如果你看到有人被欺负，要立刻告诉我。

## CHAPTER01-18使用电梯/楼梯

Go and call the elevator.  
The elevator is going up / down.  
Let me push the button.  
The elevator is here.  
Hold the elevator.  
Let's get on the elevator.  
Wait until everyone gets off.  
Can you press the first floor?  
What floor should we press?  
Press the open / close button.  
Be calm inside here.  
Don't lean on the elevator door.  
Don't goof around in the elevator.  
Don't jump inside the elevator.  
Be careful!You might get stuck in the door.  
This elevator moves too slowly.

去按一下电梯。  
电梯上来/下来了。  
我来按按钮。  
电梯来了。  
按钮让电梯停一下。  
进电梯吧。  
等所有人出来。  
你能按一下一楼吗？  
我们要按哪一楼呢？  
按一下开门/关门钮。  
在里面请安静。  
不要靠在电梯门上。  
不要在电梯内捣蛋。  
不要在电梯内跳来跳去。  
小心！你会被门夹住的。  
着电梯太慢了。





Wow,it's moving fast.  
What floor are you going to?  
Let's get out.★也经常使用get off  
Get off when the elevator is completely open.  
Be careful when you get off.  
Always look at what floor you're leaving.  
Let's take the stairs.  
Let's have a race to the first floor.  
Don't ever run on the stairs.  
Don't hang on the handrail.  
Go down one step at a time.  
Don't goof around on the steps.You might get hurt.

哇，好快喔。  
你要去几楼？  
我们出去吧。  
当电梯门完全打开后，再出去。  
出去时要小心。  
出去之前，要看一下是几楼。  
我们走楼梯吧。  
我们比赛谁先到一楼。  
绝对不可以在楼梯上跑。  
不要握住栏杆不放。  
一次走一个阶梯。  
不可以在楼梯捣蛋，你会受伤的。

## CHAPTER01-19搭校车

It's about time for the bus.  
Your school bus will be here very soon.Let's  
I like riding on the school bus.  
Go line up nicely for the bus.  
We're early.No one's here yet.  
There are a lot of kids already waiting in line.  
Let's hurry up the next time.  
The bus is early /late today.  
Let's wait a little longer.  
It will be here soon.  
The bus came on time.  
Oh,the bus is already here.  
I'll be the first in line.  
There's the bus./I see the bus coming.  
Wait until the bus has stopped.  
Say hello to the teacher.  
Okay,let's get on the bus now.  
Get on the bus one after another. / Get on the bus one by one.  
Be careful when you get on off the bus.  
Don't cut in line.  
Don't push.Get on slowly.  
Mommy will take you to school today.  
Fasten your seatbelt.  
Get ready to get off.

工车要来的时间到了。  
校车马上要来了，快点！  
我喜欢搭校车。  
去好好排队等公车。  
我们来早了。一个人也没有耶。  
已经有很多朋友在排队了。  
下次我们再快点吧。  
现在公车提早/晚到了。  
我们再多等一会。  
马上就会来了。  
公车准时来了。  
喔，公车已经来了。  
我会排在第一个。  
公车来了。  
要等公车停好喔。  
跟老师问好。  
好，现在让我们上公车吧。  
按顺序一个一个上公车。  
上下公车都要很小心。  
不要插队。  
不要推挤，慢慢上车。  
今天妈妈会送你去学校。  
系好安全带。  
准备下车了。

## CHAPTER02做家事

### CHAPTER02-01用吸尘器

It's time to clean up.  
Can you help Mommy ?  
Will you try to use the vacuum?

该是打扫的时间了。  
你能帮妈妈吗？  
你想用吸尘器吗？



Try it. It's fun.

I want to try, Mommy!

I'll help you clean all the time.

Open the window and let the fresh air in.

Can you move a little bit?

Can you move your toys so I can vacuum?

You need to move the stuff on the floor.

Let's tidy up the shoes.

I just want to get the dust off.

Isn't the vacuum heavy? Give it to Mommy.

I want to clean up my room.

Look! Lots of hair.

Ew, gross!

Want to take a little break?

It's clean after we clean up.

We finished early because of you, my darling.

You're all grown up helping Mommy clean the house.

Aren't you tired?

试试看，这很好玩喔。

妈咪，我想试试看。

我会一直帮你打扫。

打开窗户让新鲜空气进来。

你能把这个搬开一点吗？

你能一开你的玩具，让我用一下吸尘器吗？

你必须把地板上的东西移开。

让我们把鞋子放整齐。

我只是要拍掉灰尘。

吸尘器很重吧？拿给妈妈吧。

我要整理我的房间。

看！有很多头发。

噢，好恶心！

你要休息一下吗？

打扫后，觉得好干净。

亲爱的，幸好有你帮忙，打扫提前结束了。

你们都长大了，可以帮妈妈打扫房子了。

你不累吗？

## CHAPTER02-02扫地/擦地板

Let's wipe the floor.

I'm going to sweep the floor today.

We're going to wipe the room with a rag.

I wipe after sweeping.

We need to use the vacuum before we wipe the floor.

Can you help me clean the room?

Can you get me the rag?

Turn it over and clean the floor.

Ugh, the rag's too dirty.

We need to wash the rag.

Clean everywhere and make everything nice and neat.

Clean with all your strength.

It looks like you're cleaning carelessly.

Mom, this isn't all clean yet.

I think Daddy should do it.

Clean quickly and get me the rag.

Wiping the floor is tiring, isn't it?

My knees hurt after kneeling down.

我们来擦地板吧。

今天我要扫地。

我们要用抹布擦房间。

先扫之后再擦。

我们在擦地之前，要先用吸尘器吸过。

你能帮我打扫房间吗？

你能帮我拿抹布吗？

把抹布翻过来，然后清洁地板。

哎呀，这抹布好脏哦。

我们要洗一下抹布。

打扫每个地方，并让每个东西都干净整洁。

用全力去擦。

看起来你打扫得很漫不经心。

妈妈，这边还没有打扫。

我想这让爸爸做吧。

快点擦，把抹布给我。

擦地很辛苦，对吧？

跪完之后，我的膝盖好痛喔。

## CHAPTER02-03整理玩具

The toys on the floor are a mess.

Who made such a mess.

Why is there such a mess.

You should clean up after you play.

地板上的玩具很凌乱。

是谁弄得这么乱的？

为什么这么乱？

玩完之后，你应该整理的。



What should you do with your toys when you finish playing with them?  
Go put away your toys so Mommy can clean up the room.  
I was just about to clean them up.  
Can I play a bit longer?  
I'll clean up after a little while.  
I don't want to clean it up. Just leave there, please.  
Can you clean up by yourself?  
Pick up the blocks and the other toys.  
You should put the books on the shelves.  
Put it in the toy box.  
Put it back where it was.  
Where should the toys go?  
You should put away your own toys.  
Wow! You cleaned up so nicely.  
You deserve a sticker for cleaning up.  
Mommy feels so happy because you're helping me.  
The toys want to go back to their home.  
Can I get rid of this since it's still on the floor?  
Ugh, when are we going to clean up all of this?  
Should we give away the toys to other babies now?  
Don't give them away. I'll clean them up.

## CHAPTER02-04打扫房间及整理书桌

Please clean up your room.  
Please clean off your desk.  
The bookshelves are all messed up.  
Please empty the trash can.  
Your bed is so messy.  
I want to clean up my desk by myself.  
Please clean up my room for me, Mom.  
I'm sorry. I'll clean it up right away.  
It is so messy that I can't clean it by myself.  
I won't mess it up the next time.

## CHAPTER02-05洗碗

Mommy is doing the dishes.  
We should do the dishes.  
There are a lot of dishes today.  
Can you clear the table?  
Can you wipe the table?  
Put the dishes in the sink.  
Please put away the dishes you used.

当你不玩时，你应该对你的玩具做什么呢？

去整理你的玩具，妈妈要打扫房间。

我正打算要整理。

我可以再玩一会儿吗？

我等一下会整理。

我不想整理，就这样放着吧。拜托啦。

你能自己整理吗？

收拾积木和其他玩具。

你应该把书放在书架上。

把那个放在玩具箱内。

把那个放回原位。

这些玩具应该放哪里呢？

你应该收拾自己的玩具。

哇！你收拾得好好哦。

因为你都收拾好了，你应该得到一个贴纸。

妈妈很高兴你帮了我。

这些玩具想回到它们的家。

还在地板上的这个玩具，我可以丢掉吗？

喔，我们什么时候把这些都收拾干净？

现在我可以把这个玩具给其他小朋友吗？

不要把它们送走，我会收拾的。

请把房间清干净。

请把书桌清干净。

书架已经乱得不像样了。

请把垃圾桶清空。

你的床太脏乱了。

我要自己清我的书桌。

妈，请帮我打扫房间。

不好意思，我现在马上打扫。

这太脏乱了，我一个人没办法打扫。

下次，我不会再弄得这样脏乱了。

妈妈在洗碗。

我们应该去洗碗。

今天又很多碗要洗。

你能清理餐桌吗？

你能帮我擦餐桌吗？

把碗盘放在洗碗槽内。

请把你自己的碗拿走。



Please put away the dishes from the table.  
Can you help me do the dishes?  
Who will do the dishes today?  
I want to try doing the dishes.  
Where is the sponge / liquid soap ?  
Let me do the dishes from now on.  
You're a big boy/girl now helping me do the dishes.  
You can do that when you are older.  
Put on the rubber gloves and put the liquid soap on the sponge.  
Wash the dishes carefully so they will not break.  
Wash them carefully so there is no residue left.  
They are sparkling clean.  
Turn off the water.  
There is still some soap on it. It's slippery.  
Oily residue is hard to get off.  
Use hot water to wash off the grease.  
Place the dripping bowls upside down on the  
Dry the plates with a dish towel.  
We've got a lot to clean, so let's use the dishwasher.  
Load the dishes in the dishwasher.  
The detergent should go in here.  
Okay, close the door and push this button.

请把碗筷从餐桌上拿走。  
你能帮我洗碗吗？  
今天谁要洗碗呢？  
我想试试洗碗。  
海绵/洗碗精在哪里？  
以后，碗都由我来洗。  
  
现在你能帮我洗碗，真的长大了。  
  
等你再大一点后，再做吧。  
戴上橡胶手套，再把洗碗精挤在海绵上。  
。要小心洗碗，不要把碗打破了。  
仔细清洗，不要留下食物残渣。  
碗干净得闪闪发光。  
要把水龙头关好。  
上面还有些泡泡，很滑喔。  
油垢很难洗掉。  
用热水把油垢洗掉。  
请把湿的碗倒过来放在架子上。  
用洗碗的毛巾把盘子擦干。  
  
有很多碗要洗，那让我们用洗碗机吧。  
  
把碗放进洗碗机。  
把洗洁剂放进这里。  
好，把门关起来，然后按下按钮。

## CHAPTER02-06洗衣服

I'm going to use the washing machine.  
I'm going to do the laundry.  
Let's put the laundry in the machine.  
Get the socks all together.  
Put the colored clothes here and the whites over there.  
Should these pants be washed?  
Gosh! Dad's socks smell bad!  
Mom, can you wash this shirt?  
There are stains on the shirt.  
We're going to boil the whites and towels.  
There is a lot of laundry to do.  
Put in the detergent.  
I'll hand-wash this.  
Don't put those clothes in the machine.  
We have to dry-clean those clothes.  
The laundry is done.  
Laundry's done!

我要去用洗衣机了。  
我要去洗衣服了。  
把要洗的衣服放进洗衣机内。  
把袜子都放一起。  
有颜色的衣服放这里，白色的衣服放那里。  
这条裤子也要洗吗？  
啊！爸爸的袜子好臭！  
妈妈，你能洗这件衬衫吗？  
这件衬衫沾上汗渍了。  
我们来烫白衣服和毛巾吧。  
有好多衣服要洗。  
放洗衣粉。  
这个我用手洗。  
不要把那些衣服放进洗衣机。  
那些衣服必须干洗。  
衣服洗好了。  
洗衣服结束！

## CHAPTER02-07晾衣服

Let's hand the clothes on the rack.

我们把衣服晾在晾衣架上吧。





Will you help me hang the clothes?  
Try hanging your clothes by yourself.  
I want to hang the socks.  
Put it on the drying rack.  
Whose sock is this?  
Can you hang the socks?  
Shake each item and put it on the rack.  
These are my briefs.  
Wow, Dad's trunks are super big!  
Your bra is pretty, Mom.  
Make sure the clothes don't hit the ground.  
Put the shirt on the hanger.  
We will need some clothespins.  
Here's a clothespin.  
The stain's not completely out.  
It will be all dry tomorrow.  
There's no room anymore.  
The weather should be nice.  
The laundry's going to dry well because it's  
A sunny day is a good laundry day.  
If it rains, the laundry won't dry well.

你能帮我晾这些衣服吗?  
你的衣服你自己试着晾晾看。  
我想要晾袜子。  
晾在晾衣架上。  
这是谁的袜子?  
你能晾这些袜子吗?  
一件件抖开之后，再把它们晾上去。  
这是我的内裤。  
哇，爸爸的内裤好大!  
妈妈，你的内衣好漂亮。  
确认衣服不会掉到地板上。  
把衬衫挂在衣架上。  
我们需要一些衣夹。  
衣夹在这里。  
汗液没有完全洗掉。  
到明天，一定都全干了。  
没有空间可以晾了。  
天气应该会很好。  
因为天气好，衣服会很快干。  
晴天就是好的洗衣天。  
下雨的话，衣服不太会干。

## CHAPTER02-08折衣服

The laundry is all dry.  
The laundry's not completely dry yet.  
The clothes are well dried.  
We should get the dry clothes.  
Let's take the clothes off the rack.  
Can you help me get the clothes off?  
Can you help me fold the clothes?  
Let's fold these clothes neatly.  
Try to fold it neatly.  
Fold it in half like this.  
Put the socks in the sock bin.  
Can you put the clothes back in the place?  
You should fold your own clothes.  
Let me fold mine by myself.  
That's Daddy's.  
Where is the other sock?  
Can you find the other pair?  
Whose is this?  
Get Daddy's clothes in one place.  
Put them in the drawer.  
Hang the shirts on the coat hanger.  
This is how you fold clothes.  
Mom, this is too big for me to fold.  
Did I do a good job folding those clothes?

衣服都干了。  
衣服还没有全干。  
衣服都干了。  
我们应该把干的衣服收一收。  
我们把衣服从晾衣架上拿下来吧。  
你能帮我收衣服吗?  
你能帮我折衣服吗?  
我们来好好折衣服吧。  
试着折整齐一点。  
像这样对半折。  
把袜子放在袜子箱内。  
你能把衣服放回原处吗?  
你应该折自己的衣服。  
我的衣服我自己来折。  
那是爸爸的。  
另一只袜子在哪里?  
你能找到另一双吗?  
这是谁的衣服?  
把爸爸的衣服放在同一个地方。  
把它们放抽屉。  
衬衫要用衣架挂起来。  
你要像这样折衣服。  
妈妈，这件太大，我折不了。  
我折这些衣服折得好吗?



## CHAPTER02-09烫衣服

We need to iron Dad's shirt.	我们要烫爸爸的衬衫。
The shirt's all wrinkled.	这件衬衫都皱皱的。
Want to see Mommy ironing?	想看妈妈烫衣服吗？
The iron looks like a boat.	这熨斗看起来好像一条船。
The iron's too hot. It's dangerous.	熨斗太烫，很危险。
Don't touch it.	不要碰。
You shouldn't iron by yourself.	你不可以自己烫衣服。
Don't come near it since it's hot.	不要靠太近，因为很烫。
Go sit over there while I'm ironing.	我在烫衣服的时候去坐那边。
Watch out, Mom.	妈，小心。
We need to spray it with water first.	我们需要先喷点水。
Will you get me the spray bottle.	你能拿喷雾器给我吗？
We need to straighten out the wrinkles by ironing.	我们是为了弄平皱褶才烫衣服的。
Look. It's straightening out.	看！烫平了。
The wrinkles are gone. That's cool!	皱褶都不见了。好酷喔。
This is a steam iron.	这是蒸汽熨斗。
Wait! You should wear your pants after we iron them.	等一下！你应该要等我们烫完裤子再穿。
We should iron Mommy's apron.	我们应该烫一下妈咪的围裙。
Pleated skirts are hard to iron.	百褶裙很难烫。
We need to iron it so there are no wrinkles.	我们应该烫到没有皱褶。
We need to make the lines neat.	我们应该让线条更工整。
The collar's straight now.	现在这个衣服领很挺吧。
Isn't it neat after ironing?	烫过后，衣服不是很整齐吗？
It's warm since we just ironed it.	刚刚烫好的衣服很温暖。
Let me spray water on the shirt for you.	我帮你在衬衫上喷水。
It's still hot after we pull the cord out.	拔掉插头后，还是有一段时间很烫。

## CHAPTER02-10照顾花草

Let's put some water in the flower pots.	我们放点水到花盆里吧。
Let's water the flowers.	我们来浇花吧。
The soil is all dry.	这些土都干了
The flower's withered.	这些花都枯了。
Seems like the flowers are thirsty.	这些花看起来很口渴。
Let's give them some water so the flowers won't wither.	我们要给它们浇水，以便让花不会枯萎。
I'll water this flower.	我来浇这花。
I want to give it some water now.	我现在想给它浇点水。
How much should I pour?	我可以浇多少？
Tilt the watering can more.	把浇水壶再倾斜一点。
Slowly pour the water in the watering can on the flower.	用浇水壶慢慢地把水浇在花上。
If the weather's hot, we need to give it more water.	如果天气很热，我们要浇更多的水。
Giving too much water might make the plant die.	浇太多水，植物也有可能会死掉。





Make sure the water doesn't actually touch the flower.

By pouring water, the dust and bugs are washed away.

What flower is this?

This flower has a strong scent. Smell.

Flower gardens make the air in the more cleaner.

The flowers are in full blossom.

This tree bears fruit.

The sprouts have come up.

This plant has no flowers growing.

Can you take care of the flowers?

Clean the dust on the leaves.

Oh my! Will this tree die?

Let me take care of these plants now.

This is going to be my tree.

确认水没有直接碰到花。

灰尘和虫子也能借由浇水被冲掉。

这是什么花呢？

这花好香喔。闻闻看。

花园让屋子的空气更干净。

花都全开了。

这棵树结果实了。

发芽了。

这植物是不开花的。

你能照顾花吗？

叶子上的灰尘也要洗掉。

喔！这棵树会死吗？

现在让我来照顾这些花草。

这将成为我的树。

## CHAPTER02-11修东西

Look like it's broken.

Mom, it's not working.

Mom, can you fix this?

I broke it by accident.

Can it be used again?

I'll try.

Looks like I can handle it.

I'll fix it tomorrow.

When you come back, it will be working.

I'll fix it so that it will be like it's brand new.

It doesn't work because it is broken.

What if it gets worse?

This looks like I can't fix it.

It won't be as good as it used to be even if we fix it.

Sorry, We're going to have to wait till Dad gets here.

Ask Daddy to fix this.

Daddy can fix anything.

Can we throw it away and get a new one?

We shouldn't just get rid of it. Let's try to fix it.

I'm so sad that it's broken.

Thank you for fixing it.

这好像故障了。

妈，这个不能动了。

妈妈，你会修这个吗？

我不小心弄破了。

这个还能再用吗？

我会试试看。

看起来我可以修好的样子。

明天我来修。

你回来的时候，它就会动喔。

我会把它修得像全新的一样。

这个因为故障了，才不能动。

如果变得更坏，怎么办？

这个我好像不会修。

即使修好了，也不会像之前那样好用。

抱歉，我们不得不等爸爸回来。

拜托爸爸修这个。

爸爸会修任何东西。

我们能把它丢掉买新的吗？

不可以只是丢掉，我们修修看。

它坏掉了，我好伤心。

谢谢你修好它。

## CHAPTER02-12吃午餐

Mom, I'm hungry.

I'm starving (to death).

Wait a second. I'll have lunch ready soon.

What is for lunch?

What about sandwich?

妈妈，我饿了。

我饿死了。

等一下。我马上把午餐准备好。

午餐是什么？

三明治如何？



Want to eat at home or out?  
Want to order something for lunch?  
Can I eat ramen?  
I want some pizza.  
If you eat candy, lunch won't taste.  
I'll get the fishbones out.  
Is it too big? Let me cut it off.  
Eat just a little bit even though yet don't feel like eating.  
Fast food isn't good for you.  
You finished an entire plate very quickly.  
Did you eat enough, Sweetheart?  
Eat a lot and get strong.  
I'll get lunch ready and then leave.

要在家吃，还是出去吃？  
午餐要不要叫外送？  
我可以吃拉面吗？  
我想吃披萨  
如果你吃糖果的话，午餐会没有味道。  
我来拿掉鱼刺。  
太大了吗？我来切一下。  
即使你不想吃，也要吃一点。  
速食对身体不好。  
你很快就吃完一整盘了。  
甜心，你吃够了吗？  
多吃一点，变壮一点。  
我会做好午餐再出门。

## CHAPTER03下课后孩子回家

### CHAPTER03-01小孩回家

I'm home.  
You're home, Honey.  
You're home early.  
How was your day?  
How was school today?  
It was fun.  
It was all right.  
You're a little late. Did something happen?  
I played with my friend after school.  
I was worried about you. Sweetie.  
Next time, come straight home.  
You look happy.  
You seem to have fun.  
You look tired.  
Is Sister here?  
Not yet. She'll be home soon.  
Yes. She's already here.  
Of course. She is waiting for you.  
She's sleeping, so be quiet.  
Wasn't it hot?  
Mom, it's so hot! Can I have some water?  
Brrr! It's cold today.  
Do you get along with your friends the time?  
What did you do/learn at school?  
What did you have for lunch?

我回来了。  
宝贝，你回来了。  
你回来得很早。  
今天过得如何？  
今天在学校过得如何？  
很好玩。  
还好。  
你今天有点晚，有什么事吗？  
放学后，我跟朋友玩了一会。  
甜心，我很担心你。  
下次，要直接回家。  
你看起来很开心。  
你好像玩的很开心。  
你看起来很累。  
姐姐回来了吗？  
还没，她快回来了。  
是呀，她已经回来了。  
当然，她在等你了。  
她正在睡，安静点。  
不热吗？  
妈，妈热喔！可以喝点水吗？  
啊！今天好冷！  
你跟朋友们处得好吗？  
你在学校做/学了什么？  
午餐，你吃了什么？

### CHAPTER03-02接小孩

Sweetheart, I'm here!  
Why did you come to pick me up, Mom?

甜心，妈妈在这里！  
妈妈，为什么你来接我？



Because I wanted to see you sooner.  
Why are you so late? I've been waiting for you.  
I had lunch late.  
If Mommy were late, we could have missed each other.  
Give me your bookbag. I'll carry it for you.  
When it's raining, wait for me to bring an  
The bus is late today.  
Are you happy that Mommy came?  
I'm really happy that you came for me.  
Mommy feels happy to come here, too.  
Can you pick me up again tomorrow?  
I'll be waiting here tomorrow.  
Sorry I was a little late.  
I'll come and pick you up every Monday.  
Were you waiting for me for a while?  
Even if Mommy's late, wait here.

因为我想快一点看到你。  
你为什么这样晚？我正等着你。  
我午餐吃晚了。  
如果妈妈晚到，我们可能就错过彼此了。  
把书包给我，我来拿。  
下雨的时候，等我拿雨伞给你。  
今天公车晚了。  
妈妈来接你，高兴吗？  
我真的很高兴你能来接我。  
妈妈也很高兴能来。  
明天你也能来接我吗？  
明天，我在这里等你。  
抱歉，我晚了一点。  
每周，我都会来接你。  
你等我一会了吗？  
即使妈妈晚到，也一定要在这等。

### CHAPTER03-03洗手

Look at your hands! They're dirty.  
Go wash your hands. Quickly!  
When you come home, you should wash your hands.  
Scrub your hands with soap.  
It won't come off. Mommy.  
Can you roll up my sleeves?  
Wash off all the soap.  
There's still foam on your hands.  
There are a lot of germs on your hands.  
I can't see the germs.  
You can't see the germs.  
Can you wash yourself alone?  
No. Can you help me?  
Don't be careless. Wash them thoroughly.  
Scrub between your fingers.  
Wash your wrist, too.  
Don't leave the water on.  
Wash until your hands are visibly clean.  
I washed them before you told me to.  
I'm done washing!

看看你的手！好脏。  
去洗手，快！  
回到家时，你应该洗一下手。  
用肥皂擦洗你的手。  
妈妈，洗不掉。  
你能帮我卷起袖子吗？  
把肥皂都洗掉。  
你的手上还有泡沫。  
你的手上有很多细菌。  
我看不到细菌。  
你没办法看到细菌。  
你能自己洗吗？  
不，你能帮我吗？  
不要这样随便，要彻底地洗干净。  
手指间也要擦洗。  
手腕也要洗。  
不要把水放着一直流。  
要洗到双手都明显很干净。  
我在你说之前就已经洗好了。  
我洗好了。

### CHAPTER03-04肚子饿的时候

I'm hungry. Please get me a snack.  
Wait a little bit. It's almost ready.  
You must be hungry.  
I'll give you a snack.  
Didn't you finish your lunch at school? Why are you hungry?

我饿了，请给我点心。  
等一下，就快好了。  
你一定很饿了吧？  
我拿点心给你。  
你在学校没有把饭吃完吗？为什么会饿呢？



The food today was bad, so I didn't eat it all.  
Are you thirsty?  
Want something to drink?  
Want something to eat?  
You're hungry because you had little breakfast.  
I haven't eaten anything today.  
Is it time for dinner yet?  
Are you hungry again?  
Eat something.  
Get something from the fridge.  
What do you want to eat?  
Want Mommy to make you something tasty?  
Wait a little bit. I'll make you something good.  
I'm hungry because I played for a while.

今天的饭不好吃，所以我没有都吃完。  
你渴了吗？  
你要喝的吗？  
要来点吃的吗？  
你会饿因为你只吃了一点点早餐。  
我今天什么都还没吃。  
还没到吃晚餐的时间吗？  
你又饿了吗？  
吃点什么吧。  
去冰箱找找看。  
你想吃什么？  
要妈妈做好吃的给你吗？  
等一下，我做好吃的给你。  
因为今天我玩了好一阵子，所以很饿。

### CHAPTER03-05吃点心

Let's have a snack.  
Come and have a snack, Honey.  
What do you want for a snack?  
Bread and milk, please.  
What's my snack, Mom?  
It's your favorite. Waffles.  
Is there anything else?  
What do you want to eat?  
Share it with your brother.  
Leave some for your brother.  
Want more peanuts? Do you want more?  
No. I'm fine. I'm full. I've had enough.  
Want more milk or juice?  
Does it taste good?  
Yeah, it's delicious.  
Mom, can I have some more?  
Try not to eat too much.  
If you eat too many cookies, you can't have dinner.  
If you eat too many sweets, your teeth will rot!  
That's bad for you.  
Caramel is not a healthy snack./Caramel is not good for your health.  
Can I have some ice cream?  
Eating too much cold food will make you sick.  
If you eat too much fried food, you will gain weight.  
Too much spicy food can hurt your stomach.  
You'll get in trouble if you drink too much soda.  
Hamburgers are a kind of junk food.

我们来吃点心吗。  
宝贝，来吃点心了。  
你想吃什么点心？  
请给我面包和牛奶。  
妈妈，我的点心是什么？  
是你最喜欢的松饼。  
没有其他的了吗？  
你想吃什么？  
跟你弟弟一起分享。  
留一些给你弟弟。  
花生多一点？你要多一点吗？  
不，不用了，我很饱。我吃很多了。  
你要多一点牛奶或果汁吗？  
好吃吗？  
嗯，很好吃。  
妈，我可以再要一些吗？  
试着不要吃太多。  
如果你吃太多饼干，你会吃不下晚餐。  
如果你吃太多甜食，你的牙齿会烂掉。  
那对你不好。  
焦糖不是对身体很好的点心。  
我可以吃些冰淇淋吗？  
如果你吃太多冰的食物，会让你生病的。  
如果你吃太多炸的食物，你会变胖。  
吃太多辣的食物，你的胃会受伤。  
如果你喝太多碳酸饮料，你的身体会出问题。  
汉堡是垃圾食物。





The barbecued chicken sold on the street is not properly cooked.

路边卖的烤鸡没有正确地煮好。

Stop eating so much pizza.

不要吃那么多披萨了。

### CHAPTER03-06聊幼稚园/学校生活

Was school fun?

学校有趣吗?

Yeah, It was fun.

嗯，很有趣。

What was the most fun?

什么最有趣?

Playing outside was the best.

在户外玩的时候最有趣了。

Something bad happened to me.

我发生了不好的事情。

What do you mean? What happened?

什么意思? 发生什么事了?

Did you get in trouble with your teacher?

你跟老师起纠纷了吗?

I got in trouble because I ran during recess.

我在休息时间跑来跑去，所以被骂了。

Don't ask. I don't want to talk about it.

不要问，我不想说。

Mom, Jinhong didn't come because he was sick.

妈，金宏因为不舒服没有来。

Oh, I hope he gets well soon.

喔，希望他快点好起来。

Tell me what you learned in school.

告诉我你在学校学了什么。

What did you play in school?

你在幼稚园/学校玩了什么?

What songs did you learn in school?

你在幼稚园学了什么歌?

Can you sing the song you learned?

你能唱你学的歌吗?

Did you listened to your teacher today?

今天你听老师的话吗?

What questions did your teacher ask?

你的老师问了什么问题?

The teacher praised me today.

今天老师称赞我了。

Did you have a good time with your friends?

你跟朋友们好好玩了吗?

Who did you sit with today?

你今天跟谁一起坐?

My seatmate is Minji.

我的同桌是敏基。

We changed seats today.

今天我们换座位了。

Hmm...I can't remember her name.

嗯...我想不起她的名字。

### CHAPTER03-07做作业

Do you have any homework?

公众微信号: liangkeshu2015 你有回家作业吗?

Yes, I do./NO, I don't.

是的，我有。/不，我没有。

Do you have a lot of homework?

你有很多作业吗?

What's your homework?

你的作业是什么?

Show me your assignment notebook.

给我看你的作业簿。

Play after you do your homework.

做完作业再玩。

Did you get your homework done?

你把作业做完了吗?

Do your homework first.

先做作业。

I'll do it after playing for a little bit.

我先玩一会再做。

After a little while.

再等一下下。

After this TV show.

等这个电视节目看完。

Don't put it off until later.

不可以把它往后拖延。

If you keep putting it off, you won't want to do it.

如果你一直往后延，你会不想做的。

Want Mommy to help you?

想要妈妈帮你吗?

No, I can do it by myself.

不，我可以自己做。

Did you finish your homework?/ Are you done with your homework?

作业都做完了吗?

No, I'm still doing it./No, I'm still working on it.

不，还在做。



Yes, I'm done.  
 Mom, can you help me?  
 How do I do this?  
 You should do your homework by yourself.  
 If you need help, call me out.  
 Mom, this is too hard.  
 You should do your homework right after you come back.  
 When is this homework due?  
 When should you get this done?  
 If you're done with your homework, put it in the bag.  
 I have trouble working on this craft homework.  
 My teacher gave us some difficult math homework.  
 This is a group project.  
 Today's homework is making a family newspaper.  
 I have to read my textbook three times.  
 This week's homework is to visit a museum.  
 I have to turn in a book report by tomorrow.

是的，我都做完了。  
 妈，你能帮我吗？  
 这个要怎么做？  
 你应该自己做作业。  
 如果你需要帮忙，叫我哦。  
 妈，这个太难了。  
 回家后，你应该立刻做作业。  
 这个作业什么时候要做完？  
 你应该什么时候完成？  
 如果你做完作业，把它放进书包。  
 我对这项劳作作业，感到很困难。  
 老师给我们出了些很难的数学作业。  
 这是小组作业。  
 今天的作业是做家庭报纸。  
 我必须读三遍的教科书。  
 这周的作业是参观博物馆。  
 我明天必须交出一份读书报告。

### CHAPTER03-08整理书包

Pack your bookbag for tomorrow.  
 Play after you pack your bag.  
 Pack your bag after you come back from school.  
 Pack your bag before you go to bed.  
 Do you have anything you need for tomorrow?  
 Mom, where is my weekly schedule?  
 Look on your desk.  
 Did you pack your backpack?  
 I need to buy some supplies.  
 I finished packing my bag.  
 Check if you have everything.  
 Sharpen your pencils.  
 You don't have your math book.  
 I put my social studies book in my locker.  
 Take everything out that you don't need.  
 Don't take any toys to school.  
 Let me check if everything's okay.  
 Do you have all of your homework?  
 Why is your homework out in the living room?  
 Your bag's too heavy.  
 Put the color pencils in your locker.  
 Can you check if everything's ready, Mom?

把明天的书整理好。  
 整理好书包再玩。  
 从学校回来后，要先整理书包。  
 睡觉前，先整理书包。  
 明天你需要的东西都准备好了吗？  
 妈妈，我每周的行程表在哪里？  
 在书桌上找找看。  
 你整理好书包了吗？  
 我需要买一些文具用品。  
 我整理好书包了。  
 确认一下有没有都带了。  
 削好你的铅笔。  
 你没有放进你的数学课本。  
 我把社会课本放在我的置物柜内了。  
 把你不需要的东西都拿出来。  
 不要带任何玩具去学校。  
 让我检查是不是都带齐了。  
 你把作业都放进去了吗？  
 为什么你的作业出现在客厅。  
 你的书包太重了。  
 把彩色铅笔放在置物柜。  
 妈妈，你能帮我看一下都带齐了吗？

### CHAPTER03-09跑腿

Can you do me a favor?  
 I'm sorry. I have something to do.

你能帮我一下忙吗？  
 抱歉，我现在有事。





I'll do it after I'm done with this.  
Why do I always have to do it?  
Ask Enji to do it.  
Who wants to do an errand for me?  
Mom's busy. Please do me a favor.  
Whoever does it for me will get 5 dollars.  
Will you give me a reward for this?  
Then give me some money for a reward.  
Yes, I will.  
Okay, what errand?  
Go buy some milk at the supermarket.  
Here's 100 dollars.  
Don't forget to get the change.  
Always be careful outside.  
Don't worry.  
Mom! I'm back. Here is the milk.  
Running an errand, you're all grown up now.  
Good job.  
Thank you. Did you get the change?  
Yeah, here's the money.  
Keep the change.  
Thanks. I'll do it again next time.  
Mom, I did a good job, didn't I?

我做完这个再去。  
为什么老是我去做？  
请恩寄去做。  
谁要帮我跑腿？  
妈妈很忙，请帮我跑腿一下。  
我会给帮我做的人5元。  
做的话，你会给我奖赏吗？  
那么，给我一些钱作为奖赏吧。  
好吧。  
好，什么差事？  
去超市买些牛奶回来。  
这里有100元。  
不要忘记找钱。  
出门要小心。  
不用担心。  
妈妈！我回来了。牛奶在这里。  
可以帮忙跑腿，现在你完全长大了。  
做得好！  
谢谢，你有拿回零钱吗？  
有，这里是找回来的钱。  
零钱就给你了。  
谢谢，下次我还要做。  
妈妈，我做得很好，不是吗？

### CHAPTER03-10在外面玩

Mom, can I go play outside?  
I'm going to the playground.  
Mom, can I ride my bike?  
Go and play outside.  
Come back in an hour.  
Come back before dinner.  
Just stay around the house.  
Don't go out of the apartment area.  
Don't go too far.  
I'll see if you stay in the playground.  
Take your brother/sister.  
Let's go with Mommy.  
It's going to rain. Don't go out today.  
It's too hot today. Play inside.  
You've already been outside.  
Don't go out again.  
Where are you going to go?  
How come you always want to go out?

妈，我可以去外面玩吗？  
我要去游乐场玩。  
妈妈，我可以骑脚踏车吗？  
去外面玩。  
一小时后要回来。  
晚餐前要回来。  
只能在房子附近玩。  
不要走到公寓社区外。  
不要去太远。  
我会去看你是否在游乐场。  
带你的弟弟/妹妹去。  
跟妈妈一起去。  
要下雨了。今天不要出去。  
今天太热了。在家里玩。  
你已经出去玩过了。  
不要再出去了。  
你要去哪里？  
为什么你总是要出去呢？

### CHAPTER03-11去才艺班

It's time for the after-school club, Sweetie.  
Go to the after-school club.  
Don't forget to go to the after-school club.

甜心，该去才艺班了。  
去才艺班。  
不要忘记去才艺班。



Get your bag ready.  
Hurry up. The bus is leaving.  
Mom, I don't want to go today.  
You missed it yesterday, you need to go today.  
Monday is art class.  
I really don't want to go to art class.  
Can I stop going to art class, please?  
You asked for it. Let's see for a little longer.  
Is the after-school club not fun?  
When the after-school club is over, I'll come pick you up.  
Arrive at the after-school club 5 minutes early.  
Come straight home after the after-school club.  
What did you learn in the club?  
Why did the after-school club end so late?  
You had a long day today.  
Friday is my busiest day.

整理好你的书包。  
快点，公车要走了。  
妈妈，今天我不想去。  
你昨天没有去，今天你必须去。  
周一是美术课。  
我真很不想去上美术课。  
我可以停止去上美术课吗？  
是你要说去去的。我们再上一段时间看看。  
才艺班的课不有趣吗？  
才艺班的课结束后，我会去接你。  
要提早五分钟到才艺班。  
才艺班的课结束后，要直接回家。  
你在才艺班学了什么？  
才艺班的课为什么这样晚结束？  
你今天过得很辛苦。  
周五是最忙的一天。

### CHAPTER03-12接待家教老师

The teacher's going to come.  
Mom, can't you ask the teacher to come a little late?  
No. You set up the time with the teacher.  
Get your books/desk ready.  
Did you finish your homework? Finish practicing?  
Wait, Mom! I'll do it after I'm done with this.  
Don't get distracted. Listen to your teacher.  
Seems like the teacher's going to be late today.  
I'll get the snacks ready.  
Concentrate in class.  
Don't ask weird questions.  
The teacher's here.  
Hope you have a good time.  
Don't miss the daily work. You'll fall behind.  
Make sure you do your daily work.  
Can't I stop doing the daily worksheet.  
I've collected a lot of stickers, so I got a present from the teacher.

老师要来了。  
妈，你可以叫老师晚点来吗？  
不行。你跟老师约好时间了。  
整理好你的书/书桌。  
你的作业都完成了吗？也练习好了吗？  
等一下，妈！我完成这个后再做。  
不要散慢。要好好听老师的话。  
老师今天似乎会比较晚到。  
我来准备点心。  
上课要专心。  
不要问奇怪的问题。  
老师来了。  
希望你上课愉快。  
不要漏掉每天的功课。你会落后的。  
你要确实做好每天的功课。  
每天的功课表我可以不做吗？  
我收集到很多贴纸，所以从老师那里得到了礼物。

### CHAPTER03-13休息时间

Mom, I'm tired. I want to rest.  
Okay. Rest for a little.  
Rest for a long time.  
Mom, I need to take a rest.  
What did you do?  
Take a break for an hour.  
You'll be all right after resting.  
Don't think about anything, just rest.

妈，我累了。我要休息。  
好，休息一下。  
好好休息吧。  
妈，我需要休息。  
你做了什么？  
休息一个小时。  
休息之后，你会没事的。  
不要想什么，好好休息吧。



Rest time is over now.  
The test period is beginning next week.  
I haven't rested that long.  
Can I read some comic books?  
I want to take a nap.  
Playing computer games isn't resting.

现在，休息时间结束了。  
下周开始，是考试时间。  
我没怎么休息到。  
我可以看漫画书吗？  
我想小睡一下。  
玩电脑游戏并不是休息。

### CHAPTER03-14独自在家

I'm going out, but I'll be right back.  
Where are you going?  
I'm going to the grocery store.  
Are you saying I need to be alone?  
Can't you be by yourself?  
Why are you scared? It's only for a while.  
Be back soon.  
I might be a little late.  
Don't open the door for strangers.  
Don't go outside until Mommy comes back.  
Watch over your brother/sister.  
Listen to your brother/sister.  
Call Mommy if there's anything you need.  
You know Mommy's number, right?  
Don't worry.  
Thanks. I'll be back soon.  
Mommy's back.  
Why are you so late?  
Was everything okay?  
I was scared, but I tried not to be.  
Eh? You're back already.  
Being home alone, you're a big boy now.

我要外出一下，不过会马上回来。  
你要去哪里？  
我去一下杂货店。  
你是说我必须单独在家吗？  
你不能自己单独在家吗？  
你为什么会害怕呢？只是一会儿而已。  
快点回来。  
我有可能会有点晚。  
不要给陌生人开门。  
妈妈回来之前，都不可以出去。  
好好照顾弟弟/妹妹。  
要听哥哥/姐姐的话。  
如果你有任何需要的话，打电话给妈妈。  
你知道妈妈的电话，对吧？  
不用担心。  
谢谢。我会很快回来。  
妈妈回来了。  
为什么你这么晚回来？  
一切都还好吧？  
我好害怕，但是我有忍住。  
喔？你已经回来了。  
一个人看家，现在你是个大男孩啰。

## CHAPTER04从傍晚到晚上

### CHAPTER04-01爸爸要下班了

When are you coming, Daddy?  
I'm on my way. Coming right up!  
When is Daddy coming home?  
I don't know. Want to call him?  
Do you remember Daddy's number?  
Yes, I'll dial it.  
The line is busy.  
Daddy's not answering.  
Dad, when are you coming?  
I'm on my way! I'm coming!  
I'll be right there in a minute.  
I miss you, Daddy.  
Don't drink, Dad.

爸爸，你什么时候回来？  
我正在路上，马上就回来！  
爸爸什么时候回家？  
我不知道，你要打给他吗？  
你记得爸爸的电话号码？  
是的，我来打电话。  
现在电话中。  
爸爸没有接。  
爸，你什么时候回来？  
我在回家的路上！  
我快到了。  
爸爸，我想你。  
爸爸，不要喝酒。



Come home early, Dad.  
Come early to play with me, Daddy.  
Dad, get me some ice cream when you're back.  
He's almost home.  
I wonder if Dad's here.  
It's Daddy.  
Go greet your daddy, kids.  
Did you have a good day?  
Dad, good to see you again!  
Go wash up, Honey.  
Did you have a long day?  
Go change, please.  
Honey, you must be hungry.  
Why were you late today?  
Did you get me the ice cream?  
Can you play with me, Dad?  
Daddy's a little tired.  
Honey, the kids really waited for you.  
Are you tired, Dad?  
Sweetie, Daddy missed you a lot.

爸爸，早点回来。  
爸爸，早点回来跟我玩。  
爸爸，你回来的时候买冰淇淋给我。  
他快到家了。  
我想知道是不是爸爸回来了。  
是爸爸。  
孩子，快去跟爸爸打招呼。  
你今天过得好吗？  
爸爸，好高兴再看到你！  
亲爱的，去洗一洗吧。  
你很累了吧？  
去换衣服吧。  
亲爱的，你一定很饿了吧。  
你今天为什么晚了？  
你帮我买冰淇淋了吗？  
爸爸，你能跟我玩吗？  
爸爸有点累。  
亲爱的，孩子们等你很久了。  
爸爸，你累了妈？  
甜心，爸爸好想你喔。

## CHAPTER04-02吃晚餐

What do you want for dinner?  
I want pasta.  
It's time for dinner.  
Dinner's ready.  
Come and have dinner.  
Wash your hands before dinner.  
Honey, tell Dad to come and eat.  
Can you tell Dad that dinner's ready?  
Mom, I'll help you set the table.  
Thank you. Can you set the spoons?  
Wow, it looks delicious!  
Hmm, that smells so good.  
Mom, thank you for the food.  
Okay. Help yourself.  
You're eating well, my baby.  
Mom, what's for dinner?  
I made some bulgogi.  
Wow! That's my favorite.  
Is it good?  
The bulgogi tastes good.  
Mommy's food is the best.  
Don't just eat the meat. Eat some vegetables, too.  
Mom, can I eat some more?  
Aren't you full already?  
Don't eat too much.

晚餐你想吃什么？  
我想吃意大利面。  
要吃晚餐了。  
晚餐好了。  
来吃晚餐吧。  
吃晚餐前先要洗手。  
宝贝，叫爸爸来吃晚餐。  
你能告诉爸爸晚餐好了吗？  
妈，我帮你准备餐桌。  
谢谢，你能把汤匙拿来啊？  
哇，看起来好好吃喔！  
嗯，味道很香。  
妈，感谢你准备晚餐。  
好，多吃一点。  
我的宝贝，你很能吃喔。  
妈，今天的晚餐是什么？  
我做了韩式烤肉。  
哇！那是我的最爱。  
好吃吗？  
韩式烤肉好好吃。  
妈妈做的食物最棒了。  
不要只吃肉，也要吃点蔬菜。  
妈妈，我可以再多吃一点吗？  
你不会太饱吗？  
不要吃太多。





You're finished. Good job!  
Mom, I'm done.  
I can't eat anymore because I'm stuffed.  
I'll help you do the dishes.  
You eat like a bird.  
You're eating too fast.  
You take forever to eat.

你都吃完了，好棒！  
妈妈，我都吃完了。  
我太饱了，再也吃不下了。  
我帮你洗碗。  
你吃太少了。  
你吃太快了。  
你吃太久了。

## CHAPTER04-03看电视

What program should we watch tonight?  
I'm going to watch Star King today.  
Mom wants to watch it, too.  
Come here. It's going to start.  
Wow, it's really fun!  
It's my favorite show.  
Hey, it's your favorite song.  
Back off a little. Your eyes will get bad.  
Sit straight while watching.  
Sit properly, Sweetie.  
Will you turn down the volume?  
I'll turn it off after it's finished.  
It's finished. Turn off the TV now.  
Mom, can I watch a lot more TV?  
You've watched TV for an hour. Stop watching.  
You've watched TV for over an hour.  
No more TV today.  
It's not good to watch too much TV.  
Stop watching. Go and play.  
Turn it off and go to sleep now.  
That show's not for children.  
It's for adults.  
If you don't keep your promises, you can't watch TV anymore.  
Mom, it's not over yet.  
You always watch dramas, Mom.  
Soap opera time! The TV's mine now.

今天晚上我们要看什么节目呢？  
我看要《Star King》。  
妈妈也想看。  
快来这里，要开始了。  
哇，好好笑喔！  
这是我最喜爱的节目。  
嘿，你喜欢的歌出现了。  
往后一点。你的眼睛会坏掉的。  
看得时候要坐正。  
甜心，坐好。  
你能把音量调低吗？  
这个结束后，我就会关掉。  
结束了。现在把电视关掉。  
妈，我可以多看一会电视吗？  
你已经看了一个小时的电视了。不要再看了。  
你已经看超过一个小时的电视了。  
今天不能再看电视了。  
看太多电视，对眼睛不好。  
不要看了，去玩吧。  
现在关掉电视去睡觉。  
那不是小孩子看的节目。  
那是给大人看的。  
如果你不遵守约定，之后你都不能在看电视。  
妈妈，还没有结束。  
妈妈，你一直都在看电视剧。  
是连续剧的时间耶！现在电视是妈妈的了。

## CHAPTER04-04吃宵夜

Mom, can you fix me a snack?  
Mom, I can't sleep because I'm hungry.  
Mom, can you give me some fruit?  
You ate that much dinner, but you're still hungry?  
You had dinner just a while ago.  
You're hungry because you ate a little.  
Want some sweet potatoes?  
Is there anything else besides sweet potatoes?  
Don't eat too much.

妈，你能帮我做宵夜吗？  
妈，我饿到睡不着。  
妈，你能给我些水果吗？  
你晚餐吃那么多，还会饿喔？  
你不久前才吃了晚餐。  
因为你只吃了一点点，饿了吧。  
你要吃些番薯吗？  
除了番薯外，还有其他什么吗？  
不要吃太多。



You eat like a horse,Honey.  
It's not good to eat at night.  
It's not good for your tummy to eat before going to sleep.  
You even eat more than Mommy.  
You're going to get fat if you eat before you go to sleep.  
Slow down.  
Drink some milk if you can't sleep.  
You can't eat ramen.  
Do you want me to make a sandwich?  
Let me get you some. Mommy.Say"Ah"  
Give Daddy some first.

宝贝，你吃太多了。  
晚上吃东西不太好。  
睡前吃东西对你的胃不好。  
你甚至比妈妈吃得还多。  
睡前吃东西，你会变胖的。  
慢慢吃。  
如果你睡不着，就喝点牛奶。  
你不可以吃拉面。  
我做三明治给你，好吗？  
我来喂你，妈咪。说“啊”。  
先给爸比。

## CHAPTER04-05跟爸爸玩

Please play with me,Dad.  
Get up and play,Dad.  
Dad,let's play soccer at the park.  
Dad,stop watching TV.Play with me.  
Okay,what should we play?  
I want to play horse.  
Let's play hide and seek.  
You're it,Dad.  
Dad,you should hide now.  
Catch me,Dad!  
Daddy will be the horse.  
Dad's busy.Could you wait?  
You say that every day,but you don't ever play with me.  
Dad's tired,so play with Mommy.  
No.I want to play with Daddy.  
Playing with Daddy is the most fun.  
Playing with you is fun for me,too.  
Want to go to the playground with me?  
Can you teach me how to ride a bike?  
I'll throw the ball.Try to catch it!

爸，跟我玩。  
爸，起来跟我玩。  
爸，我们去公园踢足球。  
爸，不要看电视了。跟我玩。  
好，我们要玩什么呢？  
我要玩骑马。  
我们来玩捉迷藏。  
爸，你当鬼。  
爸，你现在应该躲起来。  
爸，来捉我。  
爸比来当马。  
爸爸很忙，你能等一下吗？  
你每天都那样说，但是你重来没跟我玩过。  
爸爸累了，跟妈妈玩吧。  
不，我想跟爸爸玩。  
跟爸爸玩追有趣了。  
跟你玩也是最有趣的。  
要带我去游乐场吗？  
你能教我如何骑脚踏车吗？  
我要丢球了喔。要接住。

## CHAPTER04-06洗澡

Why are you so good at this,Dad?  
It's time to take a bath.  
Go to sleep after your bath.  
Take off your clothes.  
Want to wash your hair first?  
I don't want to wash my hair.  
I just want to take a shower.  
First,wash your hands with soap.  
Mom,I want to take a bath by myself.  
The tub is filled now.

爸，你为什么这么厉害？  
该是洗澡的时间了。  
洗澡睡觉喔。  
脱掉衣服。  
要先洗头吗？  
我讨厌洗头。  
我只想淋浴。  
先用肥皂洗手。  
妈妈，我想要自己洗澡。  
浴缸的水都满了。





Want to get into the tub now?  
Is the water warm?  
Mom, the water's warm/cold.  
Let's add some more warm/cold water.  
Bring my toys to me.  
This is floating like a boat.  
Don't fool around. Wash yourself.  
Let's take a quick shower.  
Rub the soap and make some foam.  
Let me wash you well.  
Wash your body thoroughly.  
Get some body cleanser on the sponge.  
Rub the sponge to make some foam.  
Clean yourself well using the soap form.  
The soap got into my eyes.  
Let's rub the dirt off your body.  
Your neck is so dirty.  
Look! I've got soap bubble.  
Mom, it hurts!  
Ouch! My eyes sting.  
Let's wash off the soap now.  
Give yourself a final rinse.  
It's done. Let's dry you with a towel.  
Don't you feel fresh since you bathed?  
Yes, I feel fresh.  
Can I play in the tub a little longer?  
Be careful because the floor's slippery.  
Don't splash water on Mom.

现在要进去浴缸了吗?  
水是温温的吗?  
妈妈,水温温的/很冷。  
多加一些温/冷水。  
拿玩具给我。  
这个像船一样浮在水上。  
不要捣蛋了。洗澡了。  
我们赶快淋个浴吧。  
搓一下肥皂,会有泡泡喔。  
让我好好帮你洗洗。  
把你的身体彻底地洗干净。  
弄点沐浴乳在海绵上。  
揉搓海绵,把泡泡弄出来。  
用这些肥皂泡沫好好洗澡。  
肥皂跑进我眼睛了。  
我们把你身上的污垢搓掉吧。  
你的脖子好脏喔。  
看!我身上的肥皂泡泡。  
妈,很痛耶!  
哎呦!我的眼睛很刺痛。  
我们把肥皂洗掉吧。  
最后在冲下水。  
好了,用毛巾擦干。  
洗澡后,有没有觉得很清爽?  
好,我觉得好清爽。  
我可以在浴缸内多玩一会吗?  
要小心,因为地板很滑。  
不要把水溅到妈妈身上。

## CHAPTER04-07洗头

My head is itchy.  
Let's wash your hair.  
My hairband won't come off. Help me.  
I washed it yesterday, but I have to do it again?  
You need to wash your hair every day.  
Your hair smells. Let's wash it.  
Let's make some foam with the shampoo.  
The shampoo got in my eye, and it stings.  
Mommy will wash you.  
Close your eyes.  
Let's rinse your hair.  
The hair conditioner will make your hair softer.  
It's hard to wash your hair because it's too long.  
Let's dry your hair with a towel.  
I'll dry your hair with a blow dryer.  
If you sleep with your hair wet, it will smell bad.  
Comb your hair.

我头好痒。  
来洗头吧。  
我拿不下发带,请帮我。  
我昨天也有洗,为什么还要洗?  
你必须每天洗头。  
你的头臭臭的。来洗头吧。  
把洗发精搓出泡泡来。  
洗发精跑进我的眼睛了啦,好痛喔。  
妈妈帮你洗。  
闭上眼睛。  
把头发冲干净吧。  
润发乳会让你的头发更柔顺喔。  
你的头发太长,好难洗喔。  
用毛巾把头发擦干吧。  
我用吹风机来吹干你的头发。  
如果你头发湿湿的就睡觉的话,会臭臭的。  
梳头发吧。



You look very clean now.

你现在看起来很干净。

Your hair smells so good.

你的头发闻起来很香。

## CHAPTER04-08擦乳液

Let's put on some lotion.

我们来擦乳液吧。

Smell the scent.

闻一下气味。

I can put it on by myself.

我可以自己擦。

Can you put some on my hand,Mom?

妈，你可以挤一点在我手上吗？

Spread it out well and rub it well.

推开它，好好搓一搓。

How does it feel?

感觉如何？

It's slippery and soft.

滑滑软软的。

Put the lotion on your body and face.

把乳液擦在你的身体和脸上。

I don't want to put on any lotion.

我不要擦任何乳液。

It easily gets into my eyes.

乳液很容易跑进眼睛里面。

Try to avoid the area around your eyes.

试着避开眼睛周遭。

Be careful not to get any lotion in your eyes.

小心，不要让乳液跑进眼睛。

Don't squeeze out too much.

不要挤太多。

Make sure you put the cap back on.

一定要确实把盖子盖回去。

You need to put on some lotion so your skin won't get dry.

你需要擦些乳液，这样你的皮肤才不会干燥。

The lotion makes your skin moist and soft,Honey.

乳液会让你的皮肤水嫩滑顺，宝贝。

You look pretty now because you put on some lotion.

因为你擦了乳液，现在你看起来很美。

You look fabulous.

你看起来棒极了。

## CHAPTER04-09穿睡衣

Put on your pajamas.

穿上你的睡衣。

Change into your pajamas.

换上你的睡衣。

Here are your pajamas.Put them on.

这是你的睡衣，穿上吧。

There are the pajamas.

睡衣已经拿出来了。

I'm too tired.I can't change into my pajamas.

我太累了。我没办法换睡衣。

It's comfortable to wear pajamas when sleeping.

穿睡衣睡觉，才会比较舒服。

Mom,where are my blue pajamas?

妈，我的蓝色睡衣在哪？

They are not dry yet.Wear something else.

那件还没干。穿别件吧。

I'll just go to sleep with this on.

我就穿这样去睡了。

Mom,help me put on my pajamas.

妈，帮我穿上睡衣。

You look cute in your sleepwear.

你穿上睡衣后，好可爱。

## CHAPTER04-10写日记

Write in your diary.

写你的日记。

Did you write in your diary?

你写日记了吗？

Where is your diary?

你的日记本在哪？

I'll write in it tomorrow.

我明天会写。

Can I not write today?

我今天可以不写吗？

You should keep a diary every day.

你应该每天写日记。

Make it a rule to write in your diary every day.

要把每天写日记变成一个习惯。

Mom,there's nothing to write about.

妈妈，没有什么好写的。

Can I write something short?

我可以写很短吗？

Write at least one line.

至少写一行。



What should I write in my diary?  
Think about what happened today.  
Think about what you did today.  
What can you remember?  
Write about your seatmate in school.  
Will you make a title?  
Draw if you don't want to write.  
You can write about your thoughts and feelings.  
Let's write in English.  
What is today's date?  
What was the weather like today?  
What day is today?  
When did I get up today?  
I'm done writing in my diary.  
You forgot the date.  
Nice job!  
Your handwriting is not that good.  
Don't look at my diary.

我要在日记上写什么呢?  
想想今天发生了些什么。  
想想今天做了什么。  
你记得什么?  
写写你的同桌同学。  
你要写标题吗?  
讨厌写的话，就画画吧。  
你可以写你的想法和感觉。  
用英文写吧。  
今天的日期是什么?  
今天的天气如何?  
今天是星期几?  
我今天几点起床?  
我完成我的日记了。  
你忘记了日期。  
很好。  
你的笔迹没有很好。  
不要看我的日记。

## CHAPTER04-11睡前讲故事

Do you want me to read a story for you?  
Let me read you a story.  
Mommy will read to you until you fall asleep.  
What story would be good?  
Choose a book you want to read.  
I'll choose.  
You picked a good one.  
You choose too many.  
What are you going to read to me today?  
I'll read Good Night, Moon.  
Listen carefully.  
I'm sleepy, Mom.  
You can sleep if you feel sleepy.  
Listen with your eyes closed.  
Read me one more, Mom.  
You're still awake? I'll read you just one more.  
Mom, I'm not sleepy.  
Mom's throat hurts too. Let's stop now.  
Will you read me the book again tomorrow?  
I really want to know the next story.  
Where did we read to yesterday?  
You're not listening.  
Stop reading and go to bed now.  
How about going to sleep now?  
I'll read to you tomorrow again?  
Can you read the rest tomorrow?

你要我讲个故事给你听吗?  
我给你讲个故事吧。  
妈咪会一直讲故事，直到你睡着。  
你喜欢哪种故事?  
选一本你想听的故事书吧?  
我来选。  
你选了一本很有趣的书。  
你选太多了。  
你今天要讲哪个故事呢?  
我要讲《月亮，晚安》。  
仔细听哦。  
妈妈，我想睡了。  
想睡的话，就睡吧。  
闭上眼睛听吧。  
妈妈，再讲一个。  
你还没睡吗？我只会再讲一个哦。  
妈妈，我睡不着。  
妈妈的喉咙也痛了，就到此为止吧。  
明天可以再念那本故事书给我听吗？  
我好想知道接下去的故事哦。  
我们昨天读到哪里了呢？  
你根本没在睡。  
不读了，去睡吧。  
现在去睡，怎么样？  
我明天会再讲给你听。  
明天你可以讲剩下的吗？



Mommy 's too tired today .Let's just stop reading for now .

妈妈今天太累了，现在不讲了。

## CHAPTER04-12各自睡

Go to sleep in your room.

去你的房间睡吧。

Now that you're grown up,go to sleep in your room .

既然你长大了，就去自己的房间睡吧。

Now that you're in elementary school ,go to sleep in your room .

既然你已经读小学了，去自己的房间睡。

Mom,will you stay with me until I go to sleep?

妈，可以待到我去睡觉吗？

Mom,I'm scared ,I want to sleep with you

妈，我好害怕哦。我要跟妈妈一起睡。

Mom,I want to sleep with you for the last time today .

妈，今天是最后一次我想跟你睡。

Want me to sing you to sleep ?

要我唱歌哄你睡吗？

Mom,don't turn off the light .

妈，不要关灯。

Mom,I can't go to the sleep by myself .

妈，我没办法自己一个人睡。

Don't worry ,Mommy will be with you .

不用担心，妈咪会跟你在一起。

This doll will be with you .

这个娃娃会跟你在一起。

I'll leave the door open so you can hear me

我会把门开着，你就能听到我的声音了。

I'll check if you 're asleep .Don't worry .

我会来看你睡了没，不用担心。

Can you sleep by yourself ?

你能自己睡吗？

I can sleep by myself .

我可以自己睡。

Mom,I'm all grown up now .

妈妈，我现在长大了。

## CHAPTER04-13睡前打招呼

It's time to go to bed .

上床睡觉的时间到了。

It's dark outside .It's time to go to sleep

外面很暗，该去睡觉了。

Mom,I'm not tired yet .

妈，我还不困。

It's past 10'o clock .Go to bed .

已经超过10点了，上床睡觉。

Go to the bathroom before you go to sleep .

睡前，要去一下厕所。

I don't have to pee .I already went .

我不用尿尿，我已经去过了。

Mommy will kiss you .Good night !

妈妈亲一下，晚安。

Give Mommy a goodnight kiss.

给妈妈一个晚安吻。

Good night !Sweet dreams !

晚安！祝你做个好梦！

Let me tuck you in .

让我帮你盖好被子。

Mom ,wake me up early tomorrow .

妈，明天早点叫我起床。

Mom,wake me up at 7.

妈，七点叫我起床。

You have to get right up when I wake you up .

当我叫醒你之后，你要立刻起床。

Mom ,I can't sleep .I want to go to sleep later .

妈，我睡不着。我要晚点睡。

You need to go to sleep early to wake up early.

你要早睡早起。

Don't go to bed too late .

不可以太晚睡。

Stop talking in bed .

不要躺在床上说话。

Be quiet now .

现在给我安静点。

Good night ,Mom and Dad!

爸爸妈妈，晚安！

See you tomorrow ,Mom!

妈，明天见！

## CHAPTER04-14睡觉中醒来

Why did you wake up?

你怎么醒了？





What's wrong,Honey?  
Mom,I had a nightmare  
I woke up because I needed some water.  
I want to go to the bathroom  
I woke up because I want to pee.  
Mom, I wet the bed.  
I think you wet the bed.  
Eeek! You wet the bed,Honey.  
Get changed and go back to sleep.  
I woke up in the dark,and I was  
Isn't it the morning right now?  
No,sleep some more.  
The mosquitoes are annoying me.  
I'll get the repellent  
I had a dream I was getting chased by a monster  
My sweetie must have been scared.  
You're okay now,Mommy's right here.  
My baby must have had a nightmare.  
That wasn't real. It was just a dream.  
Sleep with your favorite bear in your arms.  
You can go back to sleep now,right?  
I want to sleep next to you.  
I'll put you to bed.  
I'll sing you a song./  
I'll sing you a lullaby  
Don't be scared.  
It will be all right if I hold you.  
Sleep with me tonight  
Try to go back to sleep now.  
I'll tuck you in again.

宝贝,你怎么了吗?  
妈,我做了个恶梦。  
我想喝水,所以醒了。  
我想去厕所。  
我想去尿尿,所以醒了。  
妈,我尿床了。  
我想你尿床了。  
噢!你尿床了,宝贝。  
换好衣服后回去睡。  
我醒来时暗暗的,我好害怕。  
现在不是早晨吗?  
不再多睡一会。  
蚊子一直打扰我。  
我来喷防蚊液。  
我梦到我被怪物追赶。  
我的宝贝一定被吓坏了吧。  
现在没关系了,妈妈就在这里  
我的宝贝一定是做恶梦了。  
那不是真的,只是一个梦而已。  
抱着你最喜欢的熊宝宝睡吧。  
现在你可以再睡了,对吧?  
我要睡在你旁边。  
妈妈帮你入睡  
我唱首歌给你听。/  
我唱摇篮曲给你听。  
不要觉得害怕。  
妈妈抱着你的话,就没事了。  
今天和妈妈一起睡吧。  
现在试着回去睡觉。  
妈妈再帮你盖被子。

## CHAPTER04-15美国小孩喜欢的节日-复活节

Let's decorate the Easter eggs.  
I've hid the eggs somewhere,Let's start the Easter egg hunt now!  
What will be in the basket?  
There's the Easter Bunny over there.Let's say hello to the bunny.

我们来彩绘鸡蛋吧。  
我已经把彩蛋藏在某个地方了。现在,开始捡彩蛋吧!  
要放什么在篮子内呢?  
那边有复活节兔子耶。来跟兔子打招呼吧。

## CHAPTER04-16美国小孩喜欢的节日-万圣节前夕

Let's make a jack-o'-lantern together  
Cut a circle around the stem and lift it off.  
Scoop out the seeds and sticky interior by using a big spoon.  
Draw the features on the pumpkin by using a pen  
Cut the face.Use the knife carefully.  
Clear away the rough edges inside the pumpkin.

我们一起来做杰克灯吧。  
在茎的周围用刀划一圈,然后拿起来。  
用大汤匙把籽和粘稠的内容物都挖出来。  
用笔在南瓜上画脸。  
用刀子小心地挖出脸。  
把南瓜内侧粗糙的边角整理一下。





Put a lit candle in and close the lid.  
The lantern looks really scary.

放入点亮的蜡烛后，盖上盖子。  
杰克灯看起来很可怕哦！

## CHAPTER05表达称赞

### CHAPTER05-01亲密的称呼

I love my Jenny the most.  
Who do you love the most in the world?  
I love you, my darling.  
You cutie.  
Oh, my sweetie.  
You're such an amazing baby.  
My little sweetheart.  
You pretty thing  
Come here, my princess

我最爱我的珍妮了。  
这个世界上你最喜欢谁  
我爱你，达令。  
小可爱。  
喔，我的甜心。  
你是让人多么惊讶的宝贝呀。  
我的小甜心。  
我的美人儿。  
来这里，我的公主。

### CHAPTER05-02说我爱你

How much do you love me, Mommy?  
My love for you is as big as the universe.  
You are my treasure.  
You know how much I love you, right?  
Mommy loves you the most in the entire world.  
Thanks so much for being my son/daughter.  
I'll give you a kiss  
I love you more than words can say.  
I can't live without you, Darling.  
How could I live without my loving son/daughter?  
I love you just the way you are.  
I'm so happy because of you  
You are my joy.  
Who do you love more, me or Daddy?  
Of course I love you more.  
I love you both the same.

妈咪，你有多爱我？  
我对你的爱像宇宙那么大。  
你是我的宝藏。  
你知道我有多爱你，对吧？  
在这个世界上，妈妈最爱你了。  
你是我的儿子/女儿真的太感谢了。  
我要亲你一下。  
我太爱你了，已经不能用言语来表达。  
达令，没有你，我活不下去。  
没有我心爱的儿子/女儿的话，我怎么能活下去呢。  
我就爱这样的你。  
因为你，我很幸福。  
你是我欢乐的源泉。  
你爱谁多一点，我还是爸爸？  
当然是爱你多一点。  
两个人，一样爱

### CHAPTER05-03称赞外貌

How do I look, Mommy?  
Do I look good, Mommy?  
Wow, you look fabulous!  
You look so great!  
You look like a prince/princess  
You're so pretty, Whose daughter is this pretty?  
Amazing! Your friends will be surprised to see you.  
You're perfect!  
You look prettier today!  
I don't even recognize you.  
Who do you look like you.

妈咪，我看起来如何？  
妈咪，我看起来漂亮吗？  
哇，你看起来棒极了！  
你看真情很棒。  
你看起来像个小王子/小公主。  
你好漂亮，是谁家的女儿长的长样美呢？  
太让人惊讶了！你的朋友看到你，一定会很吃惊的。  
你很完美！  
今天你看起来更美了！  
我快认不出你了。  
我的美人儿，你看起来像谁呢？



I'm pretty because I look like you.  
I heard you and I look alike.

我很漂亮，因为我看起来像你。  
我听说妈妈和我长得很像。

## CHAPTER05-04称赞

Great!/Terrific!  
You did so well.  
Nice work so far.  
Your hard work pays off, right?  
Did I do well, Mommy?  
Two thumbs up!  
Good job, Can you do this well the next time, too?  
Wow, you're a nice boy, Even Mommy should learn from you.  
Super! Just fantastic!  
Mommy's happy to see you behave like that.  
Don't you feel proud of yourself?  
Did you think I wouldn't do well?  
Did you think I wouldn't make it?  
This was better than I had expected  
I guess your efforts were rewarded  
I'm going to try harder next time.  
You're all grown up, Honey.  
How did you get the idea?  
You're very creative.  
you're really modest.  
I'm so proud you did it all by yourself.  
It should be an example for others

好厉害！/了不起！  
你做的非常好。  
到现在，你都做得很好。  
你的努力得到了好的结果，对吧？  
妈咪，我做的好吗？  
给你两个赞！  
很好，下次你也可以做的这样好吗？  
哇，你真是个好男孩，连妈妈都要向你学习了。  
太棒了！了不起！  
看到你像那样的表现，妈妈好开心。  
你也为自己感到自豪吧？  
你认为我会做的不好吗？  
你认为我会做不来吗？  
这已经超过我期待的。  
我猜你的努力得到回报了。  
下次我会更努力。  
宝贝，你真的长大了。  
你怎么想出那个方法的？  
你好有创意。  
你真的很谦虚。  
你独自完成这件事让我很骄傲。  
这应该可以成为别人的模范。

## CHAPTER05-05恭喜

Congratulations!  
Congratulations! You won first place.  
Congratulations on your award!  
Congratulations on your improvement!  
Congratulations on your good grades!  
I'm so proud of you.  
Yay! Here's the winner!  
Hooray! You made it!  
You are the champ today!  
I knew you could do it.  
Aren't you happy? Mommy feels happy, too.  
Let's call Daddy and tell him the good news.  
What should Mommy do as a gift for you?  
Come here. I'll give you a hug.  
I feel great.  
Let's give a round of applause!  
I'll treat you to a wonderful dinner as a reward.  
Let's have a party to celebrate this.

恭喜！  
恭喜！你得到第一名。  
恭喜你得奖了！  
恭喜你进步了！  
恭喜你得到好成绩！  
我为你感到骄傲。  
耶！优胜者来了！  
万岁！你成功了！  
今天你是冠军！  
我知道你一定行的。  
你很开心吧？妈妈也很开心。  
们打电话给爸爸，告诉他这个好消息吧！  
妈妈该做什么当你的礼物呢？  
快过来。我要抱抱你。  
我觉得很棒。  
大家拍手鼓掌！  
妈妈请你吃好吃的晚餐作为奖赏！  
我们开个派对为此庆祝一下。



Your aunt wants to congratulate you.

你的阿姨想要恭喜你。

## CHAPTER05-06认同

I think you're right.

我想你是对的。

Absolutely! / Certainly!

一点也没错。/当然。

You can say that again.

完全正确。

Tell me about it!

就是说吗!

Yeah... I guess you're right.

嗯...我想你是对的。

I understand your feeling.

我能理解你的感受。

I know how you feel.

我知道你的心情。

So what you're saying is this, right?

所以这就是你要说的, 对吗?

You're right. You're saying is this, right?

对, 你当然会那样。

What about my idea?

我的想法如何?

That's a great idea!

那是个好主意!

Do you agree with me, Mommy?

妈妈, 你也这样想吗?

Of course.

当然。

I agree with you.

我也是这样想。

That could happen.

也是有可能 会那样。

From your point of view, that could be.

站在你的立场, 那是有可能的。

That has happened to me, too.

那种事情也曾发生在我身上。

I've felt that way before.

我以前也是那觉得。

## CHAPTER05-07纾解压力

Mom, I think I'm a scaredy pants.

妈妈, 我想我是个胆小 鬼。

Can I not do this?

我可以不做吗?

I'm so nervous.

我好紧张。

Are you scared?

你很害怕吗?

Want me to hold your hand?

要我牵你的手吗?

Be brave.

要有勇气

Don't be afraid.

不要害怕。

You don't have to be scared.

公众微信号: liangkeshu2015 你不需要感到害怕。

Take a deep breath.

深呼吸。

I'll be next to you.

我会在你旁边。

It's okay if you make a mistake. Try your best.

做错也没关系, 尽你的全力吧。

You will do fine.

你会做的很好。

What are you afraid of?

你在害怕什么?

Mommy was just like you when I was your age.

妈妈在你的年纪时也是这样。

I'll be watching over you.

我会看着你的。

I'm here for you, Honey.

我在这里, 宝贝。

You're not a coward.

你不是个胆小鬼。

Be a man.

像个男子汉。

Make up your own mind. It's up to you.

下定决心, 这完全取决于你。

## CHAPTER05-08鼓励

Good luck!

祝你好运!

Cheer up.

打起精神。

Is there anything wrong?

有什么不顺的是吗?

I didn't make it again. / I messed up again.

我又搞砸了。

I'm sure you feel bad.

我肯定你心情不好。



Why are you so down?  
You don't have to be so down.  
You can do it. I trust in you.  
Go for it! I'm always on your side.  
I feel bad I couldn't win the award.  
I am such a fool to have made the same mistake.  
It will be better next time.  
I'm not going to try that again.  
I feel ashamed.  
It's shame I could not make it through.  
Don't give up.  
I'll cheer you up.  
Do as you please.  
Do you feel better now?  
If you eat something, you'll feel better.  
What can make you feel better  
It could've been worse. Just wait and see.

为什么这样低落?  
你不需要那样低落。  
你可以的。我相信你。  
去做吧! 我永远站在你这一边。  
因为我没拿到奖, 所以很伤心。  
我像个傻瓜, 犯了同样的错误。  
下次会更好的。  
我不会再试了  
我觉得很丢脸。  
太丢脸了, 我没能做完 它。  
不要放弃  
我会让你振作起来。  
做你想做的。  
你现在觉得好一点了吗?  
如果你吃点东西, 你会感觉更好一些。  
怎样做才能让你心情变好呢?  
不会再更糟了。等着看看吧。

## CHAPTER06偶尔也会挨骂

### CHAPTER06-01和朋友吵架

Don't hit your brother.  
Peter started it.  
Did something happen with your friend?  
I really don't like Jisu.  
I'm never going to talk to him again.  
I don't want to play with him anymore.  
Jisu hit me.  
Friends shouldn't fight.  
Friends shouldn't curse at each other.  
Friends should get along well.  
If you keep fighting, I won't let you hang out together.  
Apologize to your friend.  
Did you say sorry?  
Your friend is probably regretting it, too.  
Your friend made you upset.  
Why did he do that.  
But you shouldn't hate your friend.  
How about talking to your friend about your feelings.  
Why don't you try talking to him first?  
Put yourself in his / her shoes.

不要打你弟弟。  
彼得开始的。  
你跟朋友发生什么事了吗?  
我真的讨厌记溯。  
我再也不要和他说话了。  
我再也不要和他玩了。  
记溯打了我。  
朋友之间是不可以打架 的。  
朋友是不可以互相骂对方的。  
朋友应该愉快地相处。  
如果你们还吵架的话, 我不会再让你们一起玩。  
跟你的朋友道歉。  
你说对不起了吗?  
你的朋友可能也后悔了。  
你的朋友让你心烦了。  
他为什么那样做?  
但是你不可以讨厌你的朋友。  
  
跟你的朋友说说你的感受, 怎么样?  
为什么你不试着先跟他说话呢?  
站在他/她的立场想一想。

### CHAPTER06-02兄弟姐妹吵架

What are you two doing?  
Are you fighting?

你们两个在干什么?  
你们在吵架吗?





He started it.  
It doesn't matter who started it.  
Apologize to each other.  
If you guys argue, Mommy feels hurt.  
You shouldn't hit your sister.  
I told you that you should not hit your sister.  
You should be nice to your sister.  
You should look after your sister.  
You are older, so let your brother do it.  
Don't be rude to your brother and talk like that.  
Don't spit.  
You'll get a timeout if you spit again.  
Mommy is really mad.  
Shake hands with your sister.  
Give him a hug.  
You both want to get punished?  
You both are grounded now. You can't watch TV.  
Won't you stop right this minute?  
Who just screamed?  
Are you going to do it again?  
Does it seem right to argue with your older sister?  
You shouldn't demand but ask.  
You are a big brother. please act mature.  
You are not responsible as a big sister.  
Didn't you promise you wouldn't fight?  
You now you might get a timeout ,huh?  
I won't ever fight again.  
You two both were wrong.  
Brothers / sisters should be friends.

他先开始的。  
谁先开始的不是重点。  
互相说对不起。  
你们吵架的话，妈妈会很心痛的。  
你不可以打自己的妹妹。  
我不是告诉过你不可以打你妹妹。  
你应该好好对待你的妹妹。  
你应该照顾你的妹妹。  
你比较大，你应该让你的弟弟。  
不可以对你的哥哥无理，还顶撞他。  
不要吐口水。  
如果你再吐口水，你就给我去面壁思过。  
妈妈真的很生气。  
跟你的妹妹握手。  
给她一个抱抱。  
你们两个都想受罚吗？  
现在你们两个都要受罚。不可以看电视。  
你们不能马上停止吗？  
谁在尖叫？  
你们还要这样吗？  
跟你妹妹吵架是对的吗？  
不可以命令，你要用请求的。  
你是哥哥，要有哥哥的样子。  
你作为妹妹，怎么没有责任感。  
你们不是说好再也不吵架了吗？  
你知道你可能被处罚，知道吧？  
我不会再打架了。  
你们两个都有错。  
兄弟/姐妹间应该友好相处。

## CHAPTER06-03吵着要买东西

I want this,Mom.  
Can you buy me this? Please!  
Mommy can't afford it.  
I didn't bring any money.  
You should not be demanding.  
It's too expensive!  
It's too much for an elementary school student.  
Why are you so demanding?  
You have a same thing at home.  
Don't be silly.  
I know you want it, But not now.  
No means no!  
When can I get it?  
Let's get it next time.  
Mom, you always say next time.

妈妈我要买这个。  
你能买这个给我吗？拜托啦！  
妈妈买不起。  
我没有带钱出来。  
你不能有这么多要求。  
太贵了！  
这个对一个小学生来说太超过了。  
为什么你的要求这么多？  
家里有一样的。  
不要说傻话！  
我知道你想要，但是现在不行。  
说不行就是不行。  
什么时候要买给我？  
下次买吧。  
妈，你每次都说下次。





Mommy, you buy everything you want.  
You always buy things for my brother but not for me.  
Only this time. This is the last time.  
I promise.  
Mommy doesn't get everything.  
Why don't you buy it with your allowance?  
These aren't for kids.  
This food isn't good for you.  
We didn't come here for this today.  
Let's think if it's actually that necessary.  
Well, we don't have enough money for that right now.  
People are staring at us. Stop!  
Stop looking at it. Let's leave now.  
The amount will be taken out of your allowance after I buy you this. Okay?  
You can get this when you collect 30 good job stickers.

妈咪，你自己要的都买了。  
你总是买给弟弟，但都没有给我买。  
就这一次，这是最后一次。  
我发誓。  
妈妈也没有什么都卖。  
你为什么不用你的零用钱买呢？  
这不是小孩子用的东西。  
这食物对你不好。  
我们今天不是为了这个才来的。  
我们想想是不是真的需要。  
可是，我们现在没有足够的钱可以买。  
大家都在看我们呢。停止！  
不要再看了，走吧！  
买这个的话，金额会从零用钱中扣除，可以吗？  
如果你能集到30个奖励贴纸的话，我就给你买。

## CHAPTER06-04不专心

What are thinking about?  
What are you doing?  
Pay attention.  
What are you looking at?  
Go ahead, Honey.  
Speed up! / Hurry up!  
Are you getting distracted?  
Why do you care? It's not your business.  
I think you're lost.  
Why are you so distracted?  
What were we doing, Honey?  
Stop! Look at me.  
Don't move around. Sit here and listen.  
How many times should I tell you?  
Let's focus and finish this.  
Stay on that for at least 10 minutes.  
Do you know what you're doing?  
What 's bothering you?  
Don't play with your hands.  
Sit up straight!  
Is this what you should be doing?  
Do you not want to do this? Do you want to do it next time?  
I know I have to, but it doesn't work out well.  
I can't stop thinking about other things.  
Can I do it later after finishing this comic book?

你在想什么？  
你在做什么？  
注意这边。  
你在看什么？  
快点做，宝贝。  
快点做！  
你慌神了吗？  
为什么你那样在意呢？那不关你的事。  
我想你不知道你在做什么吧。  
你为什么这样散漫呢？  
宝贝，我们在做什么呢？  
停下来！看着我。  
不要跑来跑去。坐下来听我说。  
你要我说几次呢？  
集中精神完成它。  
至少专心做10分钟。  
你知道你在做什么吗？  
什么事在烦你呢？  
不要玩你的手机。  
坐好！  
这是你现在要做的事情吗？  
你不想做这个吗？你要下次再做吗？  
我知道我要去做，但结果不是很好  
我一直想到其他事情。  
我可以看完这本漫画书后再去做吗？



I'm trying really hard.  
It's too difficult to stay focused.  
One hour is too long for me.

我也相当努力在试。  
集中注意力真是太难了。  
对我来说，一小时太长了。

## CHAPTER06-05说谎

That's a lie.  
Why did you lie?  
I wonder why you lied?  
I won't scold you, so tell me the truth.  
I'm sorry that I lied.  
I accidentally told a lie.  
I lied because I was afraid I would get in trouble.  
Are you going to lie again?  
Mommy trusts you. You won't do it again, right?  
I won't do it again.  
Thanks for telling the truth.  
A small lie becomes a big lie.  
Mommy's upset because you lied.  
You don't want to be a liar, do you?  
It's brave to tell the truth.  
I hope you won't ever lie to me.  
Look what you did.  
It was wrong to do that.  
It was not appropriate.  
You could be lying without knowing it.  
It's important to repent.  
If you tell a lie, don't you feel ashamed of yourself?  
I can tell you are lying.  
I really hate when people lie to me.  
Lying is the worst thing in the world.  
Nobody wants to be with a liar.

那是谎话。  
你为什么说谎？  
我想知道你为什么说谎？  
我不责备你，告诉我实话。  
对不起，我说谎了。  
我是无意中说谎的。  
我害怕被你责骂，所以才说了谎。  
你还会说谎吗？  
妈妈相信你，你不会再这样了，对吧？  
我再也不会说谎了。  
谢谢你告诉我实话。  
一个小谎言会变成大谎言的。  
因为你说谎，妈妈很不开心。  
你也不想成为一个说谎的人，对吧？  
说实话也是很有勇气的。  
我希望你不会再对我说谎。  
看看你做了什么？  
那样做是不对的。  
那是不正确的。  
你可能会不自觉地说谎。  
反省是很重要的。  
说谎的话，你都不会觉得羞愧吗？  
我知道你在说谎。  
当有人对我撒谎时我很讨厌。  
在这个世界上，说谎是最坏的。  
没有人会想跟说谎的人在一起。

## CHAPTER06-06拖拖拉拉

Time's already up?  
It's almost time.  
I'm doing it.  
Not yet.  
Can I leave without you?  
Wait for me.  
I'll give you ten minutes.  
Why do you do this all the time?  
I've told you to hurry up a thousand times.  
I'm sick of it!/I'm tired of it!  
Everyone's waiting for you.  
Gosh, you're as slow as a snail.  
I'm almost done.  
It's okay. I can make it on time.

时间都已经到了吧？  
时间几乎快到了。  
我正在做。  
还没好。  
我可以撒下你先走吗。  
等我啦。  
我再给你10分钟。  
为什么你老是这样呢？  
我已经跟你说了一千次要快点了。  
我已经厌烦了。  
大家都在等你。  
哎，你慢得像蜗牛一样。  
我快好了。  
好，我能按时完成。



Can you make it on time?

你能按时完成吗?

## CHAPTER06-07顽皮捣蛋

Hey, hey... Calm down.

喂喂，镇定一下。

Stop. You could get hurt.

停下来，你会受伤的。

Your friend doesn't like it.

你的朋友会不喜欢的。

That's too much. You should stop.

太过分了。你必须停止。

Think about others.

替其他人想一想。

It's too fun to stop.

这太有趣了，所以停不下来。

I'm going to punish you.

我要惩罚你。

Your brother might cry soon.

你的弟弟快哭了。

Don't get into trouble.

不要胡闹。

You're disrupting the other people.

你妨碍到其他人了。

## CHAPTER06-08吵闹

It's too loud.

太吵了。

Don't be so loud.

不要那么吵。

Be quiet, you guys!

安静，孩子们。

That's too loud. Play quietly.

太吵了，安静地玩。

You need to settle down.

你需要镇定一下。

Be quiet and listen to me.

安静点，听我说。

Can you be quiet?

你可以安静吗?

Can't you quiet down a bit?

你就不能安静一点吗?

Stop talking too loud.

说话不要太大声。

Sit down and play.

坐着好好玩。

Use your inside voice.

小声说话。

Could you be quiet since I'm on the phone?

我在讲电话，你不能安静一点吗?

I can't hear the other person.

我都听不到对方的声音了。

Can you play quietly because Mommy's sick?

妈妈很不舒服，你能安静点玩吗?

Who's talking so loudly?

是谁讲话这么大声?

It's distracting.

真的让人很烦。

My ears are hurting.

我耳朵都痛了。

How many times do I have to tell you to be quiet?

要我说多少次安静点。

## CHAPTER06-09顶嘴

What did you just say?

你刚才说了什么?

Don't talk back to Mom.

不要跟妈妈顶嘴。

Stop talking back.

不要回嘴。

You're doing it again!

你又这样了。

Don't start with me.

不要招惹我。

You should control your mouth.

你应该管好自己的嘴巴。

Do you think you should talk like that?

你觉得你一定要那样说吗?

You keep talking back.

你还继续顶嘴。

Mom, you don't understand.

妈妈，你不明白。

Why shouldn't I tell you what I want?

为什么我不能跟你说我想说的?

You should have warned me.

你应该跟我说要小心。

Where did you learn that attitude?

你从哪里学到那种态度的。

I'm not talking back.

我不是在顶嘴。

Can I finish?

能让我把话讲完吗?



You're making me mad.  
I'm not going to hold back if you say one more word.

你让我很生气。  
如果你再多一句话，我就不再忍耐了。

## CHAPTER06-10没礼貌

What did you just do?  
That's not polite.  
That's very rude.  
Don't be rude.  
Mom's not your friend.  
Please behave.  
How could you do such a thing?  
You should know better than that.  
What's the right way to do it?  
Did your teacher teach you like that?  
Did Mommy teach you that way?  
I don't want you to grow up like that.  
Do you know what you did wrong?  
Now, get it right.  
You don't want to be a rude child, right?  
Apologize for your behavior.  
Don't use that word in front of adults.  
Would you be happy if you were him/her?

刚刚你做了什么?  
那是没礼貌的。  
真的是非常无礼。  
不要那么没礼貌。  
妈妈可不是你的朋友。  
要有礼貌。  
你怎么可以做那样的事呢?  
你应该要更懂事。  
要怎么做才是对的?  
你的老师是那样教的吗?  
妈妈教你那样的吗?  
我可不想你长大像那样。  
你知道你哪里做错了吗?  
现在，给我好好做。  
你也不想成为一个没礼貌的小孩，对吧?  
你要对你的行为道歉。  
在大人面前不可说那样的话。  
如果你是他/她的话，你会开心吗?

## CHAPTER06-11闹别扭

Why are you annoyed?  
Is there something wrong?  
Stop it. It's really bugging me.  
What's the problem?  
What's troubling you?  
Stop whining.  
I don't want to hear you whine.  
It's no use whining.  
I told you not to get upset so easily.  
Why are you getting angry at Mommy?  
Please speak calmly.  
I'm going to listen if you speak properly.  
Tell me if there's something wrong.  
Nobody pays attention to me.  
I'm just annoyed./I just don't feel well.  
I don't know why I feel annoyed.  
When you're angry, you look ugly.  
If you feel bad, nothing goes right.  
That's not something you felt bad about.

你为什么不开心?  
有什么不好的事情吗?  
停止，这真的让我很烦。  
有什么问题吗?  
你在烦什么?  
不要再嘀嘀咕咕的了。  
我不想听到你发牢骚。  
发牢骚是没有用的。  
我跟你说过不要那么容易生气。  
为什么你生妈妈的气呢?  
请平静地说。  
你好好说的话，我会听得。  
告诉我你有什么不满。  
没有人关心我。  
我只是不开心。  
我也不知道为什么不开心。  
当你生气时，脸很难看。  
如果你感觉差，没有事会顺利。  
那不是你要生气的事情。

## CHAPTER06-12处罚

I can't stand it.  
You should be grounded.

我再也忍不下去了。  
你一定要被处罚。





You deserve punishment, don't you?  
Tell me what you did wrong.  
It was not my fault.  
Timeout! Sit in the Thinking Chair.  
You know what you did wrong, right?  
Mommy doesn't want to punish you.  
But you should be responsible for your actions.  
Mom, I'm sorry.  
Please forgive me.  
I won't ever do it again.  
You can't watch TV because of your wrongdoing.  
You're grounded and can't use the computer  
because of what you did today.  
Don't just say sorry.  
Go write an apology letter.  
It's all for your own good.

你应该被罚，不是吗？  
告诉我你做错了什么。  
这不是我的错。  
这是处罚，坐到反省的椅子上。  
你知道你做错了什么，对吧？  
妈妈也不想要处罚你。  
但是你应该对你的行为负责。  
妈妈，对不起。  
请原谅我。  
我不会再这样做了。  
因为你犯错了，所以你不能看电视。  
因为你今天做的事情，你要被罚不能看电脑。  
不要只是说对不起。  
去写道歉信。  
这都是为了你好。

## CHAPTER06-13道歉

Say sorry to each other.  
Who wants to apologize first?  
I'm sorry.  
I mean it.  
I'll be careful next time.  
Shake hands with each other.  
Look at each other in the eyes and say sorry.  
Don't blame others for that.  
Say sorry sincerely.  
Let's make sure this never happens again. All  
right?  
Let's get along.  
I didn't do it on purpose.  
I didn't mean it that way.  
It was a mistake. I'm really sorry.  
You owe me a big apology.

互相说对不起。  
谁要先道歉？  
对不起。  
我是诚心地道歉。  
我下次会小心的。  
互相握手吧。  
看着对方的眼睛说对不起。  
不要因此指责别人。  
诚心地说对不起。  
让我们确认这种事以后都不会发生，好吗？  
我们和好吧。  
我不是故意那样的。  
我不是那个意思。  
我错了，真的很对不起。  
你欠我一个正式的道歉。

## CHAPTER06-14和解

I'm so sorry for that.  
Were you really upset?  
Think for yourself. It was your fault.  
Did you hate me because I scolded you?  
Mommy was really upset, too.  
Why did you let out a huge sigh?  
Is it very disappointing?  
You must have been devastated.  
I want you to grow up to be a wonderful person.  
Can I hug you now?  
Come here. I'll give you a kiss.  
You know how Mommy feels, right?

那个，真的很对不起。  
你真的很伤心吧。  
想一想，这是你的错。  
因为我责备你，所以你讨厌我了吗？  
妈妈也很不开心。  
为什么叹那样大的气？  
这很令人失望吗？  
你一定很受伤吧？  
我希望你能成为很棒的人。  
现在我可以抱你吗。  
来这里，妈妈亲你一下。  
你知道妈妈的心情，对吧？





Don't be upset anymore.  
Can I trust you now?  
Mommy trusts you.  
Want to eat something delicious?  
Want to go for a walk.  
I was scared when you were mad, Mommy.  
I didn't do it because I hated you.  
Mommy was too mean. I'm sorry.  
But you are still my loving baby.

不要再不开心了。  
现在我可以相信你吧？  
妈妈相信你。  
要不要吃点好吃的呢？  
要不要去散步？  
妈咪，当你生气时我好害怕哦。  
我不是因为讨厌你才那样做。  
妈妈太暴躁了，对不起。  
但是你还是我的心爱宝贝。

## CHAPTER07劝告

### CHAPTER07-01指出错误

Wait.  
That's not the right thing to do.  
Is that what you should be doing?  
Do what you are supposed to do.  
That's what I'm not pleased with.  
This is not what should happen.  
I told you to stop.  
Why do you always think I'm wrong?  
What did I do wrong?  
It seems like you shouldn't do that.  
Then what should I do?  
Think of something else.  
I hope you won't do it.  
That's not necessary.  
Tell me what you did wrong.  
Why do you keep doing that?  
Do you think you did the right thing?  
That's not a good idea.

等一下。  
那不是正确的行为。  
那是你应该做的吗？  
做你应该做的事情。  
那是我不喜欢的行为。  
这是不该发生的事。  
我叫你停止了。  
为什么你总是认为我做错呢。  
我做错了什么？  
那样做好像是不行的。  
那么，我应该怎样做呢？  
想想其他方法。  
我希望你不要那样做。  
没有那个必要。  
告诉我你哪里做错了。  
为什么你还继续那样做？  
你认为你做对了吗？  
那不是个好的想法。

### CHAPTER07-02发脾气时的教训

Don't shout.  
Stop being angry.  
Stop taking out your anger.  
Don't lose your temper so quickly. That's not good.  
Don't take out your anger on others.  
That's a bad word. Don't say that!  
If you can't control yourself, I'm going to punish you.  
Be patient!  
The one who controls his anger wins.  
You need to get your anger under control.  
Why are you taking out your anger?  
Don't frown. Smile.

不要大叫。  
不要发脾气。  
停止发脾气。  
不要突然发脾气，那不是很好。  
不要把脾气发在别人身上。  
那是不好的话，不可以那样说！  
如果你不能管好自己的话，我就会处罚你。  
忍一下！  
谁能忍住脾气，谁就是赢家。  
你需要让你的脾气在控制之下。  
你为什么发脾气呢？  
不要皱眉头了，笑一笑。



I'm just so mad I don't know what to do.  
I don't want to talk to you.  
Why do you care?  
Then I'm going to get mad at you, too.

我只是太生气，所以不知道该做什么。  
我不要跟你说话。  
你干嘛在意？  
那么，我也要对你发脾气了。

### CHAPTER07-03告诫不要在户外乱跑

Don't run. You could trip and fall.  
There are a lot of cars.  
It's dangerous. There's a car coming.  
Be extra careful on a curve.  
Look around to see if there are any cars.  
Walk on the inner side of the sidewalk.  
Hold my hand.  
Walk with me, Honey.  
The road's dangerous. Don't run.  
Look straight ahead and walk.  
Be careful! There's someone in your way.  
Don't run where there are a lot of people.  
Wait! It is telling you to stop.  
You fell down doing that the last time.  
How come you ran ahead of us?  
Come on, Mommy! Hurry up!  
I was shocked because I thought I had lost you.  
I almost fell down like you warned me.  
Oh, gosh! It was a close call.

不要跑，你会跌倒的。  
车子很多。  
危险。车子来了。  
在转弯处要特别小心。  
要四周看看是否有车子来。  
走在人行道内侧。  
牵住我的手。  
跟我一起走，宝贝。  
路上很危险，不要跑。  
要好好看着前面走。  
小心！前面有人。  
不要在人很多的地方跑来跑去。  
等一下，这里不是写着禁止吗？  
你上次也是那样才跌倒的？  
你怎么跑到我们前面去了？  
妈妈，快来！快点！  
我以为跟你走丢了，吓了一跳。  
我跟你说的一样差点跌倒了。  
哦，千钧一发。

### CHAPTER07-04告诫不要在室内乱跑

The floor is shaking.  
Go outside and run.  
You walk in the house.  
Walk on your tiptoes.  
Who's running in the house?  
I didn't run much.  
Your brother's running because you are running.  
No, don't jump like that.  
Don't jump off the couch.  
Don't jump on the couch. There is dust everywhere.  
The janitor is going to come up.  
You should never run at night.  
The neighbors are sleeping now.  
The people downstairs are going to say it's loud.  
Do you like it if you hear stomping from upstairs neighbor?

地板在震动了。  
去外面跑。  
你在屋内要用走的。  
踮起脚尖走。  
是谁在房子里面跑？  
我没有乱跑。  
因为你在跑，连你弟弟也一起跑了  
不可以，不可以那样跳。  
不要从沙发上跳下来。  
不可以从沙发上跳，到处都是灰尘。  
警卫要上来了。  
你绝对不可以晚上跑。  
现在邻居们都睡觉了。  
楼下的人会抗议太吵了。  
你会喜欢听到从楼上的邻居传来脚踏的声音吗？

### CHAPTER07-05阻止危险的行动

No, it's dangerous.  
Move far away.  
Step back/Move back.

不可以，危险。  
走开，离远一点。  
往后退。



You could bleed.  
Don't come near.  
What happens if I touch this?  
If you touch it, you'll get in trouble.  
I don't want you to touch it.  
Don't touch it because it's very dangerous.  
Don't let your brother touch it.  
Why can't I touch it?  
You could get hurt.  
It's hot/sharp.  
Not yet. You can touch it when you grow up.  
Let me put this out of your reach.  
If you get hurt, Mommy will be sad.  
let's promise never to touch it.  
You should've asked mommy first.  
That could have been dangerous.

你会流血的。  
不要靠近过来。  
如果我碰到这个，会怎么样呢？  
碰到的话，你会有麻烦的哦。  
我不希望你去碰它。  
不要碰它，因为很危险。  
不要让你弟弟碰到。  
为什么我不能碰？  
你可能会受伤。  
这很烫。/很锐利。  
还不行，等你长大后才可以碰。  
我把这个放在你拿不到的地方。  
如果你受伤，妈妈会难过的。  
答应我，绝对不可以碰。  
你那时应该先问过妈妈。  
那也有可能很危险。

## CHAPTER07-06不要碰哥哥妹妹的东西

You'd better not touch it.  
Don't touch it because it's your brother's.  
Your sister is not going to like it if you touch it.  
Your sister really cares about it .  
I just want to look at it.  
I'll leave it right after I see it .  
Do you like when someone touches your stuff.  
Did your sister allow you to touch it?  
Ask first and then play with it.  
I won't help you when your sister gets mad.  
Handle it careful and then put it back.  
Mom, can you keep it a secret?  
Please don't tell her I played with this.  
What if it broke?  
Your sister will get mad for sure.  
She touched mine,too.  
Can't you let your little sister play with it for a while?

你最好不要碰那个。  
这是你哥哥的东西，不要碰喔。  
如果你碰了这个东西，你妹妹会不开心喔。  
你妹妹真的很珍惜那个东西。  
我只是想看看己。  
我看完后会把它放回原位。  
你会喜欢有人碰你的东西吗？  
你妹妹同意你碰了吗？  
先去问，再来跟它玩。  
如果你妹妹生气的话，我不会帮你的。  
小心地拿，然后放回原位。  
妈妈，你能帮我保密吗？  
请不要告诉妹妹我玩了这个。  
万一坏了怎么办？  
你妹妹当然会生气。  
妹妹也会拿我的东西。  
你能把这个让你的妹妹玩一会吗？

## CHAPTER07-07劝告不要涂鸦

What's this? Who did this?  
Who scribbled all over the wall?  
Why did you draw here?  
Drawing should be done on paper.  
I want to draw.  
I'll erase it later.  
This won't come off.  
You should have asked mommy for paper.  
Ask for paper next time, Ok?

这是什么？谁做的？  
是谁把墙壁涂鸦得乱七八糟？  
你为什么在这里画画？  
你应该在纸上画画。  
我想要画画。  
我等一下会擦掉。  
这是擦不掉的。  
你应该跟妈妈要纸张。  
下次要跟我拿纸张，知道吗？



Since you drew it,you should erase it.  
Are you happy now since it's so dirty?  
You shouldn't just be scribbling everywhere.  
Mommy's upset because the floor is so dirty.  
Draw on this.

是你画的,你要负责擦掉。  
弄得这样脏,现在你高兴了吗?  
你不可以 anywhere 涂鸦。  
妈妈很不高兴,因为地板被弄得很脏。  
在这里画。

## CHAPTER07-08小心陌生人

Don't talk to strangers.  
Don't follow anyone even if they ask.  
Don't tell a stranger your name or number.  
Tell your teacher or mom if something weird happens.  
Ask for help when a stranger comes.  
Don't go near a stranger's car.  
Don't get in a stranger's car.  
Just say no firmly.  
Only walk on busy streets.  
Walk where people can see you.  
Just run if something feels wrong.

不要跟陌生人说话。  
即使有人要求,你也不可以跟他一起走。  
不要告诉陌生人你的姓名和电话  
如果发生奇怪的事要告诉老师或妈妈。  
有奇怪的人出现时要请求帮忙  
不要靠近陌生人的车子。  
不要坐陌生人的车。  
要坚决地说不。  
你要走大路。  
走在有人可以看到你的地方。  
觉得不对劲时,绝对要跑开。

## CHAPTER07-09身体很脏时

It's so dirty.  
What's on your body?  
Look at the mirror.  
You smell bad.  
Shouldn't you wash up?  
I'm not that dirty.  
Go to the bathroom.  
There's dirt on you. Want me to wash it off.  
You should look better if you were cleaner.  
Go change.  
Where did you get so dirty?  
What happened to your new shirt?  
Germs will love to live in you.  
You could get sick if you're so dirty.

太脏了  
你的身体沾到什么了?  
照照镜子。  
你闻起来很臭。  
你不是应该洗一下吗?  
我没有那么脏。  
进去浴室。  
有脏东西在你身上,要我把它洗掉吗?  
如果你更干净,你会更好看的。  
去换衣服。  
你在哪里弄得这么脏呢?  
你的新衬衫发生了什么事?  
细菌会喜欢跟你一起住的。  
这样脏的话,你会生病的。

## CHAPTER07-10房间脏乱时

Can you clean your room?  
Clear up your desk.  
Your room is too dirty.  
I just cleaned up.  
You should clean up own room.  
I can't even walk by.  
There's no room to walk.  
Where should this go?  
How can a person live in here?  
Junk is all over the place.  
It's hard to find things now.  
Your messy room drives me crazy.

你能整理下房间吗?  
整理一下书桌吧。  
你的房间太脏了。  
我刚整理好。  
你应该整理自己的房间。  
我连走都走不进去。  
我连可以走的空间都没有了。  
这个应该放在哪里。  
这是人住的房间吗?  
整个地方都是垃圾。  
现在这样很难找东西。  
你脏乱的房间快把我搞疯了。





I'll come by in 10 minutes.  
I want to be it clean by then.  
My brother did it, too. Why should I clean it alone?  
I didn't make this mess.  
Help your brother clean up.  
Want to have a match to see who can clean up faster?  
Your teacher is coming soon, so let's clean it.  
Call mommy when you're done cleaning.  
What do you do when you're done playing?  
I need to clean up.  
Let's organize them by color.  
Place them according to their size.  
Mom, where does this toy go?

我10分钟后再来。  
到时，我希望它被整理好。  
弟弟也弄乱，为什么只有我要整理呢？  
这个脏乱不是我弄的。  
帮你弟弟整理一下。  
想要比赛看谁比较快整理好吗？  
你的老师快来了，我们来整理它吧。  
你整理好后，叫妈妈一下。  
当你不玩时，你应该做什么呢？  
我需要整理。  
我们按照颜色整理它们。  
根据大小把它们放好。  
妈妈，这个玩具要放哪？

## CHAPTER07-11打人时

It's bad to hit others.  
Never hit others.  
You shouldn't hurt other people.  
Hold it even if you want to hit him.  
I hate him so badly that I don't know what to do.  
He hit me first.  
Don't hit him, talk to him.  
You will do the wrong thing, too if you hit him back.  
Your friend's going to be hurt if you hit him.  
I told you never to do that.  
You need to get in trouble.  
Wan me to call the cops?  
You must not hit girls.  
Your friend's going to want to play with you now.  
Are you fine with it?

打人是坏事的。  
绝对不可以打人。  
你不应该伤害其它人。  
即使你想打他，也要忍下来。  
我太讨厌他了，以至于我不知道该怎么做。  
是他先打我的。  
不要用打的，要用说的。  
你打回去的话，你也是不对的。  
你打他的话，你朋友会受伤的。  
我告诉你绝对不可以那样做。  
你需要被处罚。  
你要我去叫警察吗？  
你不可以打女孩。  
现在你的朋友不会想跟你玩，这样你也可以吗？

## CHAPTER08习惯养成

### CHAPTER08-01正确坐姿

Don't watch TV while laying down.  
Alright.  
Sit properly.  
Sit comfortably.  
Sit crisscross.  
Straighten your back. Keep your back straight.  
Sit on your bottom.  
Sit all the way down.  
Don't just perch on the chair.  
The chair/desk is uncomfortable.  
The chair is too low/high.

不要躺着看电视。  
好啦。  
坐好。  
舒服点坐。  
盘腿坐。  
腰挺直。  
屁股贴着椅子，  
整个坐下去。  
不要跨坐。  
这椅子/书桌不舒服。  
这椅子太低/高。





Mom, the desk/chair is too wobbly  
Stop shaking the desk.  
Don't put your head on your desk.  
Don't put your hand under your chin.  
Sit in a chair with your back up.  
lean against the back of the chair.  
Why do you keep getting out of the chair.  
Mom will push the chair in for you.  
Don't stand on the swivel chair.  
Don't spin on the chair.  
Don't sit on your knees.  
Don't lie down.  
Don't shake your legs.  
It's more comfortable to sit like this.  
Your back might be bent later.  
If you sit like that, your waist will be bent.  
Make sure not to bend too much at your waist.  
I'm afraid you'll have a swayback.  
I don't want you to get bent over like an old lady.

妈妈, 这书桌/椅子太晃.  
停止摇书桌.  
不要趴在书桌上.  
不要托住下巴.  
把腰挺直坐好.  
背要靠着椅背.  
为什么你一直从椅子上起来?  
妈妈把椅子推到屁股下给你坐.  
不要站在旋转椅上.  
不要转椅子.  
不要跪坐.  
不要躺着.  
不要抖脚.  
这样坐着会舒服.  
以后你的背会弯曲的.  
你那样坐的话, 你的腰会弯曲的.  
确保你的腰不会太弯.  
我怕你会有脊椎弯曲的问题.  
我不希望你跟老太太一样弯腰.

## CHAPTER08-02拿铅笔

Hold your pencil right.  
Don't hold on it too hard.  
Hold it like Mommy.  
You hold the pencil too long/short.  
Write with your right hand.  
I use my left hand better.  
Your pencil's broken.  
Mom, will you sharpen my pencil?

拿好铅笔.  
不要握得太用力.  
像妈妈一样拿.  
你铅笔拿得太长/短了.  
用右手写写看.  
我比较会用左手.  
你的铅笔断了.  
妈妈, 你能帮我削铅笔吗?

## CHAPTER08-03写字

The letters are too large/small.  
You want them bigger.  
Try to write along the line.  
Your handwriting is sloppy.  
Make your letters the same size.  
Don't write too hard.  
Erase it with an eraser.  
Try to write again.  
Get it right, honey.  
Write slowly.  
Should I write like this, mommy?  
How do you write this?  
You have to space the words.  
The ending sound is misspelled.  
It's a capital K/a lower case k.  
Go to the next line.  
Put the space between the words.

字母写太大/小了.  
你的字要写大一点.  
试着沿着线写.  
你写得字太潦草了.  
把你的字母写得一样大.  
不要写得太用力.  
用橡皮擦擦掉.  
试着再写一次.  
宝贝, 要写正确.  
慢慢写.  
妈妈, 我可以像这样写吗?  
这个要怎么写?  
你写字要留间隔.  
你的尾音拼错了.  
这个是大写K, 小写k.  
写下一行.  
单字之间要留间隔.



I think you got the punctuation wrong.  
You spelled the word wrong.  
Checking your spelling.  
I like your handwriting.  
Sit properly when writing.  
Mommy, my fingers hurt.  
It's hard to write on unlined paper.

我想你用错标点符号了。  
你拼错了。  
检查你的拼字。  
我喜欢你写的字。  
当你写字时要坐正。  
妈妈, 我的手指痛。  
没有印线的纸张很难写。

## CHAPTER08-04 看电视

Back off from the TV.  
Back off a little more.  
Don't watch TV while laying down.  
You are watching too close.  
Turn off the TV.  
BE sure to turn it off after watching it.  
It's not good for your eyes to watch it like that.  
Are you sitting properly?  
You're lying down again.  
I'll turn off the TV if you sit like that.  
I'll turn off the TV if you don't move back.  
You promised to watch for 30 minutes.  
This will be the last thing you watch.  
Make sure you turn it off after this.  
Lean on the cushion behind you.  
Mom, the sofa's uncomfortable.  
Mom, will you get me a cushion?  
Mom, will you get me something to lean on?  
Don't press the remote on and on.  
Watch TV after finishing your homework.  
Finish what you need to do first.  
Stop watching TV and do your homework.  
You keep flipping through the channels.  
I think you're obsessed with TV.

离电视远一点。  
再往后一点。  
不要躺着看电视。  
你电视看得太近啰。  
关掉电视。  
看完电视后一定要关掉。  
那样看的话, 对眼睛不好。  
你好好坐着吗?  
你又躺下来了。  
如果你那样坐的话, 我会关掉电视。  
如果你不往后一点的话, 我会关掉电视。  
你答应我只看30分钟。  
这是你最后能看的了。  
这看完后你一定要把电视关掉  
靠在后面的靠垫  
妈妈, 这个沙发不舒服  
妈妈, 你能给我一个靠垫吗?  
妈妈, 你能给我一个可以靠的东西吗?  
不要一直按遥控器  
写完功课后, 再看电视  
先完成你要做的事情  
不要看电视, 去做你的功课。  
你一直在换频道  
我想你电视中毒了

## CHAPTER08-05把东西放回原位

There are lots of things on the floor.  
Put it in the drawer.  
Put them in the shelf.  
Organize your things well.  
You should clear up.  
Where was this before?  
This doesn't belong here.  
Put this where it is supposed to be.  
Put it where it belongs.  
Put the used things back into their place.  
Put the things where they belongs so you can find them easily.  
You should have put them in the right place

地板满满地都是东西  
把它放进抽屉  
把它们放上架子  
好好整理你的东西  
你应该收拾你自己的东西  
这个之前放在哪里?  
这个不是放在这里的東西  
把这个放在它应该在的地方  
把它物归原位  
把用过的东西放回原处  
把东西放在原位, 这样你能很容易找到  
你当时应该把它们放在正确的地方



Mom, where should I put this?  
Mom, I'll put this here.  
I'm going to use this now.  
Where did Mommy tell you to put this?  
Isn't it easy to find things since you cleaned up?

妈妈，这个我要放哪？  
妈妈，我把这个放在这里  
我现在要用这个  
妈妈告诉你要把这个放哪了？  
整理好之后，不是很容易找到吗？

## CHAPTER08-06整理衣服

Hang your jacket on the hanger.  
Put it in the closet.  
Mom, there's nowhere to put this.  
Mom, this is too small now.  
Take out what you're not going to wear.  
There's a hole here.  
I'll sew this for you.  
Put your dirty socks in the laundry.  
Why are these socks here?  
I told you not to turn the socks inside out.  
The drawers are full.  
Let's organize our spring / summer / fall / winter clothes.  
These clothes are out of season, so let's put them back.  
How about donating the clothes that you don't wear?  
Let's give away the old clothes to your cousin.

把你的外套挂衣架上  
把它放在衣柜  
妈妈，没有地方可以放了  
妈妈，现在这件太小了  
把你不穿的衣服拿出来  
这个有个洞  
我来帮你把这缝好  
把脏的袜子放进洗衣篮内  
这些袜子为什么在这里？  
我告诉过你不要把袜子反过来了  
这些抽屉满了  
我们把春/夏/秋/冬的衣服整理好吧  
我们把你不穿的衣服放进箱子内吧  
把你不穿的衣服捐出去，如何？  
我们把旧衣服送给表妹吧

## CHAPTER08-06整理衣服-有关收纳的表达

drawer  
closet  
clothes hanger  
shelf  
peg  
coat hanger  
storage container  
hamper

抽屉  
壁柜  
衣架  
架子  
挂衣服的衣架或者木钉  
大衣衣架  
保管箱  
洗衣篮

## CHAPTER08-07吃饭礼仪

Did you wash your hands before eating?  
Wash your hands well before eating.  
Start eating once the adult starts.  
Don't hold the spoon and chopsticks together.  
Use your chopsticks right.  
Hold your chopsticks like this.  
Don't talk with food in your mouth./ Don't talk with your mouth full.  
Don't leave any food uneaten. / Don't leave any food on your plate  
Don't smack your lips when you eat.  
Turn your head when coughing.

吃饭前洗好手了吗？  
吃饭前，要好好洗手  
等大人们先开动，你才能吃  
不要同时拿筷子和汤匙  
好好地使用筷子  
像这样拿筷子  
食物在嘴里时，不要说话  
食物不可以吃剩  
吃饭时，不可以啧啧作响  
咳嗽时，一定要转过头去



Don't spit it out everywhere!  
Do not leave the table while you're eating.  
Be careful not to drop the food.  
Don't spill your soup.  
Sit properly when eating.  
Don't make noises when you eat soup.  
Don't pick at the food with your hand. / Do not use your hands to pick at the food.  
Don't watch TV while eating  
Chew with your mouth closed.  
Don't move around while eating  
Don't lick your fingers, Use a napkin.  
Don't blow on your food too hard to cool it off.  
Keep your legs still under the table.  
Don't ever burp at the table.  
Yuck, You burped, Daddy.  
Don't talk about dirty things while eating.  
It's not polite to blow your nose at the table.

不要把它吐得到处都是  
吃饭时，不要离开位子  
小心不要把食物掉出来。  
不要把汤洒出来  
吃饭的时候，要坐正  
喝汤时，不要发出声音  
不可以用手抓食物  
不可以边看电视边吃饭  
闭上嘴巴咀嚼  
吃饭的时候，不要跑来跑去  
不要舔手指，要用纸巾擦  
把食物吹凉时，不要吹太用力  
把你的双腿好好放在桌子下面  
不要在餐桌上打嗝  
噫，爸爸，你打嗝了  
吃饭的时候，不可以讲脏的东西  
在餐桌上擤鼻涕是没礼貌的行为

## CHAPTER09孩子们常用的表达

### CHAPTER09-01找东西

Do your homework, Honey!  
I'll do it after I do this.  
Mom, where is my ruler?  
I can't find it, Mom.  
Look for it carefully.  
Try to think where you left it.  
I'm sure I put it here.  
Mom, can you find my notebook?  
I thought I left it here.  
I've looked all over for it, but I can't see it  
Did you throw it away, Mom?  
Did you look over there?  
It's over there.  
Here it is!  
I found it.  
Why is it there?  
I didn't leave it there.  
Mom, I lost my pencil case.  
Minji took it.  
Where did you see it last ?  
When was the last time you used it?  
Didn't you leave it at school?  
I told you to put your things in their places

做功课喽，亲爱的  
我玩完这个后会去做  
妈妈，我的尺在哪里？  
妈妈，我找不到  
找仔细一点  
试着想想你放哪了  
我确定我把它放在这了  
妈妈，你能找到我的笔记本吗？  
我以为我把它放在这了  
我都找遍了，可是还是没看到  
妈妈，你把它丢掉了吗？  
那边你找了吗？  
它在那边  
在这里  
我找到了  
为什么会在那里呢？  
我没有把它放在那里  
妈妈，我的铅笔盒不见了  
敏基把它拿走了  
你上次是在哪里看到的  
你上次用是什么时候  
你没有把它放在学校吗？  
我告诉过你要把东西放在原位

### CHAPTER09-02要东西

Get me some water, Mom.

妈妈，给我一些水





It isn't enough.  
I want more.  
This is enough  
I want a snack  
I'm hungry! Can I have dinner?  
Will you hand me the book?  
Will you pass me the book?  
I can't reach the high.  
Can you get me that over there?  
Will you get me the remote?  
You have hands, Take it yourself.  
How come you keep asking?  
That's not Mommy's job, Do it yourself  
Can't you do it on your own?  
I forgot my shoe bag.  
Mom, I forgot to bring my supplies.  
Will you take my supplies to school?  
It's done!  
Mom's busy, Do it by yourself.  
I'm doing this for you now, but do it yourself next time

这不够  
我还要更多  
这样就够了  
我要点心  
我饿了！我能吃晚餐了吗？  
你能把书拿给我吗？  
你能把玩具给我吗？  
那个高度，我拿不到  
你能把那边的那个东西给我吗？  
你可以帮我拿遥控器吗？  
你有手，自己拿  
怎么一直要这要那？  
那不是妈妈的工作，你自己做  
你不能自己做吗？  
我忘记我的鞋袋了  
妈妈，我忘记带学校用品了。  
你能把学校用品带来学校吗？  
好的  
妈妈很忙，你自己做。  
这次妈妈帮你做，但是下次你要自己做。

### CHAPTER09-03做事拖拉时

Can I do it tomorrow?  
I'll do it in 5minutes.  
Don't push me.  
I'm almost done, Wait a little.  
I'm tired.  
I'm all tired out.  
I have a headache.  
Can I do it after I get some rest?  
I'll do it after I do this.  
I have no more strength to do it.  
Mom, I need some rest.  
Okay, okay, I'll definitely get it done later.  
There's still a lot of time left.  
You don't have to rush.  
I'll do it, Promise!  
Why do you never let me rest, Mom ?  
You always say later.  
Finish it right this minute.  
Do what you have to do.  
It's been pushed back a week.  
There's no time, Stop pushing it back.

这个我能明天做吗？  
这个我五分钟后再做  
不要催我  
我快做好了，请再等一下  
我累了  
我累垮了  
我头好痛  
我可以休息一下后再做吗？  
我做完这个再做  
我已经没有力气去做了  
妈妈，我需要休息  
好好，我待会一定把它完成  
还有很多时间  
你不需要那么急嘛  
我会做，我发誓  
妈，为什么你都不让我休息？  
你一直说等一下  
现在就把它完成！  
做你应该做的事情  
这已经拖了一个星期了  
没有时间，不要再拖了

### CHAPTER09-04要求在多玩一会

Can't I play a little more?  
I want to play for 30 more minutes.

我不能再玩一会吗？  
我想要多玩30分钟



I'm not done playing.	我还没玩完
I'm not done yet.	我还没玩完
I didn't play well enough.	我没有好好玩够
We haven't even gotten started.	我们甚至还没有开始玩
I just started.	我刚才开始玩
Why does time fly?	为什么时间过得这么快
It's already that late?	已经那么晚了吗?
It's starting to get fun.	刚开始觉得有趣的说
Allow me to play a little more.	让我再多玩一会
I'll study hard if you let me play more.	如果你让我多玩一会，我会努力读书的
I finished my work. So can I play more?	我完成我的事情了，所以我可以多玩一会吗?
There's not enough time to play.	没有足够的时间去玩
I wish I could play more.	我希望我能多玩一会
It's been only 5 minutes since I started the game.	我才刚开始玩5分钟而已
Promise you'll let me play longer next time.	答应我下次会让我玩久一点
I know how you feel, but you can't play all the time.	我明白你的心情，但是你不能一直玩了。
You had enough fun, I guess.	我想你已经玩得差不多了
Play time is over, Get ready to go to bed.	玩耍时间结束，去准备睡觉

## CHAPTER09-05表示讨厌

I'm tired.	我累了
That's not fun.	那不好玩
I hate it because it's too childish.	那个太幼稚了，我不喜欢
It's a childlike thing.	那是小孩子的玩意儿
It's not something for my age.	这不符合我的年龄
I just don't want to do it.	我只是不喜欢做
There's no time.	没有时间
I don't know how to do it.	我不知道怎么做
That's too hard.	那太难了
That's not something I can do.	那不是我能做到的事情
Can I not do it?	我能不做吗
Should I do this?	我一定要做这个吗
Can I stop it?	我能把它停止吗
Can't my brother do it?	弟弟不能做吗
Do it again?	又要做吗?
Other kids don't even do that.	其他小孩也没有做那个啊
Mom always makes me do work!	妈妈总是叫我做事!
Mom and Dad don't even do it.	爸爸妈妈不是也没做
My friends will make fun of me.	我的朋友会取笑我的
Don't make me do what I don't want to do.	不要叫我做我不想做的事
I'm not feeling good today.	我今天的状况不好
I don't feel like doing it.	我不想做
It's your job ,though.	即使如此，那也是你的事
How come you always say no?	为什么你一直说不要
You need to be doing this, and you know it.	这是你一定要做的事，你也知道的
I am sorry, Nobody can do that for you.	抱歉，没有人可以帮你做



## CHAPTER09-06生气

Go away!  
Why do you do that to me?  
Stop bothering me.  
Don't say a word.  
Don't talk like that.  
You're always like that!  
It's mine, Don't touch it.  
Who told you to touch it?  
I'm going to get you if you do it again!  
Gosh, nobody's listening to me.  
I don't want to talk to you, Mom.  
Don't you know what I'm saying?  
You're always like that, Mom!  
Then try it by yourself, Mom.  
You always do it your way, Dad!  
I'm not going to listen to Mommy now.  
I'm going to do it my way!  
Don't talk to me.  
It's not polite to say that.  
What made you this angry?  
It's no use getting angry.  
What good is it to stay angry?

走开!  
为什么你要对我那样?  
不要再惹我  
再给我说话试试看  
不要那样说  
你一直都是那样  
这是我的, 不要碰  
谁准你碰的  
如果你再那样做的话, 我会动手的  
天啊, 没有人听我说话  
妈, 我不要跟你说话  
你不知道我在说什么吗?  
妈妈, 你总是那样  
那么, 妈, 你也自己做做看啊  
爸, 你总是照自己的意思去做  
我现在再也不听妈妈的话了  
我要照我的方式去做  
不要跟我说话  
那样说真的很不礼貌  
是什么让你这么生气呢  
生气也是没有用的  
一直生气的话, 有什么好处呢

## CHAPTER09-07表示不公平

Mom always blames me.  
You always nag me!  
Why do you only scold me?  
It's not fair.  
He is bigger.  
Hers is better than mine.  
She said it first.  
He did it.  
You favor Jina over me.  
Why do you like Jina more than me?  
Buy me something, too.  
I don't want hand-me-downs.  
Don't compare me with her.  
Am I not your son?  
Why does Jisu always get the good one?  
I need it more than her.  
You always think of her first.  
That's not true.  
I love you both the same .  
I don't like the way you talk.  
If something bothers you, tell me. Don't hold back.

妈妈总是指责我  
你总是对我唠叨  
为什么你只骂我?  
这不公平。  
他的更大。  
她的比我的好。  
她先说的。  
他做的。  
你对吉娜偏心。  
为什么你喜欢吉娜比我多?  
也给我买些东西。  
我不要别人不要的衣服。  
不要把我跟她作比较。  
我不是你的儿子吗?  
为什么智秀总是拿走好的?  
我比她更需要那个。  
你总是先想到她。  
不是那样的。  
我对你们两个的爱都是一样的。  
我不喜欢你说话的方式。  
如果有什么事在烦你告诉我。不要忍住不说。



## CHAPTER10爸爸正在讲理由

### CHAPTER10-01说晚回家/很忙

Where are you, Dad? You're not home, yet.  
I'm afraid I'm running late.  
When are you coming, Dad?  
I think I'll be late because I have a meeting.  
There's traffic. I think I'm running a little late.  
I might be late. Go to sleep, Honey.  
Don't wait for me.  
I have a guest.  
I suddenly have something to do.  
I have to eat dinner with my coworkers.  
I have to finish something.  
I'm working.  
Dad is still at work.  
I'm busy keeping my deadline.  
I'm really busy.  
I have to meet my friend.  
I'll come home after eating dinner.  
I have no time to talk.  
I'll call later.  
Are you going to be late again?  
The kids are waiting for you.  
Dad, I miss you.  
Come home early.  
I'll come right home when it is over.  
I'll try to go in as early as I can.

爸，你在哪？你还没回家哦。  
抱歉，我会晚一点。  
爸，你什么时候回家？  
我还有会议，我想会很晚。  
现在塞车，我想会晚一点。  
我可能会晚回去。宝贝，你先睡。  
不要等我。  
有客户要来。  
我突然有事情要做。  
我要跟同事去吃晚餐。  
我必须把事情处理掉。  
我在工作。  
爸爸还在工作。  
我忙着在期限内完成工作。  
我真的很忙。  
我必须去见朋友。  
我会吃过晚餐后再回家。  
我没有时间跟你聊了。  
我晚一点再打给你。  
你又要晚回来了吗？  
孩子们正在等你呢。  
爸，我想你。  
早点回家。  
一结束，我就立刻回家。  
我会尽可能早点回去。

### CHAPTER10-02 妈妈的唠叨

Why did you come home now?  
Take off your clothes and go to sleep.  
Will you put your laundry in the laundry bin?  
Don't just leave your clothes everywhere.  
How come I should pick up after you?  
Can't you stop watching TV?  
Do you always have to eat dinner out?  
Stop drinking too much.  
You need to get some exercise.  
You should get rid of your love handles.  
Think about your health.  
Stop smoking.  
Will you help me clean the house?  
Did you forget the promise we made before we got married?  
Will you do the dishes, Darling?

为什么你现在才回来？  
脱下衣服去睡吧。  
你能把你洗衣服放进洗衣篮吗？  
不要把你的衣服到处乱放。  
为什么我要在你后面帮你捡？  
你不能停止看电视吗？  
你晚餐一定要总是吃外面吗？  
不要喝太多酒。  
你需要去做些运动。  
你应该消除你的腰间赘肉。  
注意你的健康。  
不要抽烟了。  
你能帮我打扫房间吗？  
你忘了我们结婚前的约定了吗？  
亲爱的，你要洗碗吗？





Don't lie down when the kids are around.  
Will you do it for me, Darling?  
Play with the kids, please.

不要在孩子面前躺着。  
亲爱的，你能帮我做吗？  
请跟孩子们玩。

### CHAPTER10-03 爸爸的周末约定

Wait for the weekend.  
You can take my word for it.  
I'll keep my promise this weekend.  
What do you want to do this weekend?  
Want to watch a movie this weekend?  
I'll take you on a drive.  
I'll try to make it work for you this time.  
Plan on something for the weekend.  
Let's study with Daddy this weekend.  
Let's play soccer together this Sunday.  
I'll play with you this weekend.  
Sorry! I'll do it this weekend.  
Sorry! I'll do it during this week.  
Let's go to eat something delicious.  
We only have time on weekends.  
I have no time on weekdays.  
Let's go on a trip during the long holiday.  
I'll tuck you into bed on Saturdays and Sundays.  
I'll help you clean up the house this weekend.  
I'll do the dishes this weekend.  
I'll take care of the kids, so get some rest.  
You don't have to do a thing this weekend,  
I'll do everything today.

好好期待周末吧！  
你可以相信我的话。  
我会遵守这周末的约定。  
这周末你想做什么呢？  
这个周末要看电影吗？  
我带你去兜风。  
这次我为你达成这件事。  
计划下一周末要做什么吧。  
这个周末跟爸爸一起学习吧。  
这个周日我们一起去踢足球吧。  
这个周末，我会陪你玩。  
抱歉！我这个周末再来做。  
抱歉！我这个礼拜会做。  
我们去吃些好吃的吧。  
我们只有周末有时间。  
我在平日没时间。  
连休时我们去旅行吧。  
我会在周六和周日哄你入睡。  
这个周末我会帮你打扫房子。  
这个周末我来洗碗。  
我来照顾孩子，你休息一下吧。  
亲爱的，这个周末你什么也不需要做。  
今天事情都由我来做。

### CHAPTER10-04 爸爸的解释

Sorry that I forgot.  
I wasn't trying to do that.  
Something kept me busy.  
Will you understand?  
You know what I mean?  
I wanted to go, too.  
I wanted to do it for you.  
I'll make sure I do it next time.  
I was trying to make it up to you.  
I'm also sad it didn't work out well.  
I was trying to keep my word this time.  
It didn't work as planned.  
I won't do it next time.  
This won't happen again.  
Let's do it next time.

抱歉，我忘了。  
我不是要那样做的。  
我一直有事情要忙。  
你能理解吗？  
你知道我的意思吗？  
我也是很想去。  
我本来想要帮你做的。  
我确定下次我一定会做。  
我本来打算补偿你的。  
结果变成这样，我也很难受。  
这次我真的想要履行约定的。  
它并没有按计划进行。  
我下次不会再这样了。  
这种事不会再发生了。  
我们下次再做吧。

### CHAPTER10-05 安慰疲惫的爸爸

You must be tired, Honey.  
You know our family loves you, right?

亲爱的，你一定很累吧。  
你知道全家都很爱你，对吧？



I love you, Dad.  
Cheer up, Dad.  
I'll give you a massage, Dad.  
I'll give you a kiss.  
Dad, we're always behind you.  
Don't let yourself down.  
Straighten your shoulders.  
See? Daddy's the best.  
I'll take care of you when I grow up.  
Do it after resting a little.  
I hope you slow down for your health.  
Even if you're busy, don't forget to eat.  
I made a lot of good food, so you can cheer up.  
You know we really need you, right?

我爱你，爸爸。  
爸，提起精神来。  
爸，我帮你按摩。  
我会给你亲亲。  
爸，我们一直在背后支持你。  
不要灰心。  
舒展一下肩膀  
看吧，爸爸是最厉害的。  
我长大后照顾你的。  
休息一下再做吧。  
为了你的健康，我希望你能慢慢做。  
即使很忙，也不要忘了吃饭哦。  
我做了很多好吃的菜帮你打气。  
你知道我们很需要你，对吧？

## CHAPTER10-06表达对孩子的爱和关心 Praise

I love you.  
You are the best.  
You are my boy (girl).  
Good boy./ Good girl.  
You're such a good boy (girl).  
You're being so good.

我爱你。  
你是最棒的。  
你是最特别的。  
你是我的好孩子。  
好孩子。  
你真是个好孩子。

## CHAPTER10-07宽扎节 Kwanzaa

Do you know what Kwanzaa is?  
I've never heard of it. What is it?  
It is a festival that lasts for a week from December 26 to January 1. It is a festival for African-Americans living in America.  
What do people do during Kwanzaa?  
They have a candlelight ceremony and exchange gifts.

你知道什么是宽扎节吗？  
我没听过，那是什么？  
宽扎节是住在美国的非洲裔美国人，从12月26日到1月1日为止，举行的一个礼拜的庆典。  
宽扎节要做什么呢？  
他们会举行烛光典礼，还有交换礼物。

## CHAPTER10-08光明节 Hanukkah

Hanukkah is another winter holiday in America.  
It's a Jewish festival that lasts for eight days.  
Hanukkah is also known as the "festival of lights".  
For the eight days of Hanukkah candles are lit one by one.  
They use a special candle stick called Menorah.

在美国，光明节是另一个冬天节日。  
这是犹太人连续八天的节日。  
光明节也叫做“光的庆典”。  
光明节的八天中，一天点一根蜡烛。  
他们会使用名叫Menorah的烛台。

# CHAPTER 11 孩子们喜欢的基本游戏

## CHAPTER11-01 要求一起玩的时候

Mommy, play with me.  
Ok! Let's see what we can do.  
Mommy, I'm bored.  
It's play time!  
Mom, can you play with me?  
I wonder what's fun to play.

妈咪，跟我玩吧！  
好啊，我们来看看可以玩什么。  
妈，我很无聊。  
该是玩耍的时间了。  
妈，你能和我一起玩吗？  
我想知道有什么好玩的。



Do you have anything fun?  
I'll stop reading now.  
I don't want to watch TV anymore.  
I hate to play alone.  
I need friends to play together with.  
Want to have some fun?  
Are you ready to have fun?  
Let's find something fun.  
Yay! Sounds great!  
Okay. My baby must have been bored.  
Sure. What do you want to do with me,  
Sweetheart?  
What should we play?  
Do whatever you want to do.  
Let's do anything.  
Mom, let's solve a puzzle.  
Mommy's feeling good today. I can play with you  
all day long.  
Playing with my baby is the most fun.  
I love it when Mommy plays games with me.

你有什么有趣的吗?  
现在我要停止看书了。  
我不想再看电视了。  
我讨厌一个人玩。  
我需要跟朋友一起玩。  
要玩点有趣的吗?  
你准备好要玩有趣的吗?  
我们来找点好玩的吧。  
耶!听起来好棒喔!  
好,我的宝贝一定很无聊吧。  
  
当然,你想跟我玩什么呢,甜心?  
  
我们要玩什么呢?  
玩你想要玩的。  
我们随便玩吧。  
妈,和我一起拼图。  
妈妈今天的状况很好,可以陪你玩一整天。  
跟我的宝贝玩是最有趣的。  
我最喜欢妈妈跟我玩游戏了。

## CHAPTER11-02下次和你玩

Let's play next time.  
Can't you see Mommy's very busy?  
Sorry. Mommy's too busy.  
I'll play with you after I do the dishes.  
I'm working, so I'll play with you later.  
I can play with you in a minute after work.  
Can you wait? Thanks.  
Wait! Let's play a little later.  
Wait for five minutes.  
Can you play with me in 5 minutes?  
I want to play right now.  
Play with me right away.  
Not now.  
There's no time today./ I have no time today.  
It's too late. Let's play a lot tomorrow.  
There's too much to do right now.  
Mommy also wants to play with you, but I can't  
right now.  
Ask Daddy to play with you.  
Daddy always says he's busy.  
If I wait, you have to play with me some more.  
Then when can you find time?/ When are you  
free then?  
You can do it later after playing with me.

下次再玩吧。  
你没有看到妈妈在忙吗?  
抱歉,妈妈太忙了。  
等我洗碗后,再跟你玩。  
我在工作,晚一点再跟你玩。  
再一会工作结束后,就能跟你玩。  
你能等等吗?谢谢。  
等一下!等一下再一起玩。  
等我五分钟。  
五分钟后,你能跟我玩吗?  
现在我就想玩。  
现在就跟我玩。  
现在不行。  
今天没有时间。  
太晚了,明天我们再大玩特玩。  
现在有太多事要去做了。  
  
妈妈也想跟你玩,但是现在不行。  
  
去叫爸爸跟你玩。  
爸爸每次都说他很忙。  
如果我等你的话,你一定要跟我多玩一  
会。  
那么,你什么时候有时间呢?  
你可以跟我玩之后再去做吧。

## CHAPTER11-03约定玩的时间



How long should we play?  
Let's set up a time to play.  
I'll set the timer for 30 minutes.  
When the timer goes off, we'll stop.  
Let's play with blocks for 40 minutes starting now.  
Let's play at the playground for an hour.  
I want to play for 2 hours.  
2 hours is too long. Let's play for only 1 hour.  
Let's promise to play for 20 minutes.  
20 minutes is too short.  
I need more time to play.  
Just one more round, please.  
Only for 5 more minutes.  
Next time, you should keep your word.  
Let's finish after 3 more rounds.  
We only have 5 minutes left.  
Time's up! Done!  
The alarm went off!  
I want to play more.  
When I play, an hour feels like a second.  
You promised to play for an hour, right?  
You should tell playtime from work time.  
As a kid, all I do is play.  
Mom, I'll play on the playground till 6:00.  
I'll clean up after I finish this game.

我们要玩多久。  
我们来定个时间吧。  
我把定时器设定30分钟。  
定时器一响，我们就停止。  
现在开始，我们玩积木40分钟。  
我们在游乐场玩一个小时吧。  
我要玩两个小时。  
两个小时太长，我们就玩一个小时。  
我们约定好就玩20分钟。  
20分钟太短了。  
我需要玩更久。  
让我再多玩一回，拜托。  
就只能再多玩五分钟。  
下次，你要遵守你说的话。  
再玩三次后，我们就结束吧。  
我们只剩五分钟了。  
时间到了！结束！  
闹钟响了！  
我要再多玩一会。  
我玩的时候，一个小时感觉就像一秒钟。  
你答应只玩一个小时，对吧？  
你应该分清楚玩的时间和学习的时间。  
我是个小孩，我所要做的就是玩。  
妈，我会再游乐场玩到6点。  
等这个游戏结束后，我会整理。

## CHAPTER11-04躲猫猫

Peek- a- boo!  
Honey, where's Mommy?  
There you are, Mommy!  
I got you, Mommy!  
You can't see me, can you?  
Where's my little baby?  
I can hear you.  
I can't see my baby.  
Where did he/ she go?  
Should I open the door?  
Hide under the covers.  
Huh? Who's talking?  
There you are!  
Ta- Da! \* 两手张开秀出东西的效果声。  
You were here. Were you surprised?  
Isn't peek- a- boo fun?  
Want to do it again?  
That was fun. Can you do it again?

(藏起来突然出现时) 出现了!  
宝贝，妈妈在哪里？  
你在这里啊，妈！  
我抓到你了，妈妈！  
你看不到我，对吧？  
我的小宝贝在哪里呢？  
我听到你的声音了。  
我看不到我的宝贝。  
他\她去哪里了？  
我要打开门吗？  
躲在被子里面。  
喔？是谁在说话？  
你在这里耶！  
哒哒！看到你了！  
你在这里耶。有吓到吗？  
躲猫猫很好玩吗？  
要再来一次吗？  
好好玩喔。你能再来一次吗？

## CHAPTER11-05剪刀石头布





Let's play rock, paper, scissors.  
Rock, paper, scissors, go!  
I'll tell you the rules, go!  
You make a fist for rock like this.  
Doesn't rock actually look like a stone?  
You put two fingers out, and that's scissors.  
It really looks like a pair of scissors cutting paper, right?  
Paper is stretching out your hand.  
Paper looks like a piece of paper, doesn't it?  
Rock beats scissors.  
Scissors beats paper.  
Paper beats rock.  
Rock can smash scissors.  
Scissors can cut paper.  
Paper can wrap rock.  
If you both make the same thing, it's a draw.  
We both had the same thing. Let's try again.  
You have to make it at the same time.  
If you change after throwing one, that's cheating.  
It's cheating if you make it late.  
The winner goes first.  
I always win at rock, paper, scissors.  
He lost but keeps saying he won.  
You made it late.  
Follow the rules.  
I won! I'll go first.  
You lost.

我们来玩剪刀石头布吧。  
剪刀，石头，布！  
我来告诉你们规则。  
石头只要这样握住拳头就可以。  
石头看起来真的很像石头吧？  
伸出两根手指就是剪刀了。  
看来跟剪纸张的剪刀真的很像，对吧？  
布只要张开手就是了。  
布看起来很像一块布，对吧？  
石头赢剪刀。  
剪刀赢布。  
布赢石头。  
石头可以打碎剪刀。  
剪刀可以剪布。  
布可以保住石头。  
如果双方都出一样的话，就是平手。  
我们都出一样的了。再来一次。  
你们必须要同时出。  
如果出了之后，又换的话，就是犯规。  
出太晚，也是犯规。  
赢的人可以优先。  
玩剪刀石头布，我总是赢。  
他输了，可是硬说他赢了。  
你出晚了。  
要遵守规则。  
我赢了！我先。  
你输了。

## CHAPTER11-06捉迷藏

Let's play hide and seek.  
Want to play hide and seek? Come here!  
I'll be "it", so you hide.  
Hide yourself safely.  
Okay. I'll count to ten.  
Come to ten slowly.  
Count to ten and look for the hidden people.  
You shouldn't peek. / No peeking.  
Mom's "it". Let's hide quickly.  
Where should we hide?  
Don't hide in a dangerous place.  
Whew, I can't find you.  
Ready or not, here I come!  
I can see your shirt.  
I can see where you hid.  
Did you hide behind the chair?  
You're not here! Where are you, Sweetie?

我们来玩捉迷藏吧。  
要玩捉迷藏吗？到这里来！  
我来当鬼，你去藏起来。  
要好好藏起来喔。  
好，我要开始数到十。  
慢慢地数到十。  
数到十之后，去找出藏起来的人。  
你不可以偷看。  
妈是鬼，我们快点藏起来。  
我们要藏哪里？  
不可以躲在危险的地方。  
哎呀，我找不到你。  
准备好了没，我来了！  
我看到你的上衣。  
我看到你藏在哪儿了。  
你藏在椅子后面吗？  
没有在这里！甜心，你在哪儿？



I'll find you. Just wait!  
I heard a sound over there.  
I know you're hiding under the covers.  
There you are! Come out.  
Mommy is a hider now.  
You find me too soon!  
Daddy, you are the seeker, and we're the hiders.  
You'll be "it" this time.  
Find a good hiding spot.  
I'll go under the desk.  
I'll be behind the curtain.  
Don't move.  
Duck your head. I can see you.  
Hush. Be quiet! The seeker can hear you.  
Let's hide here together.  
You're a great hide- and- seek player.  
Ollie, Ollie oxen free!

我会找到你，你等着！  
我听到那边有声音。  
我知道你藏在被子里面。  
你在这里！出来吧。  
现在轮到妈妈要藏起来。  
你太快找到我了！  
爸爸，你是鬼，我们是要藏起来的人。  
这次轮到你当鬼了。  
找一个好的隐藏地点。  
我要躲进书桌下面。  
我要在窗帘后面。  
不要动。  
弯下你的头，我能看到你。  
嘘，安静！鬼会听到的。  
我们就一起藏在这里。  
你真的是玩捉迷藏的高手。  
找不到，放牛吃草！

## CHAPTER11-07捉人游戏

Who wants to play tag?  
Let's pick the tagger. / Let's pick "it".  
Who wants to be "it"?  
Let's pick by playing rock, paper, scissors.  
You're the tagger. / You're "it".  
I don't want to be "it".  
I'll be the tagger.  
Come and catch me, Mom!  
You're really fast. Mom can't catch you.  
You're "it" this time.  
I got him first.  
Let me get you, please!  
It's hard to breathe! / Phew, I'm out of breath. /  
Eeee, I'm exhausted!  
Stop there!  
Mommy's coming. Run away.  
No! Don't catch me!  
I'm getting close. I'm almost there.  
Reach home first. Then, you will win against the tagger.

有人要玩捉人游戏吗？  
我们来选捉人者。  
谁想要当鬼？  
用剪刀石头布来决定鬼吧。  
你是鬼。  
我不想当鬼。  
我来当抓人的人。  
妈，来捉我吧！  
你太快了。妈妈捉不到。  
这次你当鬼。  
我先抓到他了。  
请让我抓住你！  
哎呀，好喘喔！  
站在那里！  
妈妈来了。快跑喔。  
不！不要捉我！  
我越来越近了。我快到了。  
先到家，这样，你就会赢抓人的鬼。

## CHAPTER11-08扮家家酒

I want to play house.  
Let's have a tea party.  
I'll play the role of the baby. You be Dad.  
I'll play Mom.  
Let's use this for a table.  
I'll make a salad for you, Mom  
I'll cut the tomato in half and cook it.

我要玩扮家家酒。  
我们来玩扮家家酒。  
我来当孩子，你当爸爸。  
我来当妈妈。  
我们就用这个当餐桌。  
妈妈，我来为你做沙拉。  
我来吧番茄切成两半后煮。



I put the egg in the pan.  
Mom, I'm hungry.  
Mommy will cook for you, my baby.  
It's time for milk, Sweetie.  
Emm... Mommy, it's yummy.  
There's no milk. Let's go to the market. / We're out of milk. Let's go to the grocery store.  
Which plate do you want it on?  
I want it on the yellow plate.  
Okay. Here it goes.  
There you go.  
Mommy will cut it for you.  
Darling. it's time for dinner.  
Oh, my baby already finished it.  
Oh, done already, huh?  
We should do the dishes.  
Mommy will make more delicious food for you.  
Here are the spoon and the fork.  
I'll wash the orange.  
Wait a minute. The food's almost done.  
Would you like a cup of tea? / Would you care for some tea?  
What kind of tea do you to drink? Is green tea fine?

我把鸡蛋放在平底锅上。  
妈，我饿了。  
宝贝，妈妈来帮你做饭。  
甜心，牛奶时间到了喔。  
嗯嗯，妈妈，好好喝。  
没有牛奶了。我们去市场/杂货店吧。  
你想用哪种盘子装？  
我想用黄色盘子装。  
好，在这里。  
你的在那里。  
妈妈帮你切。  
亲爱的，吃晚餐了。  
喔，我的宝贝已经吃完了。  
喔，已经吃完了呀？  
我们要洗碗。  
妈咪给你做更好吃的食物。  
汤匙和叉子在这里。  
我来洗柳橙。  
再等一下，饭快好了。  
你要喝杯茶吗？  
你想喝什么茶？绿茶可以吗？

## CHAPTER11-09医生游戏

Let's play doctor. / Let's play hospital.  
Mom, I want to be the doctor.  
Okay, I'll be the patient.  
I'm a nurse to help the doctor.  
How can I help you? / What's troubling you?  
My head/ stomach hurts.  
My ears/ eyes/ legs hurt.  
I have a fever and a stomachache.  
Where exactly do you feel pain?  
It itches because of my rash.  
I feel itchy.  
Open your mouth wide. Say " Ah..."  
I'm going to take your temperature.  
You have a high fever.  
Nurse, can you give me my stethoscope?  
Take a deep breath in and out.  
We need to do surgery.  
I'll write you a prescription.  
I'm going to give you a shot.  
Can you give me a shot that won't hurt?  
It will sting a little bit.

我们来玩医生游戏。  
妈妈，我来当医生。  
好，我来当病人。  
我是帮助医生的护士。  
你哪里不舒服？  
我头/肚子痛。  
我耳朵/眼睛/腿痛。  
我发烧了，也胃痛。  
确切地说，是哪一个部位痛呢？  
因为疹子，所以很痒。  
我觉得很痒。  
张大你的嘴巴，说“啊...”  
我来帮你量体温。  
你发高烧了。  
护士，你能把听诊器给我吗？  
深呼吸，然后吐气。  
我们需要动手术。  
我来帮你开处方笺。  
我来帮你打针。  
你能让我打针时不感觉痛吗？  
会有一点点刺痛。



Good job.  
The next patient, Teddy bear! Come in.  
Doctor, my baby's really sick.  
Lie on the bed, please.  
I'll put on some ointment.  
You need to stay in the hospital.  
Nurse, can you take this patient to the treatment room?  
It hurts a lot, doesn't it?  
Don't worry. You will be fine soon.  
Go to the pharmacy now.  
Was I a good doctor?  
Did I do a good job?

很好。  
下一个患者，玩具熊！请进。  
医生，我的孩子很不舒服。  
请躺在床上。  
我会涂些药膏。  
你需要住院。  
护士，你能带这位患者到诊疗室吗？  
很疼，不是吗？  
不用担心，你很快就会好起来。  
现在去药局吧。  
我是个好医生吧？  
我做得好吗？

## CHAPTER12美术游戏

### CHAPTER12-01画画

Look at this dinosaur I drew.  
Wow, it looks so real!  
Mom, can you draw a car for me?  
You can draw it by yourself.  
Try drawing the wheels by yourself.  
I'll draw the car. Will you color it?  
I'm not that good.  
I'm not good at drawing.  
Look, Mom! Here's my circle.  
Look what I drew. / Look at my picture.  
I drew this.  
Isn't this cool?  
Mom, I want to draw.  
What do you want to draw?  
I want to draw the sea.  
About the sea, what can you think of?  
What can we see in the sea?  
I can think of fish, mermaids, waves, ships, and clams.  
What do you want to draw first?  
Draw whatever you want.  
What do you want to draw with?  
With crayons / paints / pastels / color pencils.  
Let's open the sketchbook.  
Get out the drawing paper.  
Let's draw a sketch.  
What did you draw here?  
You forgot to draw the ears.  
Now color the picture.  
Mom, how do you draw dinosaurs?

看看我画得这只恐龙  
哇，它看起来好逼真！  
妈，你能画台车给我吗？  
你可以自己画。  
试着自己画画车轮。  
我会画车，你要上色吗？  
我不太会。  
我不太会画画。  
妈，看！我画的圈圈。  
看我画了什么。  
我画了这个。  
这不是很酷吗？  
妈，我想要画画。  
你想画什么呢？  
我想要画海。  
说到海，你想到什么？  
在海里，我们能看到什么？  
我想到鱼、人鱼公主、海浪、船、贝壳。  
你想先画什么？  
画你想画的。  
你想用什么画呢？  
用蜡笔/颜料/粉蜡笔/色铅笔画。  
我们打开画画本吧。  
把图画纸拿出来吧。  
我们来画草图。  
你在这里画了什么？  
你忘记画耳朵了。  
现在，来上色吧。  
妈，恐龙要怎么画？





Look at my drawing. Didn't I draw well?  
You drew the tree too small / large.  
There's no room to draw the house.  
Want to add some facial expressions on it?  
I'll erase it with an eraser.  
You drew it very well.  
You are such a great painter! / We have a great artist here!  
Wow! It really looks like a bunny running.  
You made it look real.  
This part is especially expressive.  
Let's display the picture here.  
Do you want me to put it on the wall so that Daddy can see it?  
Let's show this to Daddy when he comes.

看我的画。我不是画得很好吗？  
你把树画得太小/大了。  
没有画房子的空间。  
你要添上脸部表情吗？  
我会用橡皮擦掉它。  
你画得很好。  
你是这么一位伟大的画家。  
哇！看起来真的好像兔子在跑。  
你让它看起来像真的。  
这部分表现得特别好。  
我们把画展示在这里吧。  
你要我把画挂在墙上给爸爸看吗？  
等爸爸回家时，我们把这个拿给爸爸看。

## CHAPTER12-02上色

Now let's color the sketch.  
Will you paint / color your sketch?  
Get out the crayons / color pencils.  
Want to use the paint and a brush?  
Wear this smock when you're drawing.  
What color do you need?  
I'm going to paint this part yellow.  
The crayon is broken.  
Try to color inside the line.  
Color it carefully. Don't leave any blank part.  
Do you want to learn how to paint?  
Put the paint you need on the palette. / Squeeze out the paint on the palette.  
Let's mix some more water.  
What color do you want to paint the flower? /  
What color would you paint the flower?  
I'm going to paint it purple.  
Mom, there's no green.  
Let's use by mixing colors.  
Want to mix yellow and blue?  
Wow! It's turning green.  
The color of the sea looks nice.  
It looks nice since we colored it orange.  
Mom, my arm hurts. Can you help me color it?  
Clean the brush well.  
I got pain all over my hands.

现在我们来给草图上色。  
你要帮你的草图涂颜料/上色吗？  
拿出你的蜡笔/色铅笔。  
想要用颜料和画笔吗？  
画画时，穿上这件工作服。  
你要什么颜色？  
这部分，我要上黄色。  
蜡笔断了。  
试着在线内上色就好。  
小心上色。不要留下任何空白部分。  
你想学怎样上色吗？  
把需要的颜料挤在调色盘上。  
我们再调多点水吧。  
你要用什么颜色给花上色呢？  
我要把它涂成紫色。  
妈，没有绿色。  
把颜色混合起来用。  
想要混合黄色和蓝色吗？  
哇！变成绿色了。  
大海的颜色看起来好美喔。  
我们用了橘色，看起来好漂亮。  
妈，我手臂疼。你能帮我上色吗？  
把画笔好好洗干净。  
我的手上都沾满了颜料。

## CHAPTER12-03美术时间

Now, it's time for art class.  
We'll paint a picture today.

现在，来上美术课了。  
我们今天来画图。



Prepare the watercolors, brushes, the palette, and the water reservoir.  
What do you want to draw?  
Today, we will draw the playground.  
I am going to draw with crayons.  
It is hard to sketch lightly.  
Let's make a human figure with clay.  
Put some glue on the back side.  
Cut out the shape / figure with scissors.  
Wow, your sketch looks great!  
Color the sketch carefully.  
Think of what materials you are going to use for your picture.  
Can you explain your drawing to your friends?  
The expression on the face of this person is so real.  
If you put more colors on it, the picture will look much nicer.  
Wait till the picture dries up.  
Let's take a look at your friend's drawing.  
Let's talk about the good points of the drawing.  
Does anyone know who painted this picture?  
The picture that you are looking at is called *The Cleaners*.  
Take a look at Van Gogh's *Sunflowers* and talk about it.  
Name the painting as you want.  
I love this picture.  
This picture is fantastic.

准备水彩、画笔、调色盘，还有水桶。

你想要画什么？

今天，我们来画游乐场。

我要用蜡笔画。

轻轻画真的很难。

我们用黏土来做个人形吧。

在背面涂上一些胶水。

用剪刀剪出模样。

哇，你的草图看起来很棒！

小心地帮草图上色。

想一想你要在画上使用什么材料。

你能为你的朋友解释你的画吗？

这个人的表情很逼真。

如果你再上一些颜色，这张画看起来会更棒。

要等画都干了。

我们来看看你朋友的画吧。

说说画画的好处吧。

有谁知道是谁画了这张画吗？

你现在看的作品名叫做《拾穗》。

欣赏一下梵谷的《向日葵》，并说说看感想。

照你的意思帮这张画命名吧。

我爱这幅画。

这张画棒极了。

## CHAPTER12-03美术时间-美术道具及用语

color pencil  
crayon  
pastel  
watercolor paint  
oil paint  
sketchbook  
drawing pencil  
easel  
paintbrush  
palette  
draw  
color  
paint

彩色笔  
蜡笔  
粉蜡笔  
水彩颜料  
油画颜料  
速写簿  
美术笔  
画架  
画笔  
调色盘  
画画  
上色  
涂颜料

## CHAPTER 12-04贴纸游戏

I want to play with some stickers.  
Want to decorate this with stickers?  
Can you get out the sticker book?

我想玩贴纸游戏。

要用贴纸来装饰这个吗？

你能拿出贴纸簿吗？



Take off the stickers first.  
Where are you going to put it on?  
Put the apple sticker on.  
Mom, is it right to put it on here?  
Mom, the sticker won't come off.  
I put it on wrong, Mom.  
The sticker got torn.  
I accidentally tore the sticker.  
Can you take it off, Mom?  
It's hard to get it off if you put it in the wrong place.  
It looks cool with stickers.  
Look at the picture and put the sticker in the right place.  
Will you buy me a new one when I use this up?  
Can I use it again after taking it off?  
It's okay if it's a bit out of place.  
Decorate however you want.  
It's not sticky enough.  
It got stuck together by itself.  
If it gets on your hair, it won't come off well.  
There's nothing to use later if you use it all today.

首先撕下贴纸。  
你要贴在哪里？  
把苹果贴纸贴上去。  
妈，贴在这里，对吧？  
妈，这张贴纸撕不下来。  
妈，我贴错了。  
这张贴纸撕破了。  
我不小心把贴纸撕破了。  
妈，你能帮我撕吗？  
如果你贴错地方，会很难撕下来的。  
贴上贴纸后，看起来很炫。  
看图，然后把贴纸贴在正确的位置。  
这个都用完之后，你能买新的给我吗？  
这个撕下来后，我可以再用吗？  
如果有点歪掉，也没关系。  
照你的意思装饰。  
这个不够黏。  
贴纸自己黏在一起了。  
黏在头发上的话，就不容易弄掉了。  
今天都用完的话，之后就沒得用了

## CHAPTER12-05折纸

Let's do some paper folding. / Let's do origami.  
It's important to follow the directions.  
You need to fold it like the directions say.  
Fold it in half.  
Fold it again.  
Fold it diagonally. You've got a triangle, right?  
Prepare some double-sided colored paper.  
I'm using two-sided colored paper.  
Want to fold a frog?  
Let the corners meet exactly.  
Fold a corner exactly to the middle point.  
Fold the other way.  
The dotted lines mean to fold it.  
The lines mean to cut it.  
Fold it inside / outside.  
Unfold it.  
Turn it over and fold it the same way.  
You have to do stair folding.  
Fold it in the same direction.  
Press it firmly to make a good crease.  
Fold it up / down.  
Mom, it doesn't fold well.  
Mom, it's not that easy. / I can't do it well.

我们来折纸。  
跟着说明来折是很重要的。  
你需要像指示说的来折。  
把它对半折。  
再折一次。  
斜斜地折过来。你得到了一个三角形，对吧？  
准备双面的彩纸。  
我要用双面的彩纸。  
想要折青蛙吗？  
要准确地把角对好。  
准确地把一个角对准中间的点折好。  
反过来折。  
虚线就是要折的意思。  
实线就是要剪掉的意思。  
往里/外折。  
摊开。  
倒过来，跟刚刚一样折好。  
你必须做阶梯折叠。  
往同一方面折。  
用力按下去，做出清楚的折痕。  
把它折上去/下去。  
妈，这不好折。  
妈，还是不行。



I can't seem to get it right.  
You fold it in the wrong way.  
Fold it on the center line.  
You got it exactly.  
Draw eyes with a marker.  
Ta-da! The frog is done.

我好像还是做不好。  
你折错方向了。  
要对准中间线折。  
你折得很好。  
用马克笔画出眼睛。  
哒哒！青蛙完成了。

## CHAPTER12-06使用剪刀/刀子/胶水

Let's cut it using scissors. / Let's cut it with scissors.  
How many pairs of scissors do you have ?  
Put your thumb here and your index finger here.  
Try opening and closing it.  
You're cutting well.  
Cut along the lines.  
I happened to cut it wrong.  
I accidentally cut this wrong.  
Cut out the pictures from the magazine.  
Want to cut it with the zigzag scissors?  
Cut the colored paper and put it on the sketchbook.  
When you're done cutting, throw the shavings away.  
Be careful! Your finger might get stuck between the scissors.  
Be careful when you're using a craft knife.  
Use the ruler as a guide to cut that line.  
Do you want to use a glue stick or liquid glue?  
Put the glue on the back.  
It goes on well if you glue it evenly.  
Oops! There is too much glue on here.  
Eeek, the glue's sticky.  
It keeps coming off.  
Where do you want to put it on?  
Roll the paper like this and paste it.  
Put the lid on tightly.  
Make sure you put the lid back on the glue.

我们用剪刀剪吧。  
你有几把剪刀呢？  
把你的大拇指放在这里，食指放这里。  
试着打开，再合起来。  
你剪得很好。  
沿着线剪。  
我不小心剪错了。  
我不小心把这剪错了。  
把杂志上的图剪下来。  
你要用波浪形剪刀剪吗？  
把剪下来的彩纸贴在速写簿上。  
你剪好的话，把纸屑都丢掉。  
小心！你的手指可能会被剪刀夹住。  
使用美工刀时，你要小心一点。  
沿着尺来切那条线。  
你要使用口红胶，还是胶水？  
把胶水涂在背面。  
如果你涂得很均匀的话，会很好黏上去。  
啊！这里我涂得太多了。  
咦，这胶水好黏稠喔。  
它一直掉下来。  
你想把它贴在哪里？  
把纸张像这样卷起来后，再黏起来。  
把盖子紧紧盖好。  
确实把胶水盖盖好。

## CHAPTER12-07黏土游戏

Let's play with clay.  
Get out the colored clay.  
Rub it for a while so it will mix well.  
Which shape do you want to make? / What do you want to make?  
I am going to make a person.  
The legs keep coming off / bending.  
Press it firmly with your hands.  
It's good to use a carving knife for this.

我们来玩黏土吧。  
拿出彩色黏土。  
搓揉一段时间，以便让它混合得更好。  
你想做什么模样呢？  
我要做个人。  
脚一直掉下来/弯掉。  
用双手紧紧按下去。  
这时候雕刻刀是很好用的。





The clay lump is too big.  
Let's make it into a round shape.  
Put a lump between your palms and roll it.  
Try stretching it out.  
Let's spread it with a roller.  
Make the eyes, nose and mouth, and attach them on the face.  
You can use the molds to have different shapes.  
Don't press it too hard.  
Your hands are all muddy.  
Be careful not to get the mud on your clothes.  
It got hardened already.  
We need to store the leftovers in an airtight bag.

这一块黏土太大了。  
我们来把它捏成圆形。  
放一块在手掌，然后揉搓它。  
试着把它捏开。  
用滚筒把它压开。  
做好眼睛、鼻子、嘴巴后，把它们贴在脸上。  
你可以使用模型做出不同的模样。  
不要压得太用力。  
你满手都是泥。  
小心不要把泥沾到衣服上。  
已经变硬了。  
我们必须把剩余的装进密封袋内。

## CHAPTER12-08积木游戏

Let's play with the blocks.  
Get the blocks out.  
Wow, all different shapes and colors!  
Mom, I need a blue piece.  
Get the blue blocks together.  
Can you get me a square piece?  
What do you want to make with the blocks?  
Want to make a train?  
This won't go in. These won't fit together.  
Try to match them well. They lock together.  
Put the blue block on top of the yellow one.  
How many blocks can we stack?  
Want to see who can stack them higher?  
You built a house! How nice!  
Let's place them in one long line.  
Want to play dominos with the blocks?  
Don't throw the blocks even though it doesn't go your way.  
Be patient and try it again.  
Oops, it fell.  
The wheel-shaped block is gone.  
Mom, my tower is tilted.  
Do you want me to build something for you?  
Can you leave it just the way it is now?

我们来玩积木吧。  
把积木拿出来吧。  
哇，模样和颜色都不一样！  
妈，我需要一块蓝色的。  
把蓝色积木放在一起。  
你能给我一块正方形的吗？  
你想要用积木做什么？  
想要做台火车吗？  
这个放不进去。这些不合。  
试着对起来看看，让它们彼此吻合。  
把蓝色积木放在黄色积木上面。  
我们可以叠几个积木？  
我们来看看谁叠得高吧？  
你盖了一栋房子！好棒喔！  
把积木排成一条长线吧。  
想要用积木来玩骨牌吗？  
即使不能照你的想法，也不可以丢积木。  
忍住性子，再试一次。  
喔，倒了。  
车轮形状的积木不见了。  
妈，我的塔歪了。  
你想要我帮你盖什么吗？  
你可以把它像现在这样放着吗？

## CHAPTER13户外活动

### CHAPTER13-01游乐场和妈妈一起玩

I want to slide down the slide.  
Let me hold you, Sweetie.  
I want to go to the playground.  
Mom, I want to play on the playground

我想从那座溜滑梯溜下来  
甜心，让我抓住你。  
我想去游乐场。  
妈妈，我想去游乐场玩。



Okay!Then let's go out together.  
Today is too cold to go out.  
Shouldn't you do your homework first?  
My friends are playing there.  
Let's go down the slide.  
I want to slide down the slide.  
Can you hold me, Mom?  
I can slide down by myself.  
You should not walk up the slide.  
Don't climb up too high.  
Let's get on the seesaw.  
Mommy will get on the seesaw with you.  
Do you want to swing?  
Be careful when you pass around a moving  
Wheeeee! My honey's coming down.  
Push me harder / slower.  
Hold on! It's going higher.  
Mom, you don't have to push me.  
Can you stop the swing? I want to get off.  
Look at me. I'm flying this high.  
I feel like flying in the sky.  
My baby's going up to the sky.  
It's dangerous to jump off the swing.  
Mom,I'm scared to go up the top of the jungle  
gym.  
Want to see who can hang on the bar longer?  
Mommy will sit on the bench.  
You need to be looking at me.  
Now let's go back to the house.  
Let's play a little bit more.  
Look around, Honey. Nobody's here anymore.  
The other children must go back home already.

好!那我们一起去吧。  
今天出门太冷了。  
你不是应该先做功课吗?  
我的朋友们在哪儿玩。  
我们去玩溜滑梯吧。  
我想去溜滑梯。  
妈妈,你能抓住我吗?  
我可以自己玩溜滑梯。  
你不可以从溜的一面上去。  
不要爬的太高。  
我们去坐翘翘板吧。  
妈妈和你一起坐翘翘板。  
你想玩荡秋千吗?  
当你经过摆动的秋千时,要小心点。  
哇哇!我的宝贝爬下来了。  
更用力/轻轻的推我。  
抓紧了!要更高了喔。  
妈妈,你也可以不用推我。  
你可以帮我停住秋千吗?我想下来了。  
看,我飞得这么高。  
我感觉像飞在天上。  
我的宝贝到天空上去了!  
从秋千上跳下来是很危险的。  
妈妈,我害怕爬到攀爬架的顶端上。  
想要看谁能在单杠上吊更久吗?  
妈咪会坐在板凳上。  
你一定要看着我喔。  
现在我们要回家了。  
我们再多玩一会儿吧。  
宝贝,你看看四周,已经没有人了。  
其他小孩一定已经回家了。

## CHAPTER13-02玩沙

Let's go and play in the sandbox.  
Let's roll up our sleeves first.  
Let's take off our shoes in the sand.  
What do you want to do with the sand?  
I'll put some sand in a bucket with shovel.  
Mom, draw a person in the sand.  
Want to use a frame? Ta-da-It's a star.  
Let's build a sandcastle.  
Wow, we made a nice castle.  
Want to put some sand on your hands!  
The sand is softly slipping through the fingers.  
How do you feel? Isn't it tickling your toes?  
Wow! Your feet are in the sand

我们去沙池玩沙吧。  
我们先把袖子卷起来吧。  
在沙中,我们先把鞋子脱掉吧。  
你想用沙子做什么呢?  
我要用铲子把沙子装在水桶内。  
妈妈,在沙子上画人。  
你要用模型吗?哒哒,这是星星。  
我们来盖沙的城堡。  
哇,我们盖了很棒的城堡。  
想把沙子放在你手上吗?  
沙子轻轻的从指缝中滑落。  
你觉得如何?沙是不是让你的脚趾痒痒的?  
哇!你的脚被沙子埋起来了。



I made a cupcake with wet sand.  
Look! I made a sand cake.  
Put your left hand in the sand.  
Put some sand over your left hand and pat it with your right hand.  
I got sand in my eyes.  
A lot of sand got in my shoes.  
Don't rub your eyes with a sandy hand  
Don't throw sand in other people's faces.  
No eating sand, Honey!  
You got sand all over your face.  
Shake off the sand on your shirt, hands, and feet.  
Shake your shoes, too.  
Let's clean off the sand at home.

我用湿的沙子做了杯子蛋糕。  
看!我做了沙子蛋糕。  
把左手放进沙子内。  
用些沙子盖住你的左手,并用右手轻拍。  
我的眼睛有沙子跑进来了。  
我的鞋子内跑进很多沙子。  
不要用沾有沙子的手揉眼睛。  
不要用沙子丢向其他人的脸。  
宝贝,不要吃沙子!  
你的脸都沾满了沙子。  
把粘在衬衫,手,还有脚上的沙都抖掉  
鞋子也要抖一抖。  
我们回家把沙子洗掉吧

### CHAPTER13-03玩球

Let's play ball, Mommy.

Okay. I will throw the ball.  
Catch the ball, Sweetie.  
Here it goes! / Here we go!  
Throw it hard to Mom.  
Oops, I missed it.  
I happened to drop it.  
The ball's rolling.  
Mommy will get the ball.  
Go and get the ball.  
Catch the ball with two hands.  
Put the ball between your legs.  
Throw the ball up high.  
Hit the ball with your hand:  
Bounce the ball like this,  
Catch the ball from Daddy and throw it to  
Don't throw the ball. Roll it.  
Wow! You can catch the ball very well.  
It's my turn to throw the ball.  
Throw the ball far.  
Throw the ball to me.  
Pass it to me.  
Throw it back.  
Now it's my turn.  
Don't throw it too far / hard, Dad.  
I throw the ball this well.  
See? I'm this good.  
Look at where you're throwing the ball.  
Throw it harder.

妈咪,我们来玩球  
好,我来丢球  
甜心,要接住球喔  
好,去了  
用力丢给妈妈  
哇,我没接到。  
我不小心掉了。  
球滚走了  
妈妈来接球  
去把球捡回来  
用双手接球  
把球夹在两腿中间  
把球丢高  
用手打球试试看  
像这样拍球  
从爸爸那接到球后,丢给妈妈  
不要丢球了,来滚球吧  
哇!你真的很会接球耶  
轮到我丢球了  
投远一点  
把球丢给我  
传给我  
把它丢回来  
现在轮到我了  
爸,不要丢太远/太用力  
我丢球丢的很好  
看!我很厉害吧  
看着你要丢球的地方丢  
丢用力一点

### CHAPTER13-04棒球



Let's play baseball.

The pitcher throws the ball.

The catcher catches the ball.

The hitter hits the ball.

Don't throw the ball at a person,

We need a glove to play baseball.

I want to be the batter.

Daddy, you throw the ball.

Mommy, you catch the ball.

Throw it slowly.

I'll be the umpire

Strike! / Ball! / Out!

2 balls , 1 strike.

It's a foul.

Three strikes and you're out.

Wow! It's a hit.

Run to first base.

The catcher missed the ball.

Come to home plate.

We scored one run.

I was safe! It was not out.

I made it home before, I got tagged.

I stepped on home plate. I'm safe.

Three to zero.

If the ball crosses this line,let's say it's a homerun

It's dangerous to swing the bat people.

Stop the game when someone passes by.

Hold the bat tightly.

Look at the ball carefully and hit it

Wait until the last minute and swing the bat.

Don't close your eyes when the ball comes.

我们来玩棒球

投手是投球的人

捕手是接球的人

打击手是击球的人

不可以把球往人身上丢

玩棒球, 我们需要手套

我想当打击手

爸比, 你投球吧

妈咪, 你接球

丢轻一点

我来当裁判

好球! / 坏球! / 出局!

一个好球, 两个坏球

出界了

三个好球, 你出局了

哇! 安打

跑向一垒

捕手没接到球

奔向本垒

我们得一分

我安全上垒了! 不是出局

在被击杀之前, 我先回垒了

我踏上本垒了, 我安全上垒了

3比0

如果球超过这条线, 我们就说这是全垒打

把球棒挥向他人是很危险的

当有人经过, 就停止游戏

把球棒握紧

看好秋后再打

等到最后再挥棒

当球来的时候不要闭上眼睛

## CHAPTER13-05足球

Does anybody want to play soccer?

Let's say this is the goal.

Who wants to be the goalie? You be the goalie.

I'll be the striker.

My back number is 11.

Pass to me. / Pass it to me.

Daddy's attacking. Go get him

Kick the ball hard.

Dribble the ball. It's like kicking while running.

You can win by playing good defense.

That was close! That almost went in.

We almost made it.

Try to get the ball from Daddy.

有人要踢足球吗?

我们把这个当做球门吧

有谁要当守门员吗? 你当守门员吧

我来当前锋

我的球衣号码是11号

传给我

爸爸在攻击了, 去阻止他

用力踢球

盘球, 看起来像是边跑边踢

你可以利用好的防守来赢球

好可惜! 几乎要进球了

我们差点得分了

试着从爸爸那边截球





Let's make a plan.  
We need to change players.  
You can't catch the ball with your hands in soccer.  
Only the goalie can use his hand.  
It's a foul if you grab someone's shirt.  
If you push someone from behind, you'll be given a yellow card.  
Wow! You can kick like Park Jisung.  
I fell because I got tackled  
Why are you a ball hog?  
You should pass the ball.  
It's a tie. We are going to a shootout  
Goal! Celebrate!

我们来定作战计划书  
我们要交换选手  
踢足球时. 你不可用手接球  
只有守门员可以用手碰球  
如果你抓住某人的衬衫的话就是违规  
如果你从后面推人, 你会得到一张黄牌  
哇! 你踢跟朴智星一样好  
我因为被截球而被绊倒了  
你为什么一个人踢球?  
你应该传球  
打成平手. 我们要以十二码球来决胜负了  
得分! 来庆祝一下!

### CHAPTER13-06跳绳

Let's play jump rope. Let's jump rope.  
Don't jump rope inside the house.  
Will you go outside and jump rope?  
TO try to jump ten times.  
Can you count how many jumps I can do?  
One, two, three, oops! You got caught on the rope.  
It keeps getting caught on my foot.  
The line's too long. I'll adjust the length  
Yesterday you jumped 3 times, and today you did 5 times.  
You shouldn't wear slippers when you're jumping rope.  
Let's try jumping on one foot  
Jump to the beat.  
Let's jump rope to the rhythm.  
Use your wrists instead of your arms to twirl the rope.  
Jumping crisscross is very difficult  
When the rope is above you, cross your arms.  
Can you jump rope backward?  
I can jump rope while running.  
My stomach hurts after jumping rope.  
The rope broke.  
I don't think I can pass the jump rope test.  
There's someone in our class who can do a double jump.  
The rope keeps getting tangled.  
My legs keep shaking.  
Mom and Dad will turn the rope. You two go in and jump.  
You two go in and jump.

我们来跳绳!  
不可以在家中跳绳  
你要去外面跳绳吗?  
我要试着跳10次  
你能帮我算我能跳多少下吗?  
一, 二, 三, 喔! 你被绳子绊住了.  
跳绳一直被脚绊到  
绳子太长了. 我来调整下长度  
昨天你跳了三下, 今天你跳了五下  
当你跳绳时, 你不可以穿拖鞋  
我们试着用单脚跳  
跟着拍子跳跳看  
我们跟着节奏跳跳看  
有手腕代替手来转绳子  
交叉跳真的很难  
当绳子在你的上面时, 把手臂交叉  
你可以往后跳吗?  
我可以一边跑一边跳绳  
跳完绳后, 我肚子好痛喔  
绳子断了  
我想我没办法通过跳绳考试  
我们班有人可以做二回旋  
绳子一直卷起来  
我的腿一直在抖  
爸爸妈妈来挥绳子  
你们两个进去跳



## CHAPTER13-07骑脚踏车

Do you want to ride a bike?  
Let's learn how to ride a bike with two wheels.  
Let's take off the training wheels.  
Can you hold the bike so that I won't fall?  
Promise you won't let go of it.  
Don't let go of my bike, Mommy.  
The bike keeps falling.  
Don't be nervous.  
Grab the handlebars tightly.  
Make sure you put on your helmet  
Turn the handle toward the left / right.  
Step on the pedal hard.  
Turn the pedal backward a little and then step forward  
Keep an eye on the road ahead.  
Watch out for cars coming.  
Be careful going downhill.  
Hold the brakes.  
Don't ride your bike on the road.  
It's too fast. Hold down the brake lever slightly.  
Don't grab the brake levers suddenly ° ° while riding fast. You could fall.

See how fast I'm going.  
Here we have a great bike rider!Wow, you are a great rider.

Don't forget to put the lock on.

## CHAPTER13-08玩直排轮

Mom, let's go inline skating.  
You need to have your protection on.  
A helmet is a must.  
Wear your knee pads.  
Let's try walking.  
Right foot, left foot! There you go. Good job!  
Will you learn how to stop?  
Raise your toes to put down the brake pad on the skate.  
Slowly come to a stop.  
The lower you sit, the more quickly you will stop.  
Lower your body a little more.  
Don't stand up straight.You'll lose your balance.  
Don't be afraid to fall down.  
Mommy will hold you. Get up one foot at a time!  
Turn to your right.

你想要骑脚踏车吗?  
我们来学习怎样骑两轮的脚踏车  
我们把辅助车轮拿掉  
你可以抓住脚踏车,好让我不会绊倒吗?  
答应我你不会放手  
妈咪,不可以放开脚踏车  
脚踏车一直倒掉  
不用紧张  
抓紧把手  
确定你戴上了安全帽  
把 把手 往左/右转  
用力踩脚踏板  
把脚踏板往后转一点点,再往前踩  
要看着前面的路  
小心车子  
下坡时要小心  
抓紧刹车  
不可以在车道上骑脚踏车  
太快了,稍微抓住刹车  
当你骑很快的时候,不要突然刹车.你有可能摔倒.  
看我骑得多快

我们这里有个很棒的单车骑士

不哟啊忘记上锁

妈妈,我们去玩直排轮  
你需要穿上保护装备  
安全帽一定要戴  
戴上护膝  
我们试着走走看  
右脚,左脚!好,很好!  
你要学怎样停止吗?  
抬起你的脚趾,把溜冰鞋的刹车皮触碰地板  
慢慢地停下来  
坐的更低,你可以更快的停下来  
把你的身体放的更低一点  
不要站太直.你会失去平衡的  
不要害怕摔倒  
妈咪会抓住你的.一次站起一双脚  
转向右边



Do the skates fit well on your feet?  
Your feet should be in a "V" formation.  
Mom, I'm scared.  
I feel like I am going to fall.  
Please hold me now.  
Can I not put on my helmet?  
It's stuffy  
This is how to make a turn.  
Lean your body in the direction that you want to turn.  
Take small steps with your inside skate at the same time.  
Move your hands to keep your balance.  
You practiced hard today, too.  
Don't go riding off too far.  
You are doing great, sweetie.

溜冰鞋合理的脚吗?  
你的双脚要成“V”形  
妈妈, 我很害怕  
我好像要摔倒了  
现在, 请抓住我  
我可以不用戴安全帽吗?  
这很闷  
转圈要这样做。  
身体要倾向你转圈的方向。

同时内侧的溜冰鞋也要小不的迈出去。  
摆动你的双手来保持平衡。  
今天你也很努力练习了。  
不要溜太远。  
做得好甜心

## CHAPTER13-09做体操

Take a deep breath and let it out slowly.  
Breathe in. breathe out.  
Raise your arms up high.  
shake your arms back and forth.  
Roll your wrists.  
Roll your neck counterclockwise.  
Straighten your back\Keep your back straight.  
Drop\Raise your head.put your head down\up.  
Bend your knees.  
Lower your chest and touch your ankle.  
Keep your hips back.  
stand with your feet shoulder length apart.  
Relax your body.  
Touch your toes.  
sit down put your legs together.  
Put your hands on the ground.  
Jog lightly.  
Jog lightly in place.  
Follow me to the rhythm.  
Look at me and do as I do.  
Doesn't your calf hurt ?  
Spin around.  
Run while standing still.

深呼吸后，慢慢的吐气。  
吸，吐。  
把双手举高。  
双手前后摆动。  
转动你的手腕。  
逆时针方向转动你的脖子。  
腰要挺直。  
低、抬头。  
膝盖弯曲  
上半身往下弯，抓住你的脚踝。  
屁股往后翘。  
张开双脚，与肩膀宽度同宽。  
身体要放松。  
碰到你的脚趾  
坐下，双脚并拢。  
双收放在地上。  
轻轻的跑。  
在原地轻轻的跑。  
跟着妈妈对拍子。  
跟着妈妈做。  
你的小腿痛吗?  
转转看。  
保持身体直立原地跑。

## CHAPTER14其他游戏

### CHAPTER14-01唱歌

what song shall we sing?  
what song would you like to sing?

我们要唱什么歌呢?  
你想唱什么歌呢?



Mom, will you sing me the ABC song?  
 Mom, can you sing it again?  
 Can you sing me something else?  
 Want me to sing Three Bears to you?  
 Let's sing together.  
 Sing out loud.  
 Sing slowly\fast.  
 Let's practice well and sing in front your Daddy.  
 Mum, listen to me sing.  
 My baby will be the greatest singer in the world!  
 You can sing really well.  
 What's your favorite song, sweetheart?  
 Want to change the words?  
 Mum will sing the first verse. You sing the second.  
 Sing to the beat.  
 You don't sing in the interlude.  
 Gosh, you're out of tune.  
 You can sing without missing a word.  
 Ugh, you are tone deaf.  
 I forgot the words.  
 I don't know the lyrics.  
 Can you write the lyrics?  
 You look like an angel when you sing.  
 You memorized that? Wow, that's amazing.  
 I'm sorry. Mommy doesn't know that song.

妈，你能唱《ABC之歌》给我听吗？  
 妈，你能再唱一次吗？  
 你能唱其它歌给我听吗？  
 我唱《三只小熊》给你听吧？  
 我们一起唱  
 大声唱  
 慢点\快点  
 我们好好练习之后，去爸爸面前唱  
 妈，听我唱歌  
 我的宝贝也许是世界上最厉害的歌手！  
 你真的很会唱歌  
 甜心，你最喜欢的歌是什么？  
 你要不要改变一下歌词？  
 妈妈唱第一节，你唱第二节。  
 跟着拍子唱。  
 在间奏时，你不用唱歌  
 喔，你唱走音了。  
 你把歌词都唱对了。  
 哎呦，你是个音痴。  
 我忘记歌词了  
 我不知道歌词  
 你能帮我写歌词吗  
 你唱歌的时候看起来很像天使  
 你都背起来了喔？哇，好厉害  
 抱歉，妈妈不知道那首歌

## CHAPTER14-02听CD

Bring the CD that you want listen to.  
 Mommy will turn on the power.  
 Put in\Take out the CD.  
 What track should we listen to?  
 The volume is too low.  
 The sound's too loud. Turn it down.  
 That's just right.  
 Mom, the sound's too low.  
 Mommy can hear it well.  
 Want to listen to it with headphones?  
 It's your favorite song, Sweetheart.  
 Press the start\stop button.  
 Want to stop and listen later?  
 Want to listen to it again?  
 Let's listen to it from the beginning.  
 Hold the CD like this.  
 Put your finger through the hole.  
 Gentle hold the outer edge with your thumb.  
 Be careful not to scratch the CD.  
 Put the CD in the case.

把你想听的CD拿来  
 妈妈来开电源  
 放进\拿出CD  
 我们要听第几首  
 音量太小了  
 声音太大了，调小一点  
 刚刚好  
 妈，声音太小了  
 妈妈可以听得清楚  
 你要用耳机听吗？  
 甜心，这是你最喜欢的歌  
 按下开始\停止键  
 你要先停一下，等一下再听吗？  
 你要再听一次吗？  
 我们从头开始听吧。  
 像这样拿住CD。  
 把手指头放进洞内。  
 用大拇指轻轻地抓住外侧。  
 小心不要刮到CD。  
 把CD放进盒子内。





Want to dance to the music?  
Can you play another CD?  
Can you play the song again?  
Mommy loves this song.

你要跟着音乐跳舞吗?  
你能放其他的CD吗?  
你能再放那首歌吗?  
妈咪很喜欢这首歌。

## CHAPTER14-03看电视

Can I watch TV, Mum?  
Pororo's going to start.  
Can you turn on the TV?  
Press the green button on the remote.  
Oops! It's already started.  
Let's lower the volume\please turn it down.  
I can't hear. Turn it up, please.  
It's too loud. Please turn down the volume.  
Want Mummy to watch it, too?  
Pororo is really funny, isn't it?  
Pororo was really fun today, isn't it?  
Is Pororo that fun, Honey?  
Let's watch Pororo and turn off the TV.  
It's over now.  
Let's stop watching.  
It's not good to watch too much TV.  
Mum, I want to watch Arthur.  
Didn't you promise not to watch TV?  
Let's watch only for 30 minutes.  
You shouldn't whine just to watch more.  
How much TV is too much TV?  
What program are you watching?  
That drama isn't for kids.  
Now turn it off. You can watch it again tomorrow.  
I am worried because you watch too much TV.  
The TV seems to be broken.

妈，我可以看电视吗？  
《PORORO》要开始了。  
你能开电视吗？  
按下遥控器的绿色按钮。  
啊！已经开始了。  
音量调小一点。  
我听不到，请调大声一点。  
这太大了。请把音量调低。  
妈妈也要一起看吗？  
《Grong》真的好笑不是吗？  
今天的《PORORO》真好看，对吧？  
宝贝，《PORORO》那么有趣吗？  
我们看完《PORORO》就关掉电视。  
现在都结束了。  
我们不要看了吧。  
看太多电视不好。  
妈妈，我想看《Arthur》。  
你不是答应我不看电视了吗？  
我们只看30分钟。  
你不可以吵着要看更久。  
看多久电视算看很久呢？  
你在看什么节目？  
这个电视剧不是小孩子看到。  
现在关掉，你可以明天再看。  
你看太多电视，妈妈好担心。  
电视好像故障了。

## CHAPTER14-04玩电脑游戏

I'll play a few computer games.  
Can't I play it a little bit more?  
Play after you do your homework.  
You have to do your homework after playing games.  
I'll play for just 1 hour.  
Click the left button on the mouse.  
You control with the direction pad.  
Can you turn down the speakers?  
Stop playing now.  
Your eyesight will get bad.  
When did you start playing?  
You're grounded from playing games today.  
You can't play computer games today.

我要玩一些电脑游戏。  
我不可以再多玩一会吗？  
先做完功课再玩。  
玩完游戏之后一定要做作业。  
我只玩一个小时。  
点一下鼠标的左键。  
你可以用方向键来控制。  
你可以把喇叭的音量调小吗？  
现在不要玩了。  
你的视力会变差。  
你什么时候开始玩的？  
你被罚禁止游戏。  
你今天不可以玩电脑游戏。



Didn't you promise not to play any games?  
lets make a rule to play only on weekends.  
I'm doing better than my friends.  
I need to win this round.  
Playing too many games isn't good for you.  
We should beware of the electromagnetic waves  
from the computer  
Mum, this game isn't fun.  
I cant stop thinking about playing games.

你不是答应不玩任何游戏了吗?  
我们订个规定，只能周末玩。  
我玩的比我的朋友还好。  
我必须赢这一局。  
玩太多游戏，对你不好。  
我们应该小心从电脑中发射的电磁波。  
妈妈，这个游戏不好玩。  
我忍不住想玩游戏。

## CHAPTER14-05玩棋\牌\拼图

Let's play board games\cards\puzzles.  
let's divide teams.  
Were a team.  
let's divide by throwing the dice.  
I'll be the black horse. You be the white horse.  
You need to obey the rules.  
let's choose the punishments.  
You need to go one more block.  
Please, look and think.  
You need to be punished because I won.  
Then what's the rewards?  
I'm going to win next time.  
One more !Yeah! I got the bonus.  
You cheated!  
Don't peek my cards.  
One more round, please.  
I'm not going to let you win this time.  
Don't be mad because you lost.  
You can try hard and win next time.  
Quickly. I can't wait all day.  
Don't urge me. I'm thinking.  
Its your turn now.  
lets put these pieces together.  
Start with this piece of the puzzle.  
This could go here.\Looks like this fits here.  
Wow,you're a puzzle king! \you're very good at  
solving puzzle!

我们来玩棋\牌\拼图  
我们来分组。  
我们是同一组。  
我们用掷骰子来分  
我是黑棋，你是白棋。  
你一定要遵守规则。  
我们来选惩罚的方式。  
你必须再移动一格。  
看着，好好思考。  
妈妈赢了，你要被处罚。  
那么奖品是什么？  
下次，我一定要赢。  
再一次！耶！我拿到积分了。  
你作弊。  
不要偷看我的牌。  
再来一局  
这次我不会让你赢的。  
不可以因为你输了就发脾气。  
下次你努力赢就好了。  
快点。我没有办法再等一整天。  
不要再催了，我在思考。  
现在轮到你了。  
我们把这些拼图拼在一起吧。  
从这一块图开始。  
这个好像跟这里很合。  
哇，你真的很会拼图。

## CHAPTER14-06玩吹泡泡

Will you play with the bubbles?  
Lightly blow into the straw.  
Be careful not to spill the soap water.  
Don't breathe in.  
Do not drink the soap water!  
Look at the small bubbles.  
Look!The bubble is the rainbow color.  
Wow,its a huge bubble.

你要玩吹泡泡吗？  
轻轻地吹吸管。  
小心不要把肥皂水溅出来。  
不要吸进去。  
不可以喝肥皂水。  
看这些小小的泡泡。  
看！这泡泡有彩虹的颜色。  
哇，好大的泡泡。



Want you pop it with your fingers.  
Let me blow it for you.  
The two got stuck together.  
Make it go up by flapping your hands.  
The bubbles flying off high.  
Mum, I want to blow it.  
Wow! it's on top of my baby's head.  
Catch this bubble.  
Blow it inside the bathroom.  
Want you blow it outside?  
Isn't it fun?  
You blow really well.  
The floor is slippery. Be careful!

你要用手指让泡泡爆开吗?  
我来帮你吹。  
有两个黏在一起了。  
用手把它煽上去。  
泡泡飞的好高。  
妈妈我要吹。  
哇! 泡泡在我宝贝的头上了。  
抓住这个泡泡  
在浴室内吹  
你要去外面吹吗?  
不是很好玩吗?  
你吹得真好。  
地板很滑。小心!

## CHAPTER14-07 “老师说” 游戏

Do you know how to play Simon says?  
I forgot how to play.  
Mummy will tell you again. Listen to it.  
Its simple. Just do what Simon says  
But when I just says, “Close your eyes,” you do it.  
But when I just say don't listen to me.  
Let's start. Listen carefully.  
Simon says, “Clap your hands!”  
Good job!  
Let's start again “Raise your right leg!”  
Oops, the order didn't start with “Simon says”  
Then you will lose.  
The loser should do the hip roll dance.  
Simon says, “Turn around!”  
Simon says, “Touch your ears!”  
Simon says, “Open your mouth!”  
Simon says, “Put your left hand up!”  
Simon says, “Shake your hips!”  
Oh, I got mixed up.  
Again, again. I can do well this time.  
Pay attention and act.  
Now you're it.  
Simon says, “Clap your hands!”  
Did you think Mummy would get tricked?  
Oops, Mummy lost.  
I have to do the hip dance.  
Mum, you're funny.

你知道怎么玩“老师说”游戏吗?  
我忘记怎么玩了。  
妈妈再告诉你一次。听好。  
很简单。作出老师说的动作就好了。  
当我说“老师说闭上眼睛”，你就要照做。  
但当只是我说的话就不用听。  
开始了。仔细听好。  
老师说：拍手。  
很好  
再一次。“抬起你的右脚”  
喔，命令没有从“老师说”开始。  
那么，你输了。  
输的人要摇屁股跳舞。  
老师说：转圈！  
老师说：摸耳朵！  
老师说：张开嘴巴！  
老师说：举起左手！  
老师说：摇屁股！  
喔，我搞糊涂了。  
再一次，再一次。这次我可以做得很好  
想好再行动。  
这从轮到你当老师。  
老师说：拍手！  
你以为妈妈会被骗吗？  
喔，妈咪输了。  
我要用屁股跳舞了。  
妈，你好好笑喔

## CHAPTER15心情和情绪

### CHAPTER15-01高兴的时候

How do you feel today?  
I feel happy/fine/great/good.

你觉得今天如何?  
我觉得很好。



Hurray!Yey!  
 I'm glad you praised me. /I'm glad you said good things about me.  
 I'm happy I did a good job on the test.  
 I feel best when you hold me.  
 Mom's really happy when you eat a lot of my food.  
 Mommy's glad that you're happy.  
 It is said that smiling spreads to other people.  
 A smiling face makes other people feel good.  
 If you're happy, you make other people happy.  
 You made my day,Honey!

哇！太棒了！  
 我好高兴你赞美我。  
 我好高兴我考试考的很好。  
 当你抱着我，我最开心了。  
 当你吃很多我煮的菜时，妈妈真的很开心。  
 看到你开心，妈妈也很开心。  
 据说，笑是可以传播给其他人的。  
 笑容可以使其他人心情好。  
 如果你高兴的话，你就会使其他人高兴。  
 宝贝，因为你，我今天过的很棒！

## CHAPTER15-02高兴的时候

I can't wait for summer vacation.  
 I can't wait for the trip.  
 I can't wait for Saturday to begin.  
 I can't wait for vacation to begin.  
 I can't wait for my birthday.  
 How many more nights are left?  
 I'm happy that Grandma will come soon.  
 I'm happy that vacation has started.  
 Are we there yet? I can't wait.  
 I'm really excited about today.  
 It's so thrilling to wait.  
 What present do you want?  
 I wonder what present I will get.  
 I am so excited that I can't even sleep.

我等不及要放暑假了。  
 我等不及要去旅行了。  
 我等不及礼拜六要开始了。  
 我等不及要开始放假了。  
 我等不及要过生日了。  
 还剩下多少天呢？  
 奶奶快来了，我好开心喔。  
 我好高兴暑假开始了。  
 我们到了吗？我等不及了。  
 我对今天真的超兴奋的。  
 等待让人好兴奋。  
 你想收到什么礼物？  
 我想知道我会收到什么礼物。  
 我因为太兴奋而睡不着觉。

## CHAPTER15-03伤心的时候

I'm so sad.  
 I was so sad that I couldn't stop my tears.  
 I was so sad that I cried a lot.  
 I'm sorry that Mommy made you sad.  
 You look sad. What happened at school?  
 I'm sad because my friend has moved to another school.  
 When you two brothers fight, Mommy's very sad.  
 When my son is sick, Mom's hearbroken.  
 When my girl cries, Mom feels so bad.  
 Don't be sad.  
 Don't cry, Minsu.  
 When you scold me, I'm very sad.  
 When you get angry, I'm sad.  
 This is a very sad movie.  
 You need to comfort your friend when he's/she's sad.

我好难过。  
 我难过到眼泪流不停。  
 我好难过，所以我一直哭。  
 抱歉，妈妈让你伤心了。  
 你看起来很伤心。在学校发生了什么事呢？  
 我难过因为我的朋友转学了。  
 你们两兄弟打架时，妈妈很伤心。  
 当我儿子生病时，妈妈的心都碎了。  
 当我女儿哭时，妈妈觉得很难过。  
 不要难过。  
 民肃，不要哭了。  
 当你责骂我的时候，我很伤心。  
 当你生气时，我很难过。  
 这是一部悲伤的电影。  
 当你的朋友很难过时，你必须去安慰他/她。





## CHAPTER15-04心烦/失望的时候

I'm really upset. /I feel bad.

I'm sorry that my friend has to leave now.

Mom, Why do you favor my brother over me? I feel bad.

I'm really disappointed./It's really disappointing.

I'm disappointed in you, Mom. /I feel bad because of you, Mom.

I'm disappointed you forgot to bring any presents.

Are you disappointed very much?

Talk to your friend when you're upset.

If you're upset because of Mommy, please tell me.

Don't feel so bad. You can do better next time.

Don't make me disappointed, please.

You seem devastated because you were waiting for it all day long.

我真的很烦。

现在我的朋友必须要走，我好不舍。

妈，为什么你总是更疼弟弟，我好伤心。

我真的很失望。

妈，我真的对你很失望。

你忘记带我的礼物，我好失望。

你很失望吗？

当你心烦时，告诉你的朋友。

如果你因为妈妈感觉到心烦，要告诉我。

不要失望。下次你一定会做得更好。

请不要让我失望。

你等了一整天，看起来相当灰心。

## CHAPTER15-05生气的时候

I'm really angry.

I'm getting angrier.

I'm so angry that I can't calm down.

What's wrong? /What's the matter?

What made you that angry?

Why are you mad, Honey?

Yongsuo keeps bugging me. /Yongsuo keeps making me mad. /Yongsuo is driving me crazy.

If you keep doing it, I'm going to get angry.

Stop it! Mom will get angry.

I'm really angry now. Okay?

Mom, are you feeling really bad? 公众微信号: liangkeshu2015

I hope you feel fine now, Mom.

Don't get angry, Mom.

I'm scared when you're angry.

It's really scary when my mom gets angry.

I get annoyed by my friend./One of my friends is really annoying.

I get angry because he doesn't understand me.

You need to deal with your anger/temper.

Calm down. /Get over it!

You're so short-tempered.

Why do you get easily bothered?

Don't lose your temper like that.

Don't act like that even if you're angry.

You shouldn't throw things when you're angry.

Getting angry won't solve anything.

Once you are angered, It's not easy to get over it.

我真的很生气了。

我越来越生气了。

我因为太生气而无法冷静下来。

发生什么事了吗？

是什么让你那么生气？

宝贝，你为什么生气？

雍索一直让我生气。

如果你继续那样的话，我会生气的。

停止！我要生气了。

现在我真的生气了。知道吗？

妈，你真的生气了吗？

妈，我希望你现在气消了。

妈，不要生气。

你生气的时候，我会害怕。

当妈妈生气时，真的很恐怖。

我被我的朋友激怒了。

因为他听不懂我的话，所以我很生气。

你需要管理你的情绪。

镇定下来。

你很容易生气。

你为什么很容易被激怒？

不要像那样发脾气。

就算生气，你也不能做出那样的举动。

当你生气时，也不可以丢东西。

生气并不能解决任何问题。

万一生气的话，就很难从怒气当中解脱。



Why do you get angry with me?  
You look ugly when you get angry. /You look ugly when you're upset.

你为什么对我生气？  
当你生气时，看起来很凶。

## CHAPTER15-06惊吓的时候

Peek-a-boo!  
Oh my gosh! /Oh my goodness!  
Ta-da~! Surprise!  
Were you surprised?  
You scared me! /You surprised me! /You're freaking me out!  
You made me surprised, Dad.  
I am surprised that Dad came.  
I was so surprised that I almost passed out.  
Mom, how come you're not surprised?  
I'm surprised to hear you say such a thing.

哇！（突然出现大声吓人）  
天呀！  
哒哒~惊喜来了！  
你被吓到了吧？  
你吓到我了。  
爸，你吓到我了。  
爸爸突然出来，我被吓到了。  
我惊吓到差点昏倒。  
妈，为什么你没有被吓到？  
我对你说出那样的话感到吃惊。

## CHAPTER15-07害怕的时候

I'm scared.  
I'm scared/afraid of the dark.  
I'm afraid to go alone.  
I'm afraid to be alone.  
I'm afraid to sleep alone.  
I'm afraid to get a shot.  
I'm afraid to go to the dentist.  
I'm trembling in fear.  
I'm getting goosebumps.  
It's creepy.  
I'm shivering.  
Don't be scared, Honey.  
You don't need to be afraid. /There is no need to be afraid.  
Are you scared?  
I'm not scared at all.  
You are very brave, my son!  
What are you scared/afraid of ?  
Ghosts and monsters are scary.  
There are no ghosts in the world.  
There are no such things as ghosts or monsters.  
Hold me so that I don't get scared.  
Get brave!  
Be strong!  
You have a family behind you.  
Mom and Dad will be beside you.  
Mom and Dad will protect you.

我好害怕。  
我很怕黑。  
我害怕一个人去。  
我害怕一个人。  
我害怕一个人睡。  
我害怕打针。  
我害怕去看牙医。  
我怕得直发抖。  
我起鸡皮疙瘩了。  
令人毛骨悚然。  
我在发抖。  
宝贝，不用害怕。  
你不需要害怕。  
你害怕吗？  
我一点也不害怕。  
儿子，你很勇敢。  
你在害怕什么？  
幽灵和怪物都很可怕。  
世界上没有幽灵。  
没有幽灵和怪物这种东西。  
抱住我，我就不会害怕了。  
拿出勇气！  
要坚强！  
家人都在后面支持你。  
爸爸妈妈都会在你身旁。  
爸爸妈妈会保护你的。

## CHAPTER15-08担心/后悔

I'm worried it might rain. /I'm afraid that it will rain.  
I'm afraid to make mistakes.

我担心会下雨。  
我担心会犯错。



I'm afraid Mom won't get better soon.  
I'm worried that I messed up the exam.  
I'm worried because Minxi wouldn't talk to me.  
Don't worry too much. /Don't be too anxious.  
You don't need to worry.  
I should have studied hard.  
I should have listened to Mom.  
I shouldn't have bought this toy.  
I'm so sorry that I didn't listen to you, Mom.  
It's no use being sorry now.  
Study hard now, or you will feel sorry later.

我担心妈妈不会很快好起来。  
我担心开始会考砸。  
我担心敏希不再跟我说话。  
不要担心太多。  
你不需要担心。  
我当时应该用功读书的。  
我当时应该听妈妈的话的。  
我当时不应该买这个玩具的。  
妈，我很抱歉没有听你的话。  
现在后悔也没用了。  
现在要用功读书，不然你以后会后悔的。

## CHAPTER15-09疲劳/压力

I'm tired. /I'm tired out.  
I'm so tired that I want to take a rest.  
I feel faint. /I feel like I'm going to collapse.  
I'm stressed out.  
Don't stress me out. /Don't bother me.  
The homework is really stressful.  
Don't get stressed out. /Don't let things stress  
Let's do something to ease our stress.  
We have to get rid of our tension instantly.

我累了。  
我好累喔，好想休息。  
我好像要昏倒了。  
我感觉到有压力。  
不要给我压力。  
这个作业真的让我好有压力。  
不要觉得有压力。  
我们做些什么来解除压力吧。  
我们应该及时纾解压力。

## CHAPTER16描述个性

### CHAPTER16-01性格好

Suhong is nice/generous. /Suhong is a good person.  
Suhong is kind.  
Suhong is nice to everyone.  
Suhong has good manners.  
Suhog is caring/thoughtful.  
Suhong is very understanding.  
Suhong is very positive.  
Suhong is friendly.  
Suhong gets along well with his friends.  
Suhong is sincere.  
Suhong is responsible.

苏洪人很好。  
苏洪很亲切。  
苏洪对每个人都很好。  
苏洪很有礼貌。  
苏洪很为他人着想。  
苏洪很能理解他人。  
苏洪很正面。  
苏洪很友善。  
苏洪跟朋友们相处得很好。  
苏洪很诚实。  
苏洪很有责任感。

### CHAPTER16-02性格不好

Suji acts as if she knows everything.  
Suji is just showing off.  
Suji is bragging all the time.  
Suji likes to stand out.  
Suji is arrogant.  
Suji tries to control everything. /Suji likes to boss people around.

苏吉表现得好像她什么都知道。  
苏吉只是在炫耀。  
苏吉总是在吹牛。  
苏吉喜欢引人注目。  
苏吉很自大。  
苏吉喜欢控制一切。



Suji is very selfish.  
Suji doesn't care about others.  
Suji only thinks about herself.  
Suji is picky about everything.  
Suji is greedy.

苏吉非常自私。  
苏吉不知道要替他人着想。  
苏吉只想到自己。  
苏吉对每件事都很挑剔。  
苏吉很贪心。

#### CHAPTER16-02性格不好

Suji is ill-mannered.  
Suji uses bad words.  
Suji bullies others./Suji picks on others.  
Suji blames others for her own faults.  
Suji is a copycat.

苏吉很没礼貌。  
苏吉会说脏话。  
苏吉会欺负其他人。  
苏吉把自己的错推给别人。  
苏吉只会模仿别人。

#### CHAPTER16-03性格内向

My brother is very shy.  
My brother is a bit introverted.  
My brother is timid.  
My brother is reserved.  
My sister is kind of quiet.  
My sister is gentle and quiet.  
My sister is a bit blunt.  
My sister doesn't like to stand out.  
It is embarrassing.  
Be more confident.  
Don't hide behind my back.  
Don't whisper.  
Say it louder.  
You need to say what you want clearly.  
You need to say "Hi" to adults clearly.

我的弟弟很容易害羞！  
我弟弟有一点内向！  
我弟弟很胆小。  
我弟弟很沉默寡言。  
我妹妹有点安静。  
我妹妹很温和安静。  
我妹妹有点迟钝。  
我妹妹不喜欢引人注目。  
真叫人难为情。  
有自信点。  
不要躲在我后面。  
不要窃窃私语。  
说大声点。  
你必须把你想要的东西清楚的说出来。  
你应该好好地跟大人们打招呼。

#### CHAPTER16-04性格外向/活泼

My brother is really active.  
My brother is really sociable.  
My brother is an outgoing person.  
My brother is very active in everything.  
My brother does everything with confidence.  
My brother always leads others/My brother is a good leader.  
I want to be active like my sister.  
My sister is not afraid to speak her mind.  
Sumin is popular among her friends.  
Minsu talks a lot/Minsu is very talkative.  
Minsu is a very eloquent person.

我哥哥很活泼。  
我哥哥很擅长交际。  
我哥哥是很外向的人。  
我哥哥对每件事都很积极。  
我哥哥做每件事都很有自信。  
我哥哥一直都是主导别人的。  
我想像姐姐一样活泼。  
我姐姐一点也不害怕说出自己的想法。  
苏敏在朋友们中很受欢迎。  
民肃很健谈。  
民肃是个会表达的人。

#### CHAPTER16-05性格文静/急躁

Minji is very calm./Minji is careful.  
Minji is calm./Minji is not hasty.  
Minji is very patient.  
Minji is such an easygoing person./Minji has a laid-back nature.

敏基很谨慎。  
敏基很镇定。  
敏基很有耐心。  
敏基是一个很随和的人。





Minji is slow in everything.  
Minsu is impatient./Minsu is hasty.  
Minsu is hot-tempered./Minsu is short-tempered.  
Minsu is kind of sensitive.  
Minsu is easily distracted.

敏基做什么事都很慢。  
民肃性格很急躁。  
民肃很容易生气。  
民肃有些敏感。  
民肃很容易注意力不集中。

## CHAPTER16-06性格固执

Wushang is stubborn.  
Wushang is as stubborn as a mule.  
Wushang is out of control if he does not get his way.  
Wushang wants everything to go his own way.  
Wushang always follows the rules.  
Wushang is not flexible in his way of thinking./Wushang does not easily change the way he thinks.  
Wushang gets strongly obsessed by somethings.  
Stop being so stubborn.  
Don't be too stubborn.  
I wonder who you're like by being so stubborn.

伍尚很顽固。  
伍尚固执得跟驴一样。  
如果事情没有照着伍尚的意思，他就会失去控制。  
伍尚希望事情都要顺着自己的心意。  
伍尚总是遵守规定。  
伍尚的思考模式没有变通性。  
伍尚对某些事情超级着迷。  
不要那么不听话。  
不要太倔强。  
你到底是像谁才会这么倔强？

## CHAPTER16-07意志薄弱

Minji is not very active in everything.  
Minji is somewhat wishy washy.  
Minji can't decide anything./Minji is indecisive.  
Minji is very weak-minded.  
Minji is likely to do as she is told by others./Minji is easily led by others.

敏基对每件事都不是很积极。  
敏基有点优柔寡断。  
敏基无法自己做决定。  
敏基的意志很不坚定。  
敏基很容易被他人主导。

## CHAPTER16-08表示性格的表达

active  
aggressive  
arrogant  
bad-tempered  
blunt  
brave  
bossy  
brutal  
calm  
careless  
clever  
cold-blooded  
competitive  
conservative  
considerate  
courageous  
creative  
critical  
cruel

活跃的，积极的，活泼的  
进取的  
傲慢的，自大的，自负的  
易怒的，恶劣的  
迟钝的  
勇敢的  
爱指挥他人的  
残酷的，恶毒的  
镇定的，冷静的  
草率的，不细心的  
聪明的，伶俐的，有才能的  
冷酷的  
竞争欲强烈的  
保守的  
深思熟虑的，关怀的  
有勇气的  
创造性的，有创意的  
批判的，刁难的  
残忍的



cunning  
diligent  
dishonest  
disorganized  
easygoing  
foolish  
frank  
funny  
generous  
good-natured  
gentle  
greedy  
hardworking  
honest  
hot-tempered  
humane  
humorous  
impatient  
impolite  
imprudent  
jealous  
kind  
lazy  
mean  
merciful  
modest  
moody  
naughty  
negligent  
notorious  
outgoing  
polite  
practical  
liberal  
prudent  
punctual  
reliable  
reserved  
right  
rude  
ruthless  
selfish  
sensible  
shy  
silly  
simple

狡猾的  
勤劳的，勤奋的，尽心的  
不诚实的  
没有规划的  
随和的，懒的，悠闲的  
笨的，跟傻瓜一样的  
真诚的，坦白的  
好笑的，滑稽的，奇异的  
宽大的，宽厚的，慷慨的  
温和的，温顺的  
文雅的，温和的  
贪心的，欲望很多的  
勤劳的  
正直的，诚实的，单纯的  
性急的，易怒的  
有人情味的，仁慈的  
幽默的  
不耐烦的  
无礼的，粗鲁的  
鲁莽的  
忌妒的，猜忌的  
亲切的，和蔼的  
懒惰的，慵懒的  
卑鄙的，吝啬的  
慈悲的  
谦虚的，审慎的，端庄的  
情绪化的  
无礼的，顽皮的，淘气的  
随便的，粗心的  
恶名昭彰的  
外向的，善交际的  
恭敬的，客气的，有礼貌的  
实际的，踏实的  
进步的  
慎重的  
遵守时间的  
可信赖的  
寡言的，含蓄的  
正确的，准确的，公正的  
无礼的，低俗的  
无情的，残忍的  
自私的  
明智的，懂情理的  
羞怯的  
愚蠢的，糊涂的  
单纯的





sincere  
sociable  
stingy  
strict  
stubborn  
stupid  
sweet  
sympathetic  
talented  
talkative  
thoughtful  
thoughtless  
timid  
ungrateful  
unkind  
warm-blooded  
warm-hearted  
wise

真诚的  
善交际的  
(特别是指钱)小气的  
严格的  
顽固的, 固执的, 倔强的  
愚蠢的, 笨的  
逗人喜爱的  
富有同情心的  
有能力的  
健谈的  
深思熟虑的, 有同理心的  
欠考虑的, 不顾他人的  
胆小的, 没勇气的  
不知感恩的, 忘恩负义的  
刻薄的, 不亲切的  
热情的  
有同情心的, 热心的  
贤明的, 有智慧的

## CHAPTER17喜欢的/讨厌的

### CHAPTER17-01喜欢/讨厌的食物

What's your favorite food ?  
What's your least favorite food ?  
I like bulgogi the best./My favorite food is bulgogi.  
I love zhajiangmian the most.  
I like Chinese food.  
All of your food is delicious , Mommy.  
I don't like Japanese food very much.  
I don't like curry and rice very much.  
I don't want to eat any vegetables.  
I hate mushrooms.  
I've never tried duck.  
I can't eat curry because it's too spicy.  
I can't eat spicy food very well yet.  
Mommy's happy when I watch you eat.  
I'm happy since you ate well.  
Will you order me a pizza ?  
I want to eat pork cutlet , Mom.  
Let's eat out.  
Can I have one more piece/spoonful?  
It's very delicious.  
It's sweet.  
This is my kind of food.

你最喜欢的食物是什么?  
你最不喜欢的食物是什么?  
我最喜欢韩式烤肉。  
我最喜欢炸酱面。  
我喜欢中华料理。  
妈, 你煮的菜都很好吃。  
我不太喜欢日本料理。  
我不太喜欢咖喱饭。  
我不想吃蔬菜。  
我讨厌蘑菇。  
我从没吃过鸭肉。  
我没办法吃咖喱, 因为它太辣了。  
我还不太能吃辣的食物。  
看你吃, 妈咪就觉得很幸福。  
我很开心因为你能吃得很好。  
你会帮我订披萨吗?  
妈, 我想吃日式炸猪排。  
我们去外面吃吧。  
我可以再多吃一块/汤匙吗?  
很好吃。  
好甜。  
正和我的胃口。

### CHAPTER17-02喜欢/讨厌的衣服

I want to wear a red dress.

我想穿红色洋装。



I really like the dress.  
This T-shirt fits me well.  
This shirt is really pretty.  
The skirt and shirt match really well.  
Wow! I like your hat.  
It looks really good on you.  
The color of the sweater looks good on you.  
I like stripes on clothes.  
I want to wear socks with lace on them.  
I like skirts more than pants.  
My friends say that this is pretty.  
Princess dresses are popular.  
Mom, will you buy me a princess dress?  
Buy me a shirt with Winnie the Pooh on it.  
Are you going to wear that every day?  
Didn't you wear that yesterday?  
You really like those clothes, don't you?  
I don't want to take this off.  
I like this the most.  
I don't like to wear skirts.  
I hate these pants. They are not comfortable.

我很喜欢洋装。  
这件T恤很合身。  
这件衬衫真的很美。  
这件裙子和衬衫真的很搭。  
哇！我喜欢你的帽子！  
这真的很适合你。  
这件毛衣的颜色很适合你。  
我喜欢有条纹的衣服。  
我要穿有蕾丝的袜子。  
比起裤子，我更喜欢裙子。  
我的朋友们说这件衣服很好看。  
公主洋装很受欢迎。  
妈，你能买件公主洋装给我吗？  
买件有小熊维尼的衬衫给我。  
你每天都要穿那件吗？  
你昨天不是穿了那件吗？  
你真的很喜欢那些衣服，对吧？  
我不要把这件脱下来。  
我最喜欢这件了。  
我不喜欢穿裙子。  
我讨厌这条裤子。他穿起来不舒服。

## CHAPTER17-03喜欢/讨厌的人

Who is your best friend in class?  
Jina is my best friend.  
I want to be friends with Minsuo.  
I like my partner/deskmate.  
Tell me about your best friend.  
I like her because she's pretty and nice.  
I like him because he's kind and handsome.  
I want to marry Jina when I grow up.  
We are perfect for each other.  
Songjin understands my feelings.  
I'm proud of my friend.  
I liked her from the moment we met first.  
I want to write well like my friend.  
Can I invite her to my house?  
Is your teacher nice to you?  
Why do you like the teacher?  
Who's your role model?  
I respect Marie Curie.  
I want to be a scientist like Marie Curie.  
My favorite singer is Rain.  
Shiny's dancing and singing is cool.  
I want to sing well like that singer.  
I don't want to play with Suji.

在班上，谁是你最好的朋友？  
吉娜是我最好的朋友。  
我想和闵所成为朋友。  
我喜欢我的同桌伙伴。  
跟我谈谈你最好的朋友。  
我喜欢她，因为她漂亮又善良。  
因为他很亲切又帅，所以我喜欢他。  
我长大后，想跟吉娜结婚。  
我们非常适合彼此。  
宋锦很了解我的感受。  
我以我的朋友为荣。  
从第一次见面开始，我就很喜欢她。  
我想跟我朋友一样很会写字。  
我可以邀请她到我们家吗？  
你的老师对你好吗？  
你为什么喜欢这位老师？  
谁是你的学习对象？  
我尊敬居里夫人。  
我想跟居里夫人一样成为科学家。  
我喜欢的歌手是Rain。  
Shiny的歌舞都很酷。  
我想像那位歌手一样很会唱歌。  
我不想跟苏吉玩。





I don't like the English teacher because she is very scary.  
I don't like the teacher because he is too strict.  
I don't like anyone who nags me.  
I don't like the girl over there. She is mean to me.

我不喜欢那位英语老师，因为她很可怕。  
我不喜欢那位老师，因为他太严厉了。  
我讨厌任何人对我唠叨。  
我不喜欢在那边的那个女孩。她对我很不好。

## CHAPTER17-04讨厌做的事

I don't feel like eating.  
Why should I bother to do that?  
I don't want to do it because it's boring.  
Can you do it for me, Mom?  
Can't you let Jianmin do it instead of me?  
I don't want to brush my teeth.  
Why do I have to brush my teeth?  
Don't ask me to do this and that.  
I don't want to go.  
Can I not do my homework?  
Can I not do what I don't want to do?  
I still have to do it even if I don't want to?  
I'll do it later.  
Don't just say "NO!"  
You need to do it even if you don't want to.  
You don't have to do it if you hate it.  
I hope you won't feel sorry for this.  
If you don't do this now, you'll be in a rush.

我没心情吃饭。  
我为什么要费心去做那件事?  
那个太无趣了，我不想做。  
妈，你能帮我做吗?  
你不能让健民代替我去做吗?  
我不想刷牙。  
我为什么一定要刷牙呢?  
不要叫我做这做那的。  
我不想去。  
我可以不做作业吗?  
我可以做我不想做的吗?  
即使我不想做，也一定要做吗?  
我等一下再做。  
不要只是说“不”。  
即使你不想做，你也一定要做。  
如果你讨厌的话，你不一定要做。  
我希望你不会因此而后悔。  
如果你现在不做这件事的话，你以后会手忙脚乱。

## CHAPTER18外貌

### CHAPTER18-01帅气/美丽的外表

He is very handsome./He is a good-looking boy.  
He is a beautiful boy.  
He is a boy of noble appearance.  
He is so cute./He is such a cute-looking boy.  
She is pretty.  
He is a handsome boy. / She is a pretty girl.  
He / She looks like a movie star.  
He / She is a very stylish person.  
My son is more handsome than him.  
I think my daughter is prettier than her.  
My girl is this pretty! Who do you look like?  
I just look like you, Mom.

他很帅。  
他是美男子。  
他长得很象贵公子。  
他好可爱。  
她很美。  
他是俊男。 / 她是美女。  
他/她长得很像电影明星。  
他/她是位很时尚的人。  
我的儿子比他帅。  
我觉得我女儿比她更美。  
我女儿好漂亮喔！你长得像谁呢？  
妈，我长得像你。

### CHAPTER18-02平凡的外表

He is not really handsome.  
She is not really pretty.  
He / She just has a common look.  
He / She looks kind of ugly.

他长得不是很帅。  
她长得不是很漂亮。  
他/她长得很平凡。  
他/她看起来算丑的。



I have dark eyes.

我有黑眼睛。

I have black hair.

我有黑头发。

## CHAPTERapter18-03身材

My mom is slender.

我妈很苗条。

My mother stays in good shape.

我妈的身材很好。

My mom has a curvy shape. / My mom has an hourglass figure.

我妈有S曲线。

My mom is overweight. / My mom is big.

我妈很胖。

My mom is a bit plump.

我妈有点丰满。

My dad looks jacked. / My dad is a muscleman.

我爸是肌肉男。

My dad has a big belly.

我爸的肚子很大。

My dad is too skinny.

我爸太瘦了。

## CHAPTER18-04脸部长相

He has big / small eyes.

他的眼睛很大/小。

His eyes have creases.

他有双眼皮。

She has a high nose.

她的鼻子很挺。

She has a flat nose.

她有个塌鼻子。

Her nose is a little flat.

她的鼻子有点塌。

His nose is big.

他的鼻子很大。

His mouth is big / small.

他的嘴巴很大/小。

Her face is egg shaped. / She has an oval face.

他/她是鹅蛋脸。

Her face is long.

她的脸很长。

Her face is round.

她的脸很圆。

Her head is small.

她的头很小。

He has a big head.

他有个大头。

He has dark eyebrows.

他有深色的眉毛。

He has dimples.

他有酒窝。

Her face is white.

她的脸很白。

Her skin is fair.

她的皮肤很白。

Her skin is dark.

她的皮肤很黑。

Her skin is very soft.

她的皮肤很嫩。

Her skin is not healthy. / Her skin is not clean.

她的皮肤不好。

## CHAPTER18-05有特色的外表

He's got a pointed forehead.

他有凸出的额头。

He has a long jaw.

他有个长下巴。

His ears are extremely long.

他的耳朵非常长。

He has pimples.

他有青春痘。

He has freckles.

他有雀斑。

She has a dot next to her mouth.

她的嘴巴旁边有一颗痣。

She has a sharp look. / She looks sharp.

她的外表很有型。

She looks nice and warm.

她看起来人很好。

She has an attractive smile.

她有吸引人的微笑。

She looks sullen and unfriendly.

她看起来脸很臭，也不友善。

## CHAPTER18-06发型

My hair is curly / a little curly.

我的头发很/有点卷。

My hair is straight.

我是直发。



I have a lot of hair.  
My hair is thin.  
My hair is long / short.  
My hair is stiff.  
My hair is silky and smooth.  
I got my hair permed.  
My hair is short in length.  
I got my hair cut short.  
I like my hair long and straight.  
I like my hair short.  
My brother has a crew cut.  
My dad has a lot of gray hair.  
My grandpa is bald.  
Can I pull out your gray hairs, Dad?

我有很多头发。  
我的头发很少。  
我的头发很长/短。  
我的头发很硬。  
我的头发像丝绸般的滑顺。  
我把头发烫卷了。  
我是短发。  
我把头发剪短了。  
我喜欢我的头发又长又直。  
我喜欢留短头发。  
我哥哥是平头。  
我爸爸有很多白头发。  
我爷爷是光头。  
爸，我帮你把白头发拔起来，好吗？

## CHAPTER18-07个头/身高

He is tall / short.  
He is 130cm tall.  
He's taller than 140cm. / He's over 140cm tall.  
She is shorter than 120cm. / She is not even 120cm tall.  
She is taller / shorter than her peers.  
She's short and skinny.  
let's see how tall you are.  
You grew more in such a short time.  
Wow... you have grown quite a bit!  
You grew 1cm.  
You're a little taller / shorter than Jina.  
I want to be taller.  
Who's the tallest in your class?  
Minsu is the tallest in our class.  
I want to be tall like Dad.  
I wish I could be taller.  
I'm jealous of tall people.  
Your height is perfect.  
You'll grow more if you eat well.  
You need to drink milk to grow taller.  
You need to go to sleep early to grow taller.  
There are people who grow late.  
Mom also began to get taller late. / Mom also had a late growth spurt.

他很高/矮。  
他有130公分高。  
他的身高超过140公分。  
她的身高还不到120公分。  
她比同年纪的高/矮。  
她又矮又瘦。  
我们来看看你有多高。  
你在秀短的时间内长高很多。  
哇... 你已经长了好多喔！  
你长高了1公分。  
你比吉娜高/矮一点。  
我想再高一点。  
在你的班上，谁最高？  
民肃是我们班上最高的。  
我想长得跟爸一样高。  
我希望我再高一点就好了。  
我忌妒高的人。  
你的身高刚刚好。  
如果你好好吃饭的话，你会长得更快。  
你要多喝牛奶，才能长得更高。  
你早点睡觉，才能长得更高。  
也用些人长得比较慢。  
妈妈也是后来才长高的。

## CHAPTER18-08体重/减肥

I am overweight.  
I weigh 20kg.  
Let's measure your weight.  
Step on the scale.  
You've lost / gained weight.

我很胖。  
我的体重是20公斤。  
我们来量一下你的体重。  
站到体重机上。  
你的体重增加/减少了。



It looks like you've gained weight.  
You weigh a lot / a little.  
You look good because you're slim.  
You are pleasingly plump.  
I like to stay in good shape.  
I want to lose weight.  
You are not overweight at all.  
You should lose weight by exercising.  
You need some workouts to lose weight.  
You should go on a diet.  
Try to eat less from now on.  
Don't eat too many snacks now.  
You need to gain weight.  
You don't need to lose weight.  
It's bad to starve to lose weight.  
I can get fat even from drinking water.  
My friends call me a fatty.  
It's bad to make fun of people for their looks.  
Obesity is bad for your health. / Being overweight is bad for your health.

看起来你好像增重了。  
你很/不怎么重。  
因为你很苗条，看起来不错。  
你胖得很好看。  
我喜欢保持健康的体能。  
我想减肥。  
你一点都不胖。  
你应该透过运动来减轻体重。  
你需要运动来减肥。  
你应该减肥。  
现在开始，试着少吃一点。  
现在不要吃太多点心。  
你应该增加一些体重。  
你不需要减肥。  
透过挨饿来减肥很不好。  
我喝水也会变胖。  
我的朋友们都叫我胖子。  
取笑别人的外表是不好的。  
过胖对健康是有害的。

## CHAPTER18-09烦恼外表

I want to be taller.  
I want my skin to be whiter.  
I want my hair to be longer.  
I want to be prettier.  
I wish my eyes were bigger.  
Am I ugly, Mom?  
You're pretty enough.  
You're adorable the way you are.  
I'm jealous of my pretty friends.  
What's inside you is more important than what's outside.  
Don't judge people by their looks. / Don't judge a book by its cover.  
It seems like I have Mom's and Dad's bad traits.  
You have your own charm.  
I want to wear pretty clothes.  
Clothes have to be clean.

我想要更高。  
我希望我的皮肤可以更白。  
我希望我的头发可以更长。  
我想变得更美。  
我希望我的眼睛可以更大。  
妈，我很丑吗？  
你已经够美了。  
你这样就很可爱了。  
我嫉妒长得漂亮的朋友。  
内在比外表更重要。  
不可以只透过外表来评判一个人。  
我好像遗传了爸妈的缺点。  
你有你自己的魅力。  
我想穿美丽的衣服。  
衣服只要干净就可以了。

## CHAPTER18-10母亲节Mother's Day

Happy Mother's Day!  
When is Mother's Day?  
It's on the second Sunday in May.  
Mom, this is my gift for you.  
I wrote this card for you, Mom.

母亲节快乐！  
母亲节是什么时候？  
那是五月的第二个星期日。  
妈，这是我为您准备的礼物。  
妈，我写了这张卡片给您。

## CHAPTER18-11阵亡将士纪念日Memorial Day





Memorial Day is celebrated on the last Monday of May.

Americans are thankful for the people who died for their nation on this day.

It marks the beginning of summer.

Summer vacation usually starts around Memorial Day.

阵亡将士纪念日是五月的最后一个星期天。

美国人在这一天对为国捐躯的人们表达感谢。

这节日意味着夏天的开始。

暑假开始的日子通常跟阵亡将士纪念日很近。

## CHAPTER19打招呼/感谢/道歉

### CHAPTER19-01见面时的打招呼

Hello, Minsu!

Hello!

Good morning! / Good afternoon! / Good evening!

How are you?

How's everything going?

Nice to meet you, Jina.

Long time no see!

Good to see you again.

Are your parents fine?

How are your parents?

Is your brother / sister well?

Nice to see you.

How do you do?

I've heard a lot about you.

Fancy meeting you here.

What brings you here?

I didn't expect I would see you here.

Let's shake hands.

It's been quite a while since we met.

I missed you.

Why didn't you keep in touch?

民肃，你好！

哈啰！

早安！/午安！/晚安！

你好吗？

一切顺利吗？

吉娜，很高兴认识你。

好久不见！

很高兴再次见到你。

你的父母好吗？

你的父母近况如何？

你的兄弟/姐妹好吗？

很高兴见到你。

你好吗？

我听说了很多有关你的事情。

很高兴在这里见到你。

是什么风把你吹来的？

我没想到会在这里遇到你。

我们来握手吧。

从上次见面已经有一段时间了。

我很想你。

为什么你没有保持联络？

### CHAPTER19-02分开时的打招呼

Goodbye.

See you again.

See you later.

Good night. See you in the morning.

Bye. See you then.

See you on Monday.

Take care.

Have a good weekend.

See you next week.

Have a good day.

I'm going to miss you.

Say hi to your Mom for me.

Let's keep in touch.

拜拜。

下次见。

晚点见。

晚安。明天早上见。

拜。到时见。

周一见。

保重。

周末愉快。

下周见。

祝你有愉快的一天。

我会想念你的。

帮我跟你妈妈问好。

我们保持联络吧。



Call me when you get home.  
Text me when you get home. / Give me a text message when you get home.  
Email me. / Write me.  
I don't want to say goodbye.  
I've enjoyed your company.  
I won't forget you.

你到家后，打电话给我。  
当你到家后，传给简讯给我。  
写Email给我。  
我不想说再见。  
我很开心有你的陪伴。  
我不会忘记你。

## CHAPTER19-03感谢的表达

Thank you.  
Thank you very much.  
I'm so grateful for that.  
Thank you for the compliment.  
Thank you.I'll pay you back.  
It's fine.  
No problem./It was not a big deal.  
You're welcome.  
Thank you for helping me.  
Mom,thank you for everything.  
Thank you for everyting you've done for me.  
I'm the one who should say thanks.  
I don't know how to thank you.  
Here's a little present.  
I want to express my thanks.  
It's a thank-you note.  
It's a great present.  
Say thank you to your brother.  
You should learn to say thanks.

谢谢。  
非常谢谢你。  
我真的很感谢那件事。  
谢谢你的称赞。  
谢谢。我会回报你的。  
没关系。  
这没什么。  
不客气。  
谢谢你帮了我。  
妈，谢谢你的一切。  
谢谢你为我做的一切。  
我才是要说谢谢的人。  
我不知道该怎么谢谢你。  
这里有个小礼物。  
我想表达我的感谢之情。  
这是感谢信。  
这礼物太棒了。  
跟你弟弟说谢谢。  
你应该学习说谢谢。

## CHAPTER19-04道歉

I'm sorry,Mom.  
I'm really sorry.  
It's okay./No problem.  
Don't worry.  
I'm sorry I'm late.  
I'm sorry.It was my fault.  
Never mind.  
Just forget it.  
Mom, forgive me please.  
I'm sorry for the trouble I've caused.  
That's not a problem.  
I didn't mean to do that.  
It was a mistake.  
I'll forgive you.  
I'll pay for it.  
Say sorry to your sister.  
Apologizing isn't something to be shy of.  
Just saying sorry isn't enough.

妈，对不起。  
我真的很抱歉。  
没关系。  
不用担心。  
不好意思，我迟到了。  
对不起，是我的错。  
不用在意。  
就忘记它吧。  
妈，请你原谅我。  
我很抱歉造成这样的麻烦。  
那不是个问题。  
我不是故意的。  
这是个失误。  
我会原谅你的。  
我会赔的。  
跟你妹妹说对不起。  
道歉不是丢脸的行为。  
只是说道歉是不够的。



Adults also make mistakes.

大人也会犯错的。

## CHAPTER20自我介绍/家族介绍

### CHAPTER20-01自我介绍

Let me introduce myself.

My name is Jina.

Nice to meet you.I'm Minsu Lee.

Glad to meet you.I'm Matthew.

What school do you go to?Where do you go to school?

I go to Taipei Elementary School.

What grade are you in?

I'm in first grade./I'm a first grader.

How old are you?

I'm 8 years old.

What's your hobby?

I like playing the piano.

Where were you born?

I was born in Kaohsiung.

Where are you from?/What country are you from?

I'm from China.

I'm a native of Beijing.

What do you like to do?

I like to play with my friends.

I like to draw.

What do you want to be in the future?

I want to be a pianist.

I want to be a pianist when I grow up.

我来自我介绍。

我的名字是吉娜。

很高兴认识你。我是李民肃。

很高兴认识你。我是Matthew.

你在哪所学校上学?

我在台北国小读书。

你几年级了?

我是一年级。

你几岁了?

我八岁了。

你的兴趣是什么?

我喜欢弹钢琴。

你在哪里出生?

我在高雄出生。

你从哪个国家来?

我来自中国。

我是北京当地人。

你喜欢做什么?

我喜欢跟我的朋友们玩。

我喜欢画画。

你将来想当什么?

我想当钢琴家。

长大后我想当钢琴家。

### CHAPTER20-02介绍家人

How many people are there in your family?/How many people do you have in your family?

There are four people in my family.

Four.My mom,dad,sister,and me.

My dad,mom,brother,and I are in my family.

I live with my mom,dad,and sister.

We are a small family.

We are a big family.

We have a lot of people in our family.

Do you have any siblings?

Do you have any brothers or sisters?

Yes,I have two sisters.

I have a brother but not a sister.

No,I'm an only child.

I'm the youngest in the family.

I'm the oldest in the family.

你家里有几个人?

我家有四个人。

四个。妈妈、爸爸、姐姐、还有我。

我家有爸爸、妈妈、哥哥、还有我。

我和妈妈、爸爸、姐姐住一起。

我们是小家庭。

我们是大家庭。

我家有许多人。

你有其他兄弟姐妹吗?

你有任何兄弟姐妹吗?

是的。我有两个姐姐。

我有一个弟弟，但是没有妹妹。

没有，我是独生子。

在我家，我是老么。

我是家中最大的小孩。



## CHAPTER20-03介绍父母/祖父母

What does your father do?  
He works in some company.  
He works for a computer company.  
He works for ASUS.  
He works for government.  
My mom teaches at a school.  
My mom is a homemaker.  
My parents both work.  
My dad is very strict.  
Daddy's too busy to play with me often.  
Daddy plays with us on weekends.  
Daddy helps clean the house.  
My mom's a good cook.  
Mommy's busy because she has to take care of us.  
I look a lot like my mom.  
My mom and dad are in a good relationship.  
I respect my parents.  
My parents got divorced.  
How are your grandparents?  
They're both healthy.  
My grandfather passed away.  
My grandmother died when I was young.  
How old is your grandfather?  
He's 66 years old.  
My grandfather lives with us.  
My grandmother isn't very healthy.  
My grandparents really love me.  
My grandparents are nice to me.  
I love my grandparents the most.  
policeman-police officer  
postman-mail carrier  
spokesman-spokesperson  
chairman-chairperson  
fireman-firefighter  
statesman-politician

你爸爸做什么?  
他在某家公司上班。  
他在电脑公司上班。  
他为华硕电脑工作。  
他为政府工作。  
我妈妈在学校教书。  
我妈妈是家庭主妇。  
我爸妈都有工作。  
我爸很严厉。  
爸爸太忙了，不能常跟我玩。  
爸爸在周末跟我们玩。  
爸爸帮忙打扫房间。  
我妈很会做饭。  
因为妈妈要照顾我们，所以很忙。  
我长得跟妈妈很像。  
我妈和我爸的感情很好。  
我尊敬我的爸妈。  
我爸妈离婚了。  
你的祖父母好吗?  
他们都很健康。  
我爷爷已经过世了。  
我奶奶在我很小的时候就去世了。  
你外公几岁了?  
他有66岁了。  
外公跟我们住在一起。  
我外婆不是很健康。  
我的外公外婆真的很爱我。  
外公外婆对我很好。  
我最爱我的外公外婆了。  
警察官  
邮差  
发言人  
议长  
消防人员  
政治家

## CHAPTER20-04介绍兄弟姐妹

How old is your younger sister?  
She's 5 years old.  
How much older than your brother are you?  
We are 3 years apart.  
My brother is 3 years younger than me.  
My sister is 3 years older than me.  
Are you and your brother nice to each other?/Do you get along well with your brother?

你妹妹几岁?  
她五岁了。  
你比你弟弟大几岁?  
我们差三岁。  
我弟弟比我小三岁。  
我姐姐比我大三岁。  
你跟弟弟处的好吗?





I always get in fights with my brother.  
My brother and I have a lot in common.  
My brother and I are very different.  
We are twins.  
We are identical twins.  
We are different-looking twins.  
I miss my brother when he's not here.  
My brother is a little troublemaker.  
My brother is always monkeying around.  
My sister is in kindergarten./My sister goes to kindergarten.  
My sister is in college./My sister goes to college.  
My brother is very nice to me.

我总是跟弟弟打架。  
我和弟弟有很多共同点。  
我和弟弟很不一样。  
我们是双胞胎。  
我们是同卵双胞胎。  
我们是异卵双胞胎。  
弟弟不在这时，我会很想他。  
我弟弟是个小捣蛋鬼。  
我弟弟总是到处胡闹。  
我妹妹在上幼稚园。  
我妹妹在上大学。  
我哥哥对我很好。

## CHAPTER20-05介绍亲戚

I have a lot of relatives.  
I don't have many relatives.  
I have many aunts and uncles.  
I have one aunt and one uncle.  
My aunt lives in Seoul.  
I go to my relative's house during school break.  
We all get together during holidays.  
I have a lot of cousins.  
I get along well with my cousins./My cousins and I are friends with each other.  
My cousins and I play at my grandparents' house.  
I meet my aunts often.  
My uncle sometimes comes to our house.  
One of my uncles lives in America.

我有很多亲戚。  
我的亲戚不多。  
我有很多阿姨和叔叔。  
我有一位姑姑和一位伯伯。  
我阿姨住在首尔。  
学校放假的时候，我会去亲戚家玩。  
过节的时候，我们会聚在一起。  
我有很多表兄妹。  
我跟我的堂兄妹相处的很好。  
我和堂哥们在我祖父家玩。  
我经常跟婶婶们见面。  
伯伯有时会来我家。  
我有一位叔叔住在美国。

## chapter20-06介绍宠物

I have a dog.  
His name is Happy.  
He shakes his tail when I get back from school.  
He is trained well.  
We've had him for 2 years.  
He is 5 years old.  
Happy doesn't like to take baths.  
Happy always follows me around.  
Happy is a member of our family.  
Happy likes to take a walk with me.  
Happy knows how to do some tricks./Happy can do some tricks.  
Happy can jump and roll.  
He's jumpy when I give him treats.  
Happy likes dog gum best.  
Happy is a female/male.  
My mom doesn't like dogs because they have fur.

我有一只狗。  
它的名字叫Happy。  
当我放学回来时，它会摇尾巴。  
它被训练的很好。  
我们养它养老两年。  
它5岁了。  
Happy不喜欢洗澡。  
Happy总是跟着我跑来跑去。  
Happy是我们家的一员。  
Happy喜欢跟我去散步。  
Happy会做一些特技。  
Happy会跳和滚。  
当我请他吃东西时，它就会跳。  
Happy最喜欢狗狗洁牙骨。  
Happy是母/公的。  
我妈不喜欢狗，因为它们有很多毛。



I feed the fish.  
You need to change the water in the fish tank.  
You need to put water into the birdcage.  
I hate cleaning up poo and pee.  
Lizards are weird pets.  
The porcupine had a baby.  
I got him/her a shot.

我喂鱼。  
你必须换鱼缸的水。  
你必须在鸟笼里放些水。  
我讨厌清大便和小便。  
蜥蜴是很奇特的宠物。  
豪猪生了个小孩。  
我给它打了预防针。

## CHAPTER20-07介绍玩具

What's your favorite toy?  
I like this doll the most.  
It was a present from my daddy.  
I've had it since I was 3.  
Where did you buy it?  
I got it as a birthday gift.  
I got it from Santa Claus.  
I take this doll whenever I go out.  
I go to sleep with it ,too.  
I can't sleep without it.  
It's my favorite toy.  
This is how you play with it.  
Let your friend use it once.  
I don't want to.It's my favorite.  
Its name is Nana .I named it.  
I'm collecting this series.  
It transforms when I build it.  
It's a wireless car.  
You can buy it at the stationery store.  
It won't move because it's broken.

你最喜欢的玩具是什么？  
我最喜欢这个娃娃。  
这是爸比送我的礼物。  
这是我三岁时就有的。  
你在哪里买的？  
这是我收到的生日礼物。  
这是圣诞老公公给我的礼物。  
我出门时，一定带着这个娃娃。  
我也会跟娃娃一起睡觉。  
没有它的话，我会睡不着。  
这是我最喜欢的玩具。  
要像这样玩。  
让你的朋友也玩一次。  
我不要。这是我最喜欢的。  
它的名字叫Nana. 我帮它取的名字。  
我在收集这一个系列。  
我组装的话，它就会变身。  
这是无线遥控车。  
你可以在文具店买到。  
因为它坏了，现在动不了。

## CHAPTER20-08介绍住的地方

Where do you live?  
I live in Rainbow Apartments.  
Where is Rainbow Apartments?  
It's next to Gamel Elementary School.  
My house is on the 7th floor.  
How far is it from here?  
It takes about 30 minutes by bus.  
How long have you lived there?  
I've lived there for about 4 years.  
I've lived there since kindergarden.  
What is your address?  
What's your phone number?  
What's your home phone number?  
Do you know Mom's cell phone number?  
It's 2022-1114.The city code is 02.  
It's 02-2022-1114.  
Don't forget your phone number.

你住哪里？  
我住在彩虹公寓。  
彩虹公寓在哪里？  
它在贾梅尔小学附近。  
我家在七楼。  
离这里有多远？  
搭公车的话，需要30分钟。  
你在那里住多久了？  
我在那里住四年了。  
我从幼儿园开始就住那里。  
你家地址是什么？  
你的电话几号？  
你家电话几号？  
你知道妈妈的手机号码吗？  
2022-1114. 区号是02  
02-2022-1114.  
不要忘记你家的电话。



## CHAPTER21天气

### CHAPTER21-01风和日丽

What is the weather like today? / How's the weather today?

It's a bright, sunny day.

It's beautiful.

It's going to be fine.

It's getting warmer and warmer.

Put sunscreen on because the sun is hot.

Your face will get sunburned if you don't put it on.

Cover yourself from the sun with a sun cap.

Try to walk on the shady side,

Walk with me under my parasol.

今天的天气如何?

今天是个大晴天。

天气很好。

天气会变晴。

天气会越来越暖和。

太阳很大，要擦防晒霜。

如果你不擦的话，你的脸会被晒伤。

戴上遮阳帽来遮太阳。

尽可能走有阴影的地方。

跟我一起撑阳伞走吧。

### CHAPTER21-02 阴天

It's cloudy.

A lot of clouds are in the sky today.

It's a very cloudy day.

It's really foggy.

There are a lot of dark clouds.

It's dark and cloudy.

The sky is covered with clouds.

It's going to rain soon.

It's likely to rain soon.

It's so foggy that I can barely see anything.

The weather's creepy.

It's partly cloudy and partly sunny.

It's too dark even during the day.

It's been sunny, but it is turning cloudy now.

Cloudy days seem to last longer.

No more cloudy days! / I wish we had no more cloudy days.

天好阴。

今天的天空有好多云。

是个阴天。

雾真的很多。

有好多乌云。

天气阴沉沉的。

天空被云覆盖了。

快要下雨了。

好像快要下雨了。

雾太浓了，我几乎看不见任何东西。

天气阴森森的。

部分阴天，部分晴天。

即使是白天，还是太暗了。

之前是晴天，但现在转阴了。

阴天似乎会持续更久。

不要再阴天了!

### CHAPTER21-03 下雨天

It's raining.

It's starting to rain.

It's drizzling.

There is a heavy rain shower outside.

It's pouring rain.

The rain has stopped.

It's been raining since yesterday.

It's been raining off and on all day.

It's been raining the whole day today.

It's not going to rain that much.

There are thunder and lightning.

It's raining cats and dogs.

下雨了。

开始下雨了。

下毛毛雨了。

外面正下着大雨。

雨倾盆而下。

雨停了。

从昨天开始就一直下雨。

一整天雨都在下下停停。

今天已经下了整天的雨。

雨应该不会下那么大。

又打雷又闪电的。

下倾盆大雨了。



I'm afraid it is going to flood.  
It's too humid because of the rain.  
It's the rainy season.  
August is a rainy time of the year.  
Let's close the windows.  
How about wearing a rain jacket?  
I don't like rainy days. I can't play outside.  
It's kind of muggy today.  
We need to turn on the dehumidifier.  
The weather has cleared up.

我担心会淹水。  
因为下雨，空气很潮湿。  
现在是雨季。  
八月是一年的雨季。  
我们把窗户关上吧。  
穿上雨衣怎么样？  
我不喜欢下雨天，我都不能去外面玩。  
今天蛮闷热的。  
我们需要开除湿机。  
天气放晴了。

## CHAPTER21-04 下雪天

It's snowing outside.  
Wow, the first snow of the year.  
It's snowing a lot.  
It snowed 10cm.  
There's a lot of snow on the ground.  
It snowed all week.  
The world is covered in snow.  
The world is all white.  
It's sleeting.  
I wonder if a snowstorm is coming.  
The road is frozen.  
We can't even move because of all the snow.  
Let's have a snow fight, Dad.  
I want to go sledding.  
I want to make a snowman.  
Let's go ice-skating.  
I don't want the snow to melt.  
Be careful not to slip.  
Let's get the snow off the car.

外面下雪了。  
哇，这是今年的初雪！  
下好多雪。  
雪下了10公分。  
地上积了很多雪。  
下了整周的雪。  
世界被雪覆盖住了。  
世界都变成白色的了。  
雨雪夹杂地下。  
我想暴风雪要来了。  
路上都结冰了。  
因为这些雪，我们动弹不得。  
爸爸，我们来打雪仗吧。  
我想要滑雪橇。  
我要堆雪人。  
我们去溜冰吧。  
我希望雪不会融化。  
小心不要滑倒。  
我们把积在车上的雪清掉吧。

## CHAPTER21-05 冷天

It's so cold today.  
The weather's gotten cold.  
It's pretty cold./It's freezing.  
The temperature fell a lot today.  
It's awful weather.  
There's a storm coming.  
I thought I was going to freeze to death.  
I'm freezing to death.  
It really feels like winter today.  
I was chilled to the bone outside.  
It's really windy.  
It's hard to walk through the wind.  
My hat's going to fly off.  
My hands are freezing.  
It's chilly today. Wear a lot of clothes.

今天好冷。  
天气变冷了。  
相当冷。  
今天气温降了很多。  
好可怕的天气。  
暴风雨要来了。  
我还以为我要冻死了。  
我要冻死了。  
今天真的很像冬天。  
我在外面时，都冷到骨头内了。  
风好大。  
风大到连走路都很难。  
我的帽子要飞掉了。  
我的手被冻着了。  
今天冷飕飕的，穿多一点衣服。





Put a scarf on.

Wear gloves.

Your face is really cold.

戴上围巾。

戴上手套。

你的脸真的很冷。

## CHAPTER21-06 热天

It's hot today.

It's really hot.

It's extremely hot.

It's hot and humid.

It really feels like summer today.

There isn't any wind blowing today.

It's been hot for the past few days.

I'm sweating like crazy.

My back keeps sweating.

My rash is itchy.

Can you turn on the air conditioner/fan?

You're sweating. You'd better shower.

It will be better if you shower.

Sit in the shade for a little while.

I wish it would rain.

今天好热。

真的很热。

热极了。

又热又闷。

今天真的很像夏天。

今天一点风都没有。

过去几天都很热。

我的汗像发疯似的一直流。

我的背一直流汗。

我的疹子很痒。

你可以开一下冷气/电风扇吗？

你在流汗，你最好冲个澡。

如果你去冲个澡，会比较好。

在阴影下坐一下。

我希望能下雨就好了。

## CHAPTER21-07 沙尘暴

The yellow dust season has come.

There's a yellow dust warning.

The worst yellow dust storm hit the country.

Look at the yellow dust.

It's very dusty outside.

We get sandy yellow dust in the spring.

What is the yellow dust?

It's dust winds blowing.

Dust and sand from China fly over here.

The car is yellow now.

Did you get your mask?

Wear your mask today.

Don't rub your eyes.

We need to close the windows because of the yellow dust.

Just stay inside today.

Don't go outside since the yellow dust is blowing hard.

沙尘暴的季节要来了。

已经发出沙尘暴的警报了。

最强的沙尘暴袭击全国。

看看这些黄沙。

外面都是灰尘。

我们在春天有沙尘暴。

什么是沙尘暴。

沙尘随风吹来。

灰尘和沙子从中国飞来这里。

现在车子变成黄色的了。

你带了口罩吗？

今天要戴上口罩。

不可以揉眼睛。

因为沙尘暴，我们必须把窗户关起来。

今天就待在室内吧。

因为沙尘暴很严重，不要去外面。

## CHAPTER22 健康的生活

### CHAPTER22-01 表示健康

I'm very healthy. / I'm very healthy and strong. /

I'm doing great.

I'm not sick at all.

I have no health problems.

我很健康。

我一点病也没有。

我没有健康的问题。



I'm not tired at all.  
I feel strong. / I feel energetic inside.  
Mom, I can't stop eating.  
I hope you are always healthy.

我一点都不累。  
我绝非我很强壮。  
妈，我吃了还想再吃。  
我希望你一直很健康。

## CHAPTER22-02 表示疼痛

I am sick, Mom.  
I don't feel well. / I'm not feeling well.  
I want to lie down all day.  
I don't want to eat.  
I've lost my appetite.  
Are you sick?  
Where do you feel bad?  
I can't stand the pain.  
I feel dizzy.  
I feel like throwing up.  
It hurts whenever I move.  
It feels like something's poking me.  
It feels sore here.  
It is kind of a squeezing pain.  
If you touch there, it hurts.  
I feel my muscles cramping up.  
Does it hurt a lot?  
When did it start hurting? / When did your pain start?  
Want Mommy to take a look?

妈，我生病了。  
我觉得不舒服。  
我一整天都想躺着。  
我不想吃。  
我没有胃口。  
你生病了吗？  
你哪里不舒服？  
我痛到受不了了。  
我觉得头晕。  
我觉得要吐了。  
我一动就会痛。  
我觉得有什么东西在戳我。  
这里觉得痛。  
感觉像被挤压的痛。  
如果你碰那里，会很痛。  
我觉得我的肌肉抽筋了。  
这很痛吗？  
这从什么时候开始痛的？  
你要妈咪看一下吗？

## CHAPTER22-03 累的时候

I'm tired.  
I feel weak.  
I keep getting tired.  
I don't want to do anything.  
I can't even wash myself.  
I can't even move a finger.  
My eyes are getting drowsy.  
There are dark circles under your eyes. / You have dark circles under your eyes.  
Why do you look so down?  
You look exhausted.  
Want to take a nap?

我累了。  
我觉得虚弱。  
我越来越累了。  
我不想做任何事。  
我甚至没办法洗澡。  
我连手指头都动不了。  
我的眼皮都要盖下来了。  
你有黑眼圈。  
你为什么看起来那么没精神？  
你看起来精疲力尽了。  
想要小睡一下吗？

## CHAPTER22-04 摔倒/撞到的时候

Mom, I fell down.  
I slipped on the floor.  
I fell down while running.  
I tripped over a rock.  
I lost my balance and fell.  
Are you okay? Did you get hurt?  
You got a hole in your pants.

妈，我摔倒了。  
我在地板上滑倒了。  
我在跑的时候摔倒了。  
我被石头绊倒了。  
我失去重心后摔倒了。  
你还好吗？有受伤吗？  
你的裤子破了个洞。



Your knee is bleeding.  
You bruised your knees.  
Your palm got bruised.  
Get up quickly.  
Get it off. / Shake the dust off.  
The streets are very bumpy.  
Let's watch the ground carefully.  
Wow! You're not crying like a baby.  
It's okay. Don't cry.  
Bonk!  
Did you bump your head?  
Looks like you're going to get a black eye.  
You should have looked ahead carefully.  
Let's hold hands and walk again.

你的膝盖流血了。  
你膝盖淤青了。  
你的手掌淤青了。  
快点站起来。  
把灰尘拍掉。  
道路坑坑巴巴的。  
我们要小心注意地面。  
哇！你并没有像小孩一样的哭。  
没事了，不要哭。  
撞到头了！  
你撞到头了吗？  
你的眼睛好像淤青了。  
你应该小心看前面的。  
我们手牵手再继续走吧。

## CHAPTER22-05割到/流血的时候

I'm bleeding.  
I got a cut.  
I cut myself with a knife.  
I got a paper cut.  
I got poked by a needle.  
I got cut by a piece of glass.  
I'm scared because I'm bleeding.  
It's fine. It's going to stop soon.  
We need to clean the wound.  
How did you get cut?  
I told you to watch out for sharp things.  
Ouch! The sterilizer hurt.  
Let me put the ointment on.  
Let's cover the wound with a band-aid.  
Keep the bandage on the wound for a while.  
This helps prevent germs from getting inside.  
A scab will form to protect the wound.  
Don't pick your scabs.

我流血了。  
我被割到了。  
我被刀子割到我自己了。  
我被纸张割到了。  
我被针扎到了。  
我被一片玻璃割伤了。  
因为流血了，我很害怕。  
没关系，很快就会止血的。  
我们必须清洁伤口。  
你怎么被割到的？  
我告诉过你要小心尖锐的东西。  
哎哟！消毒药好痛。  
我来帮你涂药膏。  
我们把OK绷贴在伤口上。  
请绷带包住伤口一段时间。  
他可以帮助防止病菌跑到里面去。  
为了保护伤口，这里将会长出结痂。  
不要抠掉你的结痂。

## CHAPTER22-06流鼻血的时候

My nose is bleeding, Mom.  
Tilt your head down.  
Let's put a tissue on your nose first.  
Let's put a cotton ball up your bloody nose.  
Don't swallow the blood.  
Breathe with your mouth.  
I have blood on my shirt.  
It's okay. Don't worry about anything.

妈，我流鼻血了。  
把头往前倾。  
我们先用地纸盖住你的鼻子。  
我们用棉花球堵住你流血的鼻子。  
不要把血吞下。  
用你的嘴巴呼吸。  
我的衬衫也沾到血了。  
没关系，不用担心其他事情。

## CHAPTER22-07感冒的时候

Mom, I caught a cold.  
I feel cold and shaky, Mom. / Mom, I feel cold and am shivering.

妈，我感冒了。  
妈，我觉得冷到发抖。



I have a sore throat.  
I have a runny nose.  
I have a stuffy nose.  
My throat hurts when I swallow.  
I don't want to eat because my throat hurts.  
I have a bad cough./I am coughing a lot.  
I have some phlegm in my throat.  
You're coughing too hard.  
Your snot is yellow.  
I think you have a cold./You seem to have caught a cold.  
You seem to have caught the flu.  
It is such a severe cold.  
You might have caught a cold from Yongsuo.  
You need to see a doctor./Let's go to see a doctor.  
Don't take a shower today.  
Don't go out in the cold air.  
The doctor told you not to eat cold things, right?  
Let's put a towel around your neck.  
Don't talk too much since your throat hurts.  
Blow your nose hard.  
You need to spit out the phlegm and not swallow it.  
Cover your mouth with your hand when you  
Try not to cough on people.

我的喉咙很痛。  
我流鼻涕了。  
我鼻塞了。  
我吞东西时，我的喉咙很痛。  
我喉咙很痛，我不想吃东西。  
我一直咳嗽。  
我的喉咙内有痰。  
你咳的很严重。  
你的鼻涕是黄色的。  
我想你感冒了。  
你好像得了流行性感冒。  
这是很严重的感冒。  
我想你是从雍索那传染过来的。  
你需要去看医生。  
今天不要洗澡了。  
不要到外面吹冷风。  
医生叫你不要吃冷的食物，对吧？  
我们把毛巾围在你的脖子上吧。  
喉咙痛的话，不要说太多话。  
用力擤鼻涕。  
你必须把痰吐出来，不要吞下去。  
当你要咳嗽时，用你的手挡住嘴巴。  
试着不要对着人咳。

## CHAPTER22-08发烧的时候

Mom, I feel very hot.  
I have a fever, so my body feels really hot.  
I feel dizzy.  
Let me see if you have a fever.  
Let's check your temperature.  
Let me feel your forehead.  
You have a fever.  
You have a high fever.  
Your forehead's really hot.  
Let's take a fever reducer.  
You need to drink a lot of water.  
You need to take off your clothes.  
I'll cool you down with a wet towel.  
Hold this ice pack.  
I guess your body's fighting the germs right now.

妈，我觉得很热。  
我发烧了，所以我的身体真的很烫。  
我感觉头很晕。  
让我看看你是否发烧了。  
我们来量一下体温。  
我来摸一下你的额头。  
你发烧了。  
你发高烧了。  
你的额头真的很烫。  
来吃点退烧药吧。  
你需要多喝水。  
你需要把衣服脱掉。  
我用湿毛巾来帮你降温。  
抱住这个冰袋。  
我想你的身体正在跟细菌战斗。

## CHAPTER22-09头/肚子痛的时候

I have a headache, Mom.  
I have a terrible headache.  
Let me see. Can I touch your forehead?

妈，我头很疼。  
我很严重的头痛。  
我看看，我可以摸一下你的额头吗？





Do you feel a lot of pain?/Are you sick very  
I'll give you some medicine. Let's see.  
I have a stomachache, Mom.  
I think I'm going to throw up.  
I have diarrhea.  
My poop's coming out like water.  
It looks like you got stomach upset.  
I'll give you some digestive syrup.  
What did you eat before?  
Looks like you ate too many cold things.  
Do you need to poop?  
You should lie down and rest.  
Let me rub your tummy. You'll be fine soon.

Want to put a hot pack on your tummy?

## CHAPTER22-10牙齿晃动/疼痛的时候

I've got a loose tooth, Mom.  
My inner tooth hurts.  
I can't chew it because my tooth hurts.  
Open your mouth. Say "Ah~."  
Which tooth hurts?  
It looks like your tooth's going to fall off.  
You need to see the dentist.  
Let's go to see dentist tomorrow to take the tooth out.  
Mommy will pull it out with a thread.  
Place your tooth underneath your pillow.  
The tooth fairy will come while you sleep and take your tooth.  
She will leave you a present/money in return.  
What present will the tooth fairy give me?  
I don't know for sure. Go to sleep early so that the tooth fairy can come.  
It looks like you have got a cavity.  
It looks like you ate too much sweet stuff.  
Chew with your teeth that don't hurt.  
I'm scared to go to the dentist.  
It's okay. The doctor will treat you gently.  
Mom, the wiggly tooth fell out.  
That's strange. It didn't hurt at all.  
My tooth fell out for the first time.  
I didn't know my tooth fell out.  
Jina still has not lost any teeth.  
It's hard to chew because some of my teeth are missing.  
Wait for a while. Your new teeth will grow soon.

你很痛吗?  
我拿药给你。试试看。  
妈，我肚子痛。  
我想我要吐了。  
我拉肚子了。  
我的便便像水一样流出来。  
看起来你闹肚子了。  
我给你些助消化的糖浆。  
你之前吃了什么?  
你好像吃太多冰的东西了。  
你需要去大便吗?  
你应该躺下休息。  
我来按摩你的肚子。你很快就会好起来。  
你要放个热水袋在你的肚子上吗?

妈，我有一颗牙齿在摇了。  
我的臼齿很痛。  
我的牙齿痛到不能咀嚼了。  
张开你的嘴巴，说“啊~”。  
哪一颗牙齿痛?  
看起来你的牙齿要掉了。  
你需要去看牙医。  
我们明天去看牙医，把这颗牙拔掉。  
妈妈用线来把它拔掉。  
把牙齿放在枕头下吧。  
你睡觉的时候，牙仙会来把它拿走。  
她会放礼物/钱来作为回报。  
牙仙会给我什么礼物呢?  
我不确定，快点去睡吧。这样牙仙才能来。  
看起来你有蛀洞了。  
看起来你吃太多甜的东西了。  
用你不痛的牙齿咀嚼。  
我害怕去牙科。  
不用担心。医生会很温柔地帮你治疗。  
妈，晃动的牙齿掉了。  
奇怪，一点也不痛。  
我第一次掉牙齿。  
我都不知道我牙齿掉了。  
吉娜还没有掉过牙齿。  
因为一些牙齿掉了，咀嚼起来很困难。  
再等等吧。你的新牙很快就会长出来。



Open your mouth. Let's see how many teeth have fallen out. 张开你的嘴巴，我们看看你掉了几颗牙齿。

## CHAPTER22-11得传染病的时候

I think I broke something in my body.  
I broke out all over my body.  
It seems like you have chicken pox.  
You shouldn't go to school today.  
Stay home today.  
Your friends could also catch it from you.  
Don't use the cup together with your brother.  
Let's use different towels and spoons.  
You don't want the entire family to get sick, do you?  
I hope you get well soon.  
Can't I play with my brother?  
Wait a little and play when you get better.  
When can I get better?  
Maybe in a week or so.  
Why did you send my sister to grandma's?  
I was afraid that your sister might catch it, too.

我想我把自己的身体搞坏了。  
我全身突然长出什么了。  
你好像得了水痘。  
你今天不可以去学校。  
今天待在家里。  
你的朋友们也有可能被你传染。  
不要跟你弟弟一起用这个杯子。  
我们分开用不同的毛巾和汤匙吧。  
你不希望全家人都被传染，对吧？

我希望你快点好起来。  
我不可以跟弟弟玩吗？  
等一阵子，等你好一点再来玩。  
我什么时候会好？  
也许一个礼拜多一点。  
你为什么把妹妹送去奶奶家？  
我担心你妹妹也传染到。

## CHAPTER22-12被虫咬/发痒的时候

I think I got a bug bite here, Mom.  
It's swollen and red.  
It's ticklish./It's itchy.  
I can't sleep because it itches.  
I wonder what bit you.  
Don't scratch it.  
It can get worse if you scratch it.  
Don't scratch it even if it's ticklish.  
If you scratch it, germs will get in. It'll get more itchy.  
I can't hold it./ I can't stand it.  
This itch relief will help.  
I'll put on some bug bite remedy for you.  
Put this ice pack on it.  
It will get better if you don't scratch it.  
Look. It's bleeding after you scratched it.

妈，我想我这里被虫咬到了。  
又肿又红。  
很痒。  
我痒到睡不着了。  
我想知道你被什么咬了。  
不要去抓它。  
如果你抓它的话，会更严重的。  
即使很痒，也不可以抓。  
如果你抓的话，细菌就会进去，那会让你更痒。  
我忍不住了。  
这个止痒药可以帮你的忙。  
我帮你擦些治疗蚊虫咬的药。  
把这个冰袋敷上去。  
如果你不抓的话，他就会好起来。  
看，你抓了之后，就流血了。

## CHAPTER22-13去医院

Let's go to the hospital./Let's go to see a doctor.  
Do I have to get a shot?  
No, you'll just check with the doctor.  
It is just a regular checkup.  
Say hello to the doctor.  
Take a deep breath.  
He's going to look at your ears and nose.  
Let's measure your height and weight.

我们去医院。  
我一定要打针吗？  
不，你只是要让医生检查一下。  
这只是定期的体检。  
跟医生打招呼。  
深呼吸。  
他要看你的耳朵和鼻子。  
我们来量身高和体重吧。



You are 135cm tall and weigh 25kg.  
You need to get a flu shot.  
It will sting a little. Don't be scared.  
Wow, you're doing well by not crying.  
Let's get the prescription and go.  
It's all over now. / Everything's done now.  
Let's go to the pharmacy.

你有135公分，25公斤。  
你需要打流感预防针。  
会有一点刺痛，不用害怕。  
哇，你没哭，表现的很好。  
我们拿处方笺就可以走了。  
现在都结束了。  
我们去领药处吧。

## CHAPTER22-14吃药

Let's take some medicine.  
I don't want to take any medicine.  
Then you won't get better.  
Can you take it?  
Take it 30 minutes after meal.  
You need to take it twice a day.  
These are antibiotics, so you need to take them.  
This is for your cough, and this is for your runny nose.  
You'll get better after taking this medicine.  
Good job taking your medicine.  
Drink all of it.  
You need to take it again if you spit it out.  
Here's some water and candy.  
Put the candy in your mouth right after taking this.  
I want to take the medicine again.  
No way! You should take your medicine like you are told.  
It's very bitter.  
I feel sleepy since I took the medicine.

来吃药了。  
我不想吃药。  
那么，你会好起来。  
你能吃吗？  
饭后30分钟后，吃掉它。  
你一天必须吃两次。  
这些是抗生素，你一定要吃。  
这是治咳嗽的，这是治鼻涕的。  
你吃了这些药后就会好起来。  
真厉害，你把药吃了。  
把它都喝掉。  
如果你吐掉的话，你必须再吃一次。  
这里有水和糖果。  
吃完这个之后，把糖果放进嘴巴里。  
我还想再吃药。  
不行！你必须根据指示来吃药。  
好苦。  
吃了药之后，我觉得很困。

## CHAPTER22-15吃对身体好的食物

You'll get taller if you drink milk.  
This dry fish will help your bones get stronger.  
Seaweed makes your blood cleaner.  
Your skin will get smoother if you eat vegetables.  
Let's eat spinach and be strong like Popeye.  
Mom cooked with love for you.  
Multigrain rice is better than plain rice.  
Beans make you stronger and give you muscles.  
Eat happily so you'll digest your food better.  
It's good for you even though it tastes bad.  
Seasonal food is always fresh.  
It's safe to cook it fully.  
It's important to eat everything.  
Don't be so picky about food.

如果你喝牛奶，你会长更高。  
鱼干可以让你骨头更健壮。  
海带可以让你的血更纯净。  
如果你吃蔬菜的话，你的皮肤就会变得更光滑。  
我们来吃菠菜，变得跟大力水手卜派一样强吧。  
妈妈为你做了爱心料理。  
杂粮米比一般的白米还好。  
豆类可以让你更强壮，而且让你长肌肉。  
高兴地吃的话，你会消化的更好。  
即使它不好吃，但是对健康很好。  
当季的食物总是最新鲜的。  
把它煮熟就会很安全。  
均衡饮食是很重要的。  
不要那么挑食。



Mom's eyesight is bad because I didn't eat carrots.

I love to eat vegetables.

妈妈因为不吃胡萝卜，所以视力才会不好。

我喜欢吃蔬菜。

## CHAPTER22-16注意有害的食物

Candy will make your teeth bad.

Too much ice cream will give you a stomachache.

You shouldn't eat much too salty food.

Don't eat food that smells weird.

Instant food is bad for your health.

This drink is full of coloring.

Street food isn't clean.

I'm afraid that street food is not safe.

You won't grow if you don't eat everything.

Your blood won't work well if you eat just meat but no vegetables.

You'll get fat if you eat too much fatty food.

If you eat too much spicy food, your stomach will hurt.

If you don't clean the fruit, you are basically eating all the pesticides.

The food has expired. Let's throw it away.

Nope! Don't eat it after you drop it on the ground.

Don't drink too much coffee, Mom.

Don't drink too much beer, Dad.

糖果会让你的牙齿变坏。

吃太多冰激淋的话，你的肚子会痛的。

你不应该吃太多太咸的食物。

不要吃闻起来很怪的食物。

速食对你的健康不好。

这些饮料满满的都是色素。

路边的食物不干净。

我担心路边的食物不安全。

如果你没有什么都吃的话，你就不会长大。

如果你只吃肉，不吃蔬菜的话，你的血液就不能好好工作。

如果你吃太多油腻的食物，你会变胖的。

如果你吃太多辣的食物，你的胃会坏掉。

如果你不把水果洗干净，你就会连农药都吃下去。

这食物已经过期了，我们把它丢掉吧。

不可以！不要吃掉到地上的东西。

妈，不要喝太多的咖啡。

爸，不要喝太多的啤酒。

## CHAPTER23生理现象

### CHAPTER23-01尿尿

I want to pee, Mom.

OK, I'll be right out!

Do you want to pee?

Do you want to go to the bathroom?

I don't need to go.

I need to pee.

Right now?

I can't hold it. I need to pee really bad.

Hold it! Hold it!

Pee after holding the toilet seat up.

Use toilet paper after you pee.

Hold your skirt up and pee

Make sure the pee doesn't get on the seat.

Try to pee in the center of the toilet.

Did you flush?

If you hold your pee for too long, It's not good for you.

妈~我想尿尿

好，我马上出来。

你要尿尿吗？

我不用。

我要尿尿。

现在？

我忍不住了。我要尿出来了。

忍一下！忍住！

把马桶盖掀起来后，再尿。

尿完之后，用卫生纸擦干净。

把裙子拉起来尿。

确定尿尿不要溅到马桶盖上。

尽可能尿到马桶中间。

你冲水了吗？

如果你憋尿太久的话，对身体不好。





I peed a little.  
Oops! I peed on my clothes.  
Sorry, I wet the bed, Mom.  
See? I told you to go to the bathroom.  
Go to the bathroom before you leave.  
Go to the bathroom before you go to sleep.

我尿了一点。  
喔！我尿在衣服上了。  
妈，对不起。我尿床了。  
看吧！我告诉你要去厕所的。  
你出门前，先去厕所。  
你睡之前，要先去厕所。

## CHAPTER23-02大便

I have to poop, Mom.  
My tummy aches. I have to poop.  
Close the door. It smells.  
Call Mommy when you are done.  
My poop looks like a sweet potato.  
My baby's poop is like goat poop.  
Did you clean your bottom well?  
Flush when you're done.  
Wash your hands.  
Will you wipe it, Mom?  
I pooped a lot, Mom.  
Eeek! It stinks!  
Let's stop talking about pooping.  
What happens if I don't poop?  
Is it unhealthy if you don't poop every day?  
Then the poop sits here below your belly button.  
I pooped this morning. Why is it coming out  
It looks like the food got digested well.

妈，我要大便。  
我肚子痛。我要去大便。  
关上门，便便很臭。  
你都上完之，后告诉妈咪。  
我的便便看起来像番薯。  
我孩子的大便好像山羊大便。  
你好好地擦了屁股吗  
你都上完之后，要冲水。  
要洗手。  
妈，你能帮我擦吗？  
妈，我大了好多。  
啊！好臭！  
我们不要再谈大便了。  
如果我不大便的话，会怎样？  
如果没有每天大便的话，会不健康吗？  
那么，大便就会留在肚脐下面。  
我今天早上大便了。为什么又出来了。  
看起来好像食物被消化的很好。

## CHAPTER23-03便秘

I can't poop, Mom.  
Try to push.  
My stomach hurts, but I can't poop.  
You should drink a lot of water.  
The reason is that you haven't eaten any vegetables.  
I think you're constipated.  
Come out of the bathroom and try it later.  
Try again later.  
Want me to rub your tummy?  
I'll give you some medicine if it's really bad.  
I'll poop later.  
Don't take your book into the bathroom.  
That's not a good bathroom habit.

妈，我大不出来。  
用力点。  
我肚子很痛，但是我大不出来。  
你应该喝很多水。  
因为你不吃蔬菜才会这样。  
我想你便秘了。  
先从厕所出来，等一下再试试。  
等一下再试。  
要我帮你搓一下肚子吗？  
如果很严重的话，我会给你一些药。  
我等一下上。  
不要把书带进厕所。  
那不是个好的厕所习惯。

## CHAPTER23-04放屁

Gosh, what's this smell?  
You farted, dude!  
I just farted, and it stinks really bad.  
I can't even breathe.  
Dad's fart smells like poo.

喔！这是什么味道？  
你放屁了，这家伙！  
我刚刚放屁了，真的好臭。  
我都不能呼吸了。  
爸比的屁闻起来好像大便。



You're such a farty pants, Dad.  
Who farted ?/Who cut the cheese?  
It wasn't me. Was it you?  
It wasn't me. Why do you keep looking at me?  
Wow, you've got a loud sound.  
I can't stop farting, Mom.  
It's terrible. How come you farted in my face?  
You're going to make a hole in the ground.  
Stop making fun of me. The smell's gone now.  
We need to open the window.  
I need to get rid of the smell.  
Quiet farts smell worse than loud ones.  
Ta-da! Dad's going to fart! Hold your nose!

爸，你是放屁精。  
谁放屁了？  
不是我，是你吗？  
不是我。为什么一直看我？  
哇，你放的好大声。  
妈，我无法停止放屁。  
这太糟了。你怎么可以在我脸上放屁？  
你要在地板上弄个洞了。  
不要再取笑我了。已经没有臭味了。  
我们需要打开窗户。  
我需要让臭味消失。  
臭屁不响。  
哒哒！爸比要放屁了！捂住鼻子！

### CHAPTER23-05鼻屎

Look at my booger, Minji.  
Oh my! It's gross!  
Get it off!  
You booger digger!  
Stop picking your nose.  
Don't eat your boogers.  
What should I do with this booger?  
Clean it off with a tissue.  
Why are you giving that to Mommy?  
The booger would not come out, Mom.  
Don't pick your nose in front of people.  
If you pick too much ,your nose can bleed.  
Who put this booger here?

敏基，看我的鼻屎。  
天呀！好恶！  
清掉它！  
你是挖鼻屎大王！  
不要再挖鼻子了。  
不要吃鼻屎。  
我应该如何处理这个鼻屎？  
用面巾纸擦掉。  
你为什么把那个给妈妈？  
妈，鼻屎挖不出来。  
不要在他人面前挖鼻孔。  
如果你一直挖，你会流鼻血。  
是谁把鼻屎沾在这里的？

### CHAPTER23-06打嗝

I have the hiccups, Mom!  
How can I stop hiccups?  
Swallow your spit.  
Hold your breath and count to three.  
Will you drink some warm water?  
Scare me. It might cure the hiccups.  
Peek-a-boo! Are you okay now?  
Yeah, I seem fine now.  
No, I still have them.

妈，我打嗝了！  
我要怎样才能停止打嗝？  
把口水吞下去。  
屏住呼吸，并数到三。  
你要喝点温水吗？  
让我吓了一跳。或许可以把打嗝治好。  
呀！你现在好一点了吗？  
嗯，我现在好一点了。  
不，我还是持续打嗝。

### CHAPTER23-07打喷嚏

I'm sneezing, Mom.  
My nose is ticklish.  
It's probably because of the pollen.  
Cover your mouth with your hand.  
Bless you !  
Thank you!  
Don't sneeze on other people.  
Watch out! There 's spit going everywhere.

妈，我打喷嚏了。  
我的鼻子很痒。  
这也许是因为花粉的关系。  
用手捂住你的嘴。  
愿上帝保佑你不会感冒  
谢谢！  
不可以对着人打喷嚏。  
小心！口水喷得到处都是。



Achoo! Excuse me.

哈啾！抱歉！

## CHAPTER23-08呵欠

I'm yawning, Mom.

妈，我在打呵欠。

Are you tired? Want me to open the windows?

你累了吗？要我打开窗户吗？

Your yawn made others yawn, too.

你的呵欠让其他人也跟着打起来了。

I feel like yawning after you yawned.

你打呵欠后，我也好像要打呵欠了。

Yawning is contagious.

打呵欠是会传染的。

Please try not to yawn during class.

请试着不要在课堂上打呵欠。

## CHAPTER23-09打饱嗝

Minsu burped, Mom. Hehe

妈，民肃打饱嗝了。 嘿嘿。

That's impolite.

那很没礼貌。

It's not polite to burp at the table.

在餐桌上打饱嗝是没礼貌的。

Don't burp like that. It's embarrassing.

不要像那样打饱嗝。很丢脸的。

Burping is fun.

打饱嗝很有趣。

## CHAPTER23-10剪手指甲、脚趾甲

Oh my! Why are your fingernails this long?

天呀！你的手指甲怎么这么长呢？

They're too long. You should trim your nails.

太长了。你应该修剪一下指甲。

Will you cut them?

你能帮我剪吗？

Get the nail clippers.

把指甲剪拿来。

Don't move. You can get hurt.

不要动。你会受伤的。

You can scratch someone with this.

你会用这个抓伤别人的。

There's dirt under your fingernails.

在指甲下面有脏脏的东西。

Don't bite your fingernails.

不要咬指甲。

It's hard to grab a pencil if your fingernails are long.

如果你的指甲很长，  
握住铅笔的。 会很难

Ask me to cut your fingernails if they are long.

如果你的指甲很长，  
你剪。 要叫我帮

Now give me the other hand.

现在把另一只手给我。

Let's cut your toenails, too.

我们也来剪你的脚趾甲吧？

You can get a hole in your socks if your toenails are long.

如果你的脚指甲很长，  
袜子会被戳个洞。 你的袜

Can I cut them by myself?

我可以自己剪吗？

It hurts because you cut them too short.

因为你剪的太短了，我很痛。

# CHAPTER 24电话用语

## CHAPTER24-01接电话

Daddy's calling you, Mom!

妈，爹地打电话给你。

Will you answer it for me?

你可以帮我接吗？

Hello! This is Jina's residence.

喂！这是吉姆的家。

Who's calling, please?

请问哪里找？

Who are you calling, please?

您要找哪位？

Sorry. You've got the wrong number.

不好意思。你打错电话了。

It's for you, Mom.

妈，这是要找你的。

Ask who's calling.

问问看是谁打来的。

Hold on, please.

请等一下。



Okay. I'll get her.  
Mom said she'll call you back .  
Will you leave your number?  
The bell's ringing.  
Will you pick up the phone for me? / Will you answer the phone for me?  
Will you get the phone to me?  
Hang up the phone./Put down the phone.  
I'll pick it up./Let me answer it./I'll get it.  
Who is calling?  
I don't know this number.  
Put me on the phone if it's a stranger.  
Goodbye.It was nice hearing from you.  
Sorry. I have to put the phone down.  
Can't you see I'm talking on the phone?

好，我请她来接。  
妈妈说等一下回电话给你。  
你可以留下你的电话吗？  
电话在响了。  
你能帮我接一下电话吗？  
你能把电话给我吗？  
挂掉电话。  
我来接。  
谁打来的电话？  
是我不知道的号码。  
如果是不认识的人的话，让我来听。  
再见。很高兴听到你的消息。  
抱歉。我要挂掉电话了。  
你没有看到我正在讲电话吗？

## CHAPTER24-02打电话

Want to call Dad?  
I can call myself.  
You need to dial carefully.  
Can you remember Dad's number?  
The phone got cut off.  
The line is busy.  
No one's picking up the phone.  
Let's call later.  
Hello. Is Minsu there?  
This is Jinhong, Minsu's friend. Can I talk to Minsu?  
Will you put Minsu on the phone.  
Can I leave a message for him?  
I think I called the wrong number. I'm sorry.  
It says the number is not listed.  
It looks like you dialed incorrectly.  
Can you tell me Jina's number, Mom?

要打电话给爸爸吗？  
我自己可以打。  
你要看好号码打。  
你记得爸爸的电话号码吗？  
电话被切断了。  
电话中。  
没有人接电话。  
晚点再打。  
喂。民肃在那吗？  
这里是金宏，是民肃的朋友。我可以跟民肃通电话吗？  
你可以叫民肃听电话吗？  
我可以留言给他吗？  
我好像打错电话了。对不起。  
它说没有这个电话号码。  
你好像打错电话了。  
妈，你能告诉我吉娜的电话号码吗？

## CHAPTER24-03使用手机

Don't play with Mom's cell phone.  
There is a monthly limit. Don't use it too much.  
Use the home phone at home.  
Turn off your cell phone at school.  
The battery's dead.  
Recharge your cell phone.  
Can I have a new cell phone?  
Kids shouldn't use expensive cell phones.  
It's easy to break and easy to lose.  
Save the number.  
Keep your cell phone away from water.

不要玩妈妈的手机。  
那是每个月有限额的。不要打太多。  
在家的话，打家用电话。  
在学校，要把手机关掉。  
电池没电了。  
把你的手机充电。  
我可以换只新手机吗？  
小孩子不应该用昂贵的手 机。  
容易弄坏，也容易弄丢。  
把号码存起来。  
不要让你的手机靠近水。





Don't walk on the street while looking at your cell phone.

Leave your phone on vibrate in public places.

I hate people talking too loudly on their cell phones.

Don't use your cell phone while driving, Dad.

不要在路边边走边看手机。

在公共场所时，把你的手机调震动。

我讨厌人们用手机大声说话。

爸，不要一边用手机一边开车。

## CHAPTER24-04确认简讯

Here's a message.

Who sent the text message to you?

The message is from Dad.

It's spam.

I need to delete it.

I need to reply.

Please text me when you get there.

Send Mom a text message.

It's better to use text message in public places.

Mom, you typed it wrong.

I sent a reply, Mom.

Did you check the text message, Mom?

What kind of language is this?

They are emoticons.

有简讯来了。

是谁寄简讯给你呢？

爸爸传来的简讯。

这是垃圾简讯。

我要删掉它。

我要回简讯。

你到的时候，请传简讯给我。

传给简讯给妈妈。

在公共场所使用简讯比较好。

妈，你打错字了。

妈，我回简讯了。

妈，你确认简讯了吗？

这是哪国的语言呢？

它们是表情符号。

## CHAPTER25料理

### CHAPTER25-01洗菜

Let's make cake for the dinner.

Let me mix the dough.

Let's wash the cucumbers.

You need to clean the vegetables well.

Clean the lettuce leaves one by one.

There can be pesticides on it.

Want to use some detergent?

There shouldn't be any detergent on it.

Wash it several times.

It's better to clean it in flowing water.

Soak them in water and clean them later.

Scrub it gently.

The nutrients will get washed away if you scrub it too hard.

Vegetables stay fresh when you wash them with cold water.

Let's rinse these cooked vegetables with cold water.

You need to wash vegetables before you cut them.

You need to wash fish before you cook it.

我们晚餐来做蛋糕吧。

让我来混合面团吧。

我们来洗小黄瓜吧。

你要好好把蔬菜洗干净。

莴苣的菜叶要一片一片洗。

这些可能会有农药留在上面。

要用一些洗涤剂吗？

不可以有洗涤剂留在上面。

要多洗几次。

用流动的水来洗会比较好。

先泡在水中，之后再洗。

轻轻地搓洗。

如果你太用力搓洗，营养成分会被洗掉的。

蔬菜用冷水洗的话，会保持新鲜。

我们把这些煮过的蔬菜用冷水冲一冲吧。

你要切蔬菜之前，要先洗一洗。

你煮鱼之前，要先洗一洗。



## CHAPTER25-02剪/切

I need to dice this.  
Let's chop the meat.  
Let me slice the ham for you.  
Let's shred this carrot.  
Let's cut it into cubes 1cm long.  
Let's cut it a little smaller / bigger.  
Let's mince the garlic.  
Let's peel the potatoes.  
Let's cut it into the right size.  
So it will go into your mouth easily.  
You'd better cut it with scissors.  
Be careful with the knife, Mom.  
Watch out! You might hurt your hand.  
Can I cut it, Mom?  
Want to cut the bread with a bread knife?  
It won't cook well if you cut it too thick.  
Cut it by pressing with a fork.  
Cut it into equal pieces.  
The knife gets dull and has to be sharpened.

我要把这切成小方块。  
我们把肉切片吧。  
我帮你把火腿切成薄片。  
我们把胡萝卜切成丝。  
我们把它切成长度1公分的小方块。  
我们要切得更小/大一些。  
我们把大蒜切碎。  
我们来削马铃薯。  
我们把它切成适当的大小。  
这样就很容易吃进嘴巴里。  
你最好用剪刀剪它。  
妈，小心用刀。  
小心！你可能会伤到你的手。  
妈，我能切它吗？  
你要用面包刀切面包吗？  
如果你切太厚的话，会煮不熟。  
把叉子压下去然后将它切断。  
把它切成相同大小。  
这刀子变钝了，要磨利才行。

## CHAPTER25-03加热

Let's boil some water.  
Let's heat up the soup.  
The lid is shaking.  
There is steam coming up.  
Just look at it since it's hot.  
We need to boil it a little more.  
Add the ingredients in order.  
Let's wait until it gets cooked.  
Stay away since the oil splatters.  
I smell something burned, Mom.  
Is the heat too hot?  
Reduce the heat to low and cook.  
Use high heat and cook for a short period of time.  
Stir well so that it does not get stuck to the bottom.  
Put gloves on because the grip is hot.  
Be careful since the hot steam will come out if you open the top.

我们来煮水。  
我们来热汤  
盖子在震动了。  
出现水蒸气了。  
这很烫，看着就好。  
我们需要再滚一下。  
按顺序把材料放进去。  
我们等它煮熟吧。  
油会溅出来，离远一点。  
妈，我闻到烧焦的味道了。  
热度太高了吗？  
把火转小来煮。  
用大火煮一下。  
好好搅拌，这样它才不会黏在锅底。  
因为把手很烫，要戴上手套。  
要小心，因为如果你打开盒子，会有蒸气跑出来。

## CHAPTER25-04涂抹

How do you like your toast? / What do you spread on your toast?  
Do you want jam or butter?  
I want some jam for my bread.  
Spread it evenly.  
Use different spoons for each one.

你要在吐司上面涂什么？  
你要涂果酱还是奶油？  
我要在面包上涂些果酱。  
要均匀地涂。  
每种果酱用不同的汤匙。



Let me spread it myself.  
Let me try.  
It keeps coming out, Mom.  
It keeps dripping, Mom.  
That's too much. Use the right amount.  
Be sure to close the top.  
Is this about right?  
I dropped it while getting it out.

我要自己涂。  
我来试试看。  
妈，它一直流出来。  
妈，它一直滴出来。  
那太多了，适量地使用。  
一定要确保盖上盒子。  
这样可以吗？  
我把它挖出来的时候，掉下来了。

## CHAPTER25-06盛在盘子里

Will you get a plate for me?  
We need a bigger plate.  
We need a hollow plate.  
Can you bring me the soup bowls?  
Don't put too much in the bowl.  
Let's put it in the middle.  
Will you put some more on the plate?  
Put it in my own bowl, Mom.  
Put a lot on my plate, please.  
Let's clean the rim of the plate.  
Let's take out a little bit.  
How many more plates do we need?  
Place these plates on the table.  
Watch out because these plates can break easily.

你能帮我把盘子拿来吗？  
我们需要更大的盘子。  
我们需要较深的盘子。  
你能把盛汤的碗给我吗？  
不要盛太多东西在碗内。  
我们把它盛在中间。  
你要盛更多在盘子上吗？  
妈，把它放在我的碗内。  
请盛很多在我的盘子内。  
我们把盘子的边缘擦干净。  
我们拿一些出来。  
我们还需要几个盘子？  
把这些盘子摆在餐桌上。  
那些盘子很容易破，要小心点。

## CHAPTER25-07感恩节 Thanksgiving

Thanksgiving is when we harvest crops and give thanks to god for it.  
It is such an important holiday in the US.  
What kind of food do they eat?  
Roasted turkey, mashed potatoes, gravy, and pumpkin pie.

感恩节是我们收割并因此对神表示感谢的时候。  
它在美国是非常重要的节日。  
他们吃什么样的食物？  
吃烤火鸡、马铃薯泥、肉汁、南瓜派。

## CHAPTER25-08去朋友家睡 Sleepover

Mom, last time you told me that I could sleep over at Jina's house, right?  
Yes, I did. So did you get her parent's permission?  
Yes. She said it's fine.  
Okay, then. Why don't you pack the things that you will need? Don't forget your toothbrush.  
Behave well at Jina's house. Don't be too noisy.  
Do not run around inside her house. Okay?  
Listen to Jina's parents.  
Sleep well without Mommy. Have a nice and fun sleepover.

妈，上次你说今天我可以在吉娜家睡，对吧？  
是的，没错。所以她妈妈允许你去吗了？  
是的，她说好。  
好的。那么，你为什么还不准备一下要带的东西？不要忘记你的牙刷。  
在吉娜家的时候，一定要乖。不要太吵。不要在她家房子里乱跑。好吗？  
要听吉娜父母的话。  
妈妈不在也要好好睡。祝你在朋友家有个美好有趣的夜晚。

## CHAPTER 26 享受周末假期



## CHAPTER26-01享受周末

Mom, what day is it today?  
Today is a No-School Saturday. You can sleep more.  
It's an exciting weekend.  
Holidays are fun.  
I don't have to go to school this weekend. I love it.  
It's going to be the weekend tomorrow.  
Tomorrow's a No-School Saturday.  
Tomorrow's a School Saturday.  
You don't have to go to school on Saturdays and Sundays.  
You spend your weekends with your family.  
Tell your friends to have a good weekend.  
Have a good weekend!  
I wish every day were like the weekend.  
I don't have to go to school, do I?  
You can't meet your friends if you don't go to school.  
Are we going somewhere this weekend?  
Mom, let's go to the amusement park this weekend.  
Can we go on a trip during the weekend?  
You have a makeup lesson on the weekend.  
It's already Sunday.  
The weekend is coming to an end.  
A new week is going to start tomorrow.  
The long holiday is going to start.  
The holiday falls on a weekend.  
I wasted my weekend doing nothing.

妈，今天是星期几？  
今天是不用上学的星期六。你可以多睡一点。  
这是令人期待的周末。  
假日是在太有趣了。  
这个周末我不用去学校。我喜欢。  
从明天开始就是周末了。  
明天是不用上学的周六。  
明天是要上学的周六。  
你六、日都不用去上学。  
你的周末要跟家人度过。  
跟你的朋友说周末愉快。  
周末愉快！  
我希望每天都跟这个周末一样。  
我不用去学校，对吧？  
如果你不去学校的话，你就见不到你的朋友了。  
这个周末我们要去哪里吗？  
妈，这个周末我们去游乐园吧。  
周末我们可以去旅行吗？  
这个周末，你有课要补上。  
已经周日了。  
这个周末要结束了。  
明天，新的一周就要开始了！  
连休就要开始了！  
这次的国定假日刚好在周末。  
我白白浪费了周末，什么都没做。

## CHAPTER26-02叫爸爸起床

Get up, Dad!  
Open your eyes.  
Daddy's too tired.  
I'm going to sleep a little more.  
You promised to go to the park.  
Give me a break, Sweetie.  
Can't you go with Mom?  
No, I want to go with Daddy.  
You need to play with me on weekends.  
He won't get up.  
I'll wait until he gets up.  
Can you wake Daddy up for lunch?  
Go tickle Dad till he wakes up.  
Dad, wake up. Let's go to exercise.  
I wish I could play with Dad.

爸，起床了！  
张开眼睛。  
爸比太累了。  
我要多睡一会儿。  
你答应我要去公园的。  
甜心，饶了我吧。  
你不能跟妈咪去吗？  
不要，我想跟爸比去。  
你应该要在周末陪我玩。  
他不要起床。  
我会等到他起床。  
你能叫爸爸起来吃午餐吗？  
去给爸爸搔痒直到他起床。  
爸，起床了。我们去运动。  
我希望我可以跟爸爸玩。





I'm jealous of the kids who play soccer with their dads.

I want to be with Dad. Get up, and then let's play.

Daddy looks really tired.

Just leave him. Let him sleep more.

Daddy's tired because he worked late last night.

It looks like Dad can't even open his eyes.

Daddy always sleeps on weekends/holidays.

How come Dad got out of bed at midday?

我羡慕跟爸爸玩足球的小孩。

我想跟爸比玩。快起床跟我玩。

爸比看起来真的很累。

别吵他，让他多睡一会儿。

爸比因为昨天晚上工作到很晚，所以很累。

爸爸看起来根本连眼睛都张不开。

周末/假日的时候，爸爸总是睡觉。

为什么爸爸在中午才起来？

## CHAPTER26-03无所事事

We'll rest and refresh ourselves this weekend.

I don't want to do anything.

Fine. Can I watch TV?

Don't bother me, Mom.

Let's eat out for lunch.

Are you all lying down together doing nothing?

Are you just going to be lazy today?

Do whatever you want.

It's kind of boring.

Time goes by so slowly.

It's already evening, and we haven't done anything.

Being at home is best anyway.

Let's stop being lazy.

Want to actually do something now?

这个周末，我们就好好休息来重振一下精神。

我不想做任何事情。

很好。我可以看电视吗？

妈，不要打扰我。

我们去外面吃午餐。

你们都一起躺着，什么都不做吗？

你们今天就只想懒懒地过吗？

做任何你想做的事。

有点无聊。

时间过得好慢。

已经晚上了，我们还是什么都没做。

总之在家是最好的。

我们不要再无所事事了。

现在真的要做点什么的了吗？

## CHAPTER26-04订周末计划

What do you want to do this weekend?

Want to go to the water park this weekend?

Want to go to the zoo this weekend?

Want to go to the museum this weekend?

Want to go to watch a movie this weekend?

Please take me to movies.

Let's go somewhere this weekend.

My friend went on a farm stay.

We're going to Grandpa's this weekend.

It will be an exciting weekend.

Let's work out our vacation plan.

What do you want to see the most?

I've always wanted to go there.

这个周末，你想做什么？

这个周末，你想去水上乐园吗？

这个周末，你要去动物园吗？

这个周末，你要去博物馆吗？

你这个周末要去看电影吗？

请带我去看电影。

这个周末，我们去哪玩玩吧。

我的朋友去了农村体验。

我们这个周末要去爷爷家。

这是个让人兴奋的周末。

我们来订假日计划吧。

你最想看的是什么？

我一直很想去那里。

## CHAPTER26-05订休假计划

Summer break is coming up.

How long is this vacation?

It's 4 nights and 5 days.

I think we can spend this vacation well.

We're going to the beach this vacation.

暑假来临了。

这次的假期有多久？

五天四夜。

我想我们可以好好度过这个假期。

这个休假，我们要去海边。



It will be nice to go to a historic event.

去参加历史活动也好。

## CHAPTER26-06爸爸在休息日加班

Did Dad go to work yet?

爸爸已经去上班了吗?

He went to work because he had a lot to do.

爸爸去上班了，因为他有很多工作要做。

He'll be back in the afternoon.

他会在下午回来。

Call and ask Daddy to come home soon.

打电话叫爸比赶快回家。

Where are you going, Dad?

爸，你去哪里了?

I have to go to work.

我必须回去工作。

I thought you said you would play with me.

你好像说过要跟我玩。

I'm sorry. Maybe next time.

抱歉，下一次吧。

Dad's late for work.

爸爸到公司要晚了。

I need to go.

我不得不去。

Can I go with you?

我可以跟你去吗?

No, you can't. Stay with Mommy and wait for me.

不，不行。你跟妈妈一起等我。

I promise to hurry back, though.

但，我答应你会快点回来。

Why does Daddy have to go to work on weekends?

为什么爸比连周末也要去上班?

He's doing it for our family.

他是为了我们一家人才那样做的。

## CHAPTER26-07阳历假日

January 1 is a holiday.

1月1日是假日。

January 1 is the day when we honor the founding of the Republic of China in 1921.

1月1日是纪念1912年中华民国开国的日子。

February 28 is Peace Memorial Day.

2月28日是和平纪念日。

In the past, many people fought with each other because of misunderstandings and caused lots of tragedies.

过去，有许多人因为误解而彼此争斗，造成了许多悲剧。

Don't forget the sad history that we had before.

不可以忘记我们曾经有过的悲伤历史。

April 1 is April Fools' Day.

4月1日是愚人节。

Just some jokes are fine on April Fools' Day.

在愚人节开点玩笑是很好玩的。

But making fun of others too much is a problem.

但是太过取笑他人的话，就会是个问题。

Tomb Sweeping Day is probably on a day of April 4,5,or 6.

清明节大概是在4月4日、5日或6日的其中一天。

A lot of Taiwanese sweep tombs on that day.

很多台湾人那天清扫坟墓。

April 4 is Children's Day.

4月4日是儿童节。

It's the happiest day for all of the children.

对于所有的小孩来说，这是最幸福的一天了。

May 1 is Labor Day.

5月1日是劳动节。

August 8 is Father's Day.

8月8日是父亲节。

September 3 is Armed Forces Day.

9月3日是军人节。

We should remember those soldiers' sacrifices for our nation.

我们应该记得那些为国家牺牲的军人。

September 28 is Teacher's Day.

9月28日是教师节。

Give your teacher a little present and a thank-you note.

给老师送个小礼物和感谢卡。

October 25 is Retrocession Day.

10月25日是光复节。



We got out of control from Japanese rule on October 25, 1945.  
December 25 is Constitution Day.  
We celebrate our national laws that were founded I 1947.  
You don't have to school on some holidays.

我们在1945年10月25日摆脱日本的支配。  
12月25日是行宪纪念日。  
那天是纪念我们在1947年，制定宪法的日子。  
在某些假日，你不用去学校。

## CHAPTER26-08 教会

We are Christians.  
We go to church on Saturdays and Sundays.  
Let's go to the service.  
We're going to be late for the service.  
Don't talk during the service.  
Let's pray.  
Let's say the Lord's Prayer.  
Did you get the offering?  
We should tithe.  
Say hello to our pastor.  
Jesus was nailed to the cross and died.  
I'll go to Sunday school.

我们是基督徒。  
我们周六及周日去教会。  
我们去做礼拜。  
我们做礼拜要迟到了。  
做礼拜的时候，不可以讲话。  
我们来祈祷吧。  
我们来说主的祈祷文吧。  
你奉献的钱准备好了吗？  
我们应该奉献十分之一。  
跟牧师打招呼。  
耶稣被钉在十字架上而死去。  
我要去教会的周日学校。

## CHAPTER26-08-tips 阳历假日的英文名称

Founding Day	开国纪念日
Arbor Day	植树节
Mother's Day	母亲节
Father's Day	父亲节
Constitution Day	行宪纪念日
Labor Day	劳动节
National Celebration Day (Double Tenth Day)	国庆节
April Fools' Day	愚人节
Children's Day	儿童节
Teacher's Day	教师节
Peace Memorial Day	和平纪念日
Tomb Sweeping Day	清明节
Armed Forces Day	军人节
Youth Day	青年节

## CHAPTER26-09教堂

We are Catholics.  
Let's go to the cathedral.  
Let's go to mass.  
Don't be late for mass.  
Wear your veil to mass.  
Be quiet! The priest is preaching.  
Let's do a rosary.  
Our Sister are all very nice.  
Ask God for forgiveness for your wrongdoings.  
Go to confession now.  
May the Lord bless us!

我们是天主教。  
我们去大教堂。  
我们去做弥撒。  
做弥撒不要晚到。  
戴上你的弥撒头巾。  
安静！神父在传道。  
我们来念玫瑰经。  
我们的修女们人都很好。  
请主原谅你的过错。  
现在去忏悔吧。  
主啊，请赐福给我们。



## CHAPTER26-10寺庙

We are Buddhists.  
Today is Buddha's Birthday.  
Let's go to the temple with Mom.  
Greet the monks like this.  
Put your hands together and bow low.  
You need to be quiet in front of the Buddhist statue.  
Don't run inside the temple.

我们是佛教徒。  
今天是佛陀誕生日。  
和妈妈一起去寺庙。  
像这样给僧人打招呼。  
双手合起来，深深地鞠躬。  
在佛像面前，你一定要安静。  
不要在寺庙内乱跑。

## CHAPTER 27今天是特别的日子

### CHAPTER 27-01生日邀约

Your birthday is coming up.  
Let's invite some friends and have a party.  
How many people do you want to invite?  
Invite as many as you want.  
About 10.  
I want to invite all of my classmates.  
Let's make some invitations first.  
I want to make an invitation.  
What should I write on the invitation?  
What time should I tell them to come?  
Tell them to come right after school.  
Give your friends the invitations.  
Ask your friends if they can come.  
When should I give out the invitations?  
I will give them tomorrow when I go to school.  
Where should I have my birthday party?  
Let's just have your friends over to our house.  
I think it will be too crowded in the house.  
I'll make a reservation at a restaurant.  
Mommy needs to plan the birthday party for you.  
Write down the names of your friends you want to invite.  
What do you want for your birthday?  
I want a toy car for my birthday.

你的生日快到了。  
邀请朋友们来家里开派对吧。  
你想邀请多少人?  
你想邀请多少就邀请多少吧。  
大约十个。  
我想邀请全班。  
我们先来制作邀请函。  
我要制作邀请函。  
我要在邀请函上写什么呢?  
我要告诉他们几点来?  
告诉他们放学后直接过来。  
把邀请函拿给你的朋友们。  
问问朋友们他们是否能来。  
我什么时候要把邀请函送出去。  
明天我去上学，就拿给他们。  
我要在哪里办生日派对?  
就请你的朋友们来家里吧。  
我想在家的话会太挤了。  
我会订餐厅。  
妈咪需要计划一下你的生日派对。  
把你想要邀请的朋友名字写下来。  
你想收到什么生日礼物?  
我想要玩具车作为生日礼物。

### CHAPTER 27-02参加生日派对

I got invited to my friend's birthday.  
I got an invitation from my friend.  
I'm going to Jina's birthday party after school.  
Mon, Jina invited me to her birthday party.  
Oh, that sounds good!  
What should I give her for a present?  
Well, think of something that she likes.  
When is the party?

我受邀参加朋友的生日了。  
我从朋友那收到了邀请函。  
放学后，我会去吉娜的生日派对。  
妈，吉娜邀请我去参加她的生日派对。  
喔，那听起来很棒!  
我要送她什么礼物呢?  
那，想想她喜欢什么。  
派对是什么时候?





At 2 o'clock on this coming Saturday.  
Her birthday is actually on the 12th, but she is celebrating it ahead of time.  
Where is she going to have the party?  
At her house / a restaurant.  
On Thursday? But you have a make up lesson on that day.  
Can I just miss class on that day only?  
I should go because she is my best friend.  
Mom, I want to have a birthday party like her.  
Don't forget to bring the present you bought before.  
Call me when the party is over, I will pick you up.

这周六下午两点。  
她的生日原本是12号，但是她提早庆祝。  
。她要在哪里开派对？  
在她家/餐厅。  
周四吗？但是那天你有补课耶。  
我只有那天不去，可以吗？  
因为她是我最好的朋友，我应该要去。  
妈，我想要有向她一样的生日派对。  
不要忘记你预先买好的礼物。  
派对结束后，打电话给我，我会去接你的。

## CHAPTER 27-03生日派对

Let's get ready for the party.  
Your friends are here.  
How many candles do we need?  
Let's sing "Happy Birthday".  
Make a wish.  
Blow out the candles.  
Will you cut the cake and give it to your friends?

我要来准备派对了。  
你的朋友们都到了。  
我们需要几根蜡烛？  
我们来唱“生日快乐歌”。  
许愿吧。  
把蜡烛吹灭。  
你要来切蛋糕分给朋友们吗？

## CHAPTER 27-04送生日礼物

Thanks for coming to my party.  
Happy birthday.  
Here's my present. / This is my present for you.  
I brought this for you.  
Open your presents.  
Wow! I really wanted this.  
I really like the present.  
Have fun. / Have a good time.  
Wow, this toy car is awesome / fantastic.  
I got this from my dad.  
My dad bought this for me.

谢谢你们来参加我的派对。  
生日快乐！  
这是我送你的礼物。  
这是我带来给你的。  
打开礼物吧。  
哇！我真的很想要这个。  
我真的很喜欢这礼物。  
好好玩哦。  
哇，这玩具车真的很酷。  
这是我从爸爸那收到的。  
我爸买这个给我。

## CHAPTER 27-05长辈的生日

Your grandpa's birthday is coming up this Wednesday.  
Let's choose a gift for Grandpa.  
What gift would Grandpa like?  
I'm going to write a card.  
The gift is something I drew.  
Grandpa would like that.  
I'll make Grandpa's favorite food.  
Put on the same number of candles as Grandpa's age.  
Happy birthday, Grandpa!

这周三是你爷爷的生日。  
我们来为爷爷选礼物吧。  
爷爷会喜欢什么礼物呢？  
我来写卡片。  
礼物是我画的画。  
爷爷会很喜欢那个的。  
我来做爷爷喜欢的食物。  
插上跟爷爷岁数一样的蜡烛。  
爷爷，祝您生日快乐！



Thanks, Sweetheart.  
Sing "Happy Birthday" for Grandpa.  
Be healthy, Grandpa!  
Open your gift, please.  
Grandpa, do you like your gift?  
It took me days to choose your gift.  
Thank you, Sweetie! I like this very much.

谢谢，甜心。  
给爷爷唱“生日快乐歌”。  
爷爷，祝您健康长寿！  
请打开礼物。  
爷爷，你喜欢你的礼物吗？  
我花了很多天为您选礼物。  
甜心，谢谢！我非常喜欢。

## CHAPTER27-06过年

January 1 is New Year's Day on the solar calendar..  
We have another New Year's Day on the lunar calendar.  
The lunar January 1 is also the Chinese New Year.  
We worship our ancestors. That is an important tradition.  
We eat a family reunion dinner on New Year's Day.  
You get one year older when you eat the family reunion dinner.  
New Year's Day is an important Taiwanese holiday along with the Moon Festival.  
We'll be visiting Grandpa's place in Tainan on Chinese New Year.  
Let's go to Grandma's place with our new clothes on to give a big bow to her.  
You look prettier with your new clothes on!  
Time to give a big bow to the adults!  
Have a happy new year!  
I wish you good luck this year!  
Here's your red envelop./ Here's your New Year's money.  
Thanks, Grandpa!  
I got 1,000 NT from the red envelop.

1月1日是阳历的新年。  
我们还有一个农历的新年。  
农历的新年又是华人的新年。  
我们祭拜祖先，这是很重要的习俗。  
我们在过年时吃团圆饭。  
当你吃了团圆饭，你就长了一岁。  
过年跟中秋节都是台湾很重要的节日。  
过年时，我们要去位于台南的爷爷家。  
我们穿上新衣服去奶奶家给她拜年吧！  
穿上新衣服后，你看起来更美了！  
该给大人们拜年了。  
新年快乐！  
希望你有个幸运的一年！  
这是新年红包。  
爷爷，谢谢您！  
我收到1千元的红包。

## CHAPTER27-07中秋节

Is it already Mid-Autumn Festival next week?  
Mid-Autumn Festival is on August 15 on the lunar calendar.  
Mid-Autumn Festival, Dragon Boat Festival and Chinese New Year are the three most important traditional holidays.  
The moon will be round on that day.  
Hope the weather will be fine at night.  
This pomelo is so big.  
I can't wait to eat mooncakes!  
Let's go outside to have a barbecue party.

下周就是中秋节了吗？  
中秋节是农历的8月15日。  
中秋节、端午节和过年是三大重要的传统节日。  
月亮在当天会很圆。  
希望晚上的天气很好。  
这颗文旦很大。  
我等不及要吃月饼了。  
我们到外面去吃烤肉大餐吧。

## CHAPTER27-08情人节/白色情人节

February 14 is Valentine's Day.

2月14日是情人节。



A lady gives candy to a man she likes.  
Let's prepare some chocolate for Dad.  
I'll buy some chocolate to give to my friends.  
This chocolate is for Jinhong.  
I received some candy from my friends.  
March 14 is White Day.  
Boys give candy to girls they like.  
It's only celebrated in Korea, Japan, and Taiwan.

女生会送巧克力给喜欢的男生。  
我们来为爸爸准备巧克力吧。  
我要买些巧克力送给我的朋友们。  
这是要给金宏的巧克力。  
我从朋友们那收到巧克力。  
3月14日是白色情人节。  
男生会送糖果给喜欢的女生。  
只有在韩国、日本和台湾是这样。

## CHAPTER27-09儿童节

Yay! Children's Day is coming soon!  
What present do you want on Children's Day?  
I want a new Lego set / a Barbie doll.  
I want to go to an amusement park.  
Grandpa sent you a big present.  
Your aunt and uncle sent some money to you.  
Call Grandpa and say thank you.  
Do we have any special plans, Mom?  
Well, let's just eat some good food and have fun.  
Happy Children's Day!  
I wish every day were Children's Day.

耶！儿童节要到了。  
在儿童节，你想收到什么礼物？  
我想要新的乐高组合玩具/芭比娃娃。  
我想去游乐园。  
爷爷给你寄来大礼物了。  
你的阿姨和叔叔寄了些钱给你。  
打电话给爷爷说谢谢。  
妈，我们有什么特别计划吗？  
嗯，我们去吃些好吃的，开心地玩。  
儿童节快乐！  
我希望天天都是儿童节。

## CHAPTER27-10圣诞节

It's almost Christmas.  
Hooray! It's Christmas.  
Not yet, Honey. It's December 25.  
I wish for a white Christmas.  
Let's sing a Christmas carol.  
I love Christmas the most.  
Let's put up our Christmas tree.  
Shall we decorate the Christmas tree, too?  
Let's put a star on the top.  
That's a great-looking tree we made this year. /  
We made a wonderful tree for Christmas this year, too.  
Did you read my Christmas card?  
Your Christmas card is very touching. Thank you, Honey.  
It's Christmas tomorrow. Go to sleep early.  
Oops, I forgot to put up the stockings.  
Put them next to the Christmas tree.  
Have you been a good child for the entire year?  
Santa only visits good kids.  
Look! Santa put a present under the tree!  
I want to open my present.  
Santa gave me the gift I wanted.  
Mom, does Santa really exist?  
Of course. That's how you got his present.

现在是圣诞节了。  
万岁！是圣诞节耶。  
还没，宝贝！那是12月25日。  
我希望是个白色圣诞节。  
我们来唱圣诞歌。  
我最喜欢圣诞节。  
我们来把圣诞树架起来。  
我们也要装饰圣诞树吧？  
我们在顶端放一颗星星吧。  
  
今年我们也做了一棵很好看的圣诞树。  
  
你读了我写的圣诞卡了吗？  
你的圣诞卡让人很感动。谢谢你，宝贝。  
  
明天是圣诞节。早点去睡。  
啊，我忘记挂袜子了。  
把它们挂在圣诞树旁边。  
你这一年都是乖小孩吗？圣诞老公公只拜访乖小孩。  
看！圣诞老公公把礼物放在树下了。  
我要打开我的礼物。  
圣诞老公公给了我想要的礼物。  
妈，真的有圣诞老公公吗？  
当然。因此，你才收到礼物。



## CHAPTER28和家人在社区散步

### CHAPTER28-01去公园散步

Let's go for a walk.	我们去散步。
Want to go for a walk to exercise?	要去散步运动一下吗？
Let's go out to play in the park.	我们去公园玩吧。
Want to ride our bikes at the park?	要去公园骑脚踏车吗？
Wow! There are a lot of people at the park.	哇！公园有好多人。
Say "hi" to our neighbors.	跟邻居打招呼。
Want to hold hands?	要手牵手吗？
Make sure you follow me, Honey.	宝贝，你要确实跟着我。
Don't throw trash on the ground.	不可以把垃圾丢在地上。
Don't pick the flowers.	不可以摘花。
Don't break the branches.	不可以折树枝。
Don't step on the grass.	不可以踩草地。
It's great weather for a walk.	这天气很适合散步。
The breeze is really nice.	微风真的很棒。
Mom, let's rest for a little.	妈，我们休息一下。
Mom, my legs hurt.	妈，我脚痛。
I think we came too far.	我想我们走太远了。
Want to go back now?	现在要回去了吗？
I want to stay longer.	我想再待一会。
I know, but it's getting late.	我知道，但是越来越晚了。
Mom, I have to go to the restroom. Where is it?	妈，我要上厕所。哪里有厕所？
The restroom is over there.	厕所在那里。
Want to use this exercise machine?	要使用这个运动器材吗？
I want to ride it, too, Mom.	妈，我也要骑。
Try the one over there. Nobody is using it.	你去试试那个。那边没有人用。

### CHAPTER28-02公厕

Let's wait in line.	我们来排队。
Knock on the door before going into the restroom.	进厕所前要敲门。
Don't spit.	不要随意吐痰。
Don't draw on the wall of the restroom.	不要在厕所的墙壁乱画。
Flush the toilet after you are done.	你上完之后要冲水。
Wash your hands well.	好好地洗手。

### CHAPTER28-03超市

Mommy needs to go grocery shopping.	妈咪要去买菜。
Go get a cart.	去拉一台推车过来。
Let's see the grocery list.	我们来看需要购买物品的清单。
Let's go to the produce corner first.	我们先去农产品区。
Let's buy some fruit.	我们买些水果。
How much is this?	这个多少钱？
Give me 1kg of it.	给我1公斤。
I'll take this.	我要这个。
Put it in the cart.	把它放进推车。





Do you know where I can find the fish?  
The meat's really cheap / expensive.  
The pack of ramen is on sale.  
Let's have fish for dinner.  
Tonight's dinner is sautéed octopus.  
Check if we forgot anything.  
The cart is full.  
Can we get some snacks?  
I want some meat. Buy some meat, Mom!  
Can I try some bread in the tasting corner?  
Let's go to the checkout counter.  
Get the groceries on the counter.  
Can I get a bag?  
Let's put it in the bag.

你知道卖鱼的在哪里吗?  
这肉真的很便宜/贵。  
整袋装的拉面在打折。  
我们晚餐吃鱼吧。  
今天晚餐的菜单是炒章鱼。  
确认一下我们有没有忘了什么。  
推车都满了。  
我可以买零食吗?  
我想吃肉。妈，买些肉。  
我可以在试吃区试吃面包吗?  
我们去结账吧。  
把食物都放在柜台上。  
我可以要一个袋子吗?  
我们把它放进袋子内。

## CHAPTER28-04餐厅用餐

Can we get a menu?  
Choose what you want to eat.  
Did you choose what you want?  
I want zhangmian and sweet and sour pork.  
Hello. May I order now?  
Get me some water, please.  
Can you get it quickly?  
How long do I have to wait till the dishes come out?  
Can you set the spoons and chopsticks?  
Don't goof around in the restaurant.  
You have food on your lips. Mom will clean it off for you.  
Want some more?  
Mine is good, too. Want to try some?  
Mommy will eat the leftovers.  
Mom, I spilled my water.  
Can you pack the rest, please?  
Can we get the check, please?  
The dish was too salty / bland.

可以给我们菜单吗?  
选你想吃的。  
你选好你想要吃的了吗?  
我想吃炸酱面和糖醋肉。  
你好。现在我可以点餐了吗?  
请给我些水。  
你可以快点供餐吗?  
我还要等多久，菜才会出来?  
你能摆一下汤匙和筷子吗?  
不可以在餐厅胡闹。  
你的嘴巴上沾到食物了。妈妈帮你擦掉。  
还要多吃一点吗?  
我的也很好吃。你要尝一下吗?  
剩下的食物给妈妈吃。  
妈，我的水溅出来了。  
请把剩余的打包起来。  
请给我结账单。  
这食物太咸/清淡了。

## CHAPTER28-05美容室-在家

I want my hair done now!  
Your hair is too long. Let's go to a beauty shop.  
It's been a while since your last trim, and your hair is getting long.  
I don't want to go to the hair shop.  
Your friends will make fun of you if your hair's messy.  
Since it's hot, do you want your hair short?  
Want to get a perm?  
How do you want your hair done?

我现在就想弄头发!  
你的头发太长了。我们去美容室吧。  
上次修剪之后，已经有好长时间了。你的头发长很长了。  
我讨厌去理发厅。  
如果你的头发很杂乱，你的朋友们会取笑你的。  
天气很热，你要剪短吗?  
你要烫头发吗?  
你想要怎样做你的头发?



How can I help you?

I want my hair cut.

I want my hair permed.

I want my hair straight.

How do you want it cut?

I want it short.

Just trim it a little.

Don't cut it too short.

Just trim my bangs.

I want my hair dyed.

Please highlight this part.

Sit still so we can cut it nice.

Don't move!

Will you tilt your head down?

Hair will get in your mouth if you talk.

Do you like your haircut?

You look like a prince / princess after your haircut.

My son looks different.

You look cool! Sorry we didn't cut it earlier.

There are a lot of people today.

Want to come next time?

我要怎样帮你呢?

我想剪头发。

我想烫卷。

我想烫直。

你想怎样剪?

我想剪短。

只要稍微修剪一下就好。

不要剪得太短。

只要修剪刘海就好。

我想要染发。

请挑染这一块。

乖乖坐好，我们才能剪得好看。

不要动!

你能低一下头吗?

如果你说话的话，头发会跑进你的嘴巴。

你喜欢剪的这个发型吗?

你剪发后，看起来很像王子/公主。

我儿子看起来很不一样了。

好酷!真可惜我们没有早点来剪。

今天有很多客人。

下次要再来吗?

## CHAPTER28-06桑拿浴

Let's go to the sauna.

Clean up first and then go into the sauna.

Go with Daddy since you're a big boy.

Put on your sweatsuit.

Want to go in there?

I can't breathe, Mom.

I'll go outside for a little.

Let's cool down for a few minutes.

You're sweating a lot.

Make sure to drink plenty of water.

I want to drink some water.

Can you buy me some boiled eggs and a drink?

I'm going to lie down here.

It's not good to stay for too long.

How long will we stay?

When do we go home?

That feels good!

Let's clean up and go home.

我们去桑拿浴吧。

先洗干净，再进去桑拿浴。

你是大男孩了，跟爸爸一起去。

穿上桑拿浴的衣服。

要去那里吗?

妈，我不能呼吸。

我要出去外面一会儿。

我们来冷却一会儿吧。

你流了很多汗。

一定要喝充足的水。

我要喝些水。

你可以买些水煮蛋和饮料给我吗?

我要躺在这里。

待太久也不好。

我们要待多久呢?

我们什么时候回家?

感觉相当好!

我们把澡洗好然后回家。

## CHAPTER28-07电影院

Let's go to watch a movie.

What do you want to see?

What movies are on?

I want to watch a 3D movie.

我们去看电影。

你想看什么?

有什么电影正在上映?

我想看3D电影。



What time should we watch the movie?  
Let's watch a matinee.  
Let me buy the tickets beforehand./ Let me reserve the movie tickets.  
I'll get the tickets.  
It's already sold out.  
We have about 10 minutes till the movie starts.  
Go to the bathroom before the movie starts.  
Can I get popcorn and a drink?  
Did you reserve the tickets, Mom?/ Did you buy the tickets ahead of time, Mom?  
Did you receive the tickets from the box office?  
Wait in line here and go in.  
Can you find our seats?  
It's dark inside. Watch your steps.  
Mom, did you set your phone to vibrate?  
I can't wait.  
I can't see because that couple is blocking my view.  
Don't kick the seat in front of you.  
Hush! Be quiet in the theater.  
Was the movie fun?  
Let's watch another movie later, Mom!

我们要看几点的?  
我们看下午场。  
我来订票。  
我去买票。  
已经都卖完了。  
离电影开始，我们还有十分钟。  
电影开始前，先去上厕所。  
我可以买爆米花和饮料吗?  
妈，你订了电影票了吗?  
你在售票处拿到票了吗?  
在这里排队进去。  
你能找到我们的座位吗?  
里面好暗，小心你的脚步。  
妈，你把手机调振动了吗?  
我等不及了。  
我看不到，因为那两个人挡住我了。  
不要踢你前面的椅子。  
嘘！在电影院内要安静。  
这部电影有趣吗?  
妈，我们下次再来看电影。

## CHAPTER28-08书店

Want to go to the bookstore?  
Are there any books you wanted to read?  
There are a lot of interesting books here.  
Look at all the science magazines.  
Pick what you want to read.  
These are all new books.  
Which one looks fun to you?  
Want to go over there?  
Here are the books you wanted!  
Want to read this?  
Where are the dinosaur books?  
Can you find me the book?  
Can I read this book here?  
This is the 4th book in the series.  
Can I get this book?  
Do you want a cartoon book again?  
Let's buy a few English storybooks.

要去书店吗?  
有任何你想读的书吗?  
这里有很多有趣的书。  
看这些科学杂志。  
选你想要读的。  
这些都是新书。  
哪一本看起来很有趣?  
要去那边吗?  
这些是你想要的书!  
想要读读这本吗?  
恐龙的书在哪里呢?  
你能帮我找出那本书吗?  
我可以在这里看吗?  
这是这个系列的第4本。  
我可以买这本吗?  
你要买漫画书吗?  
我们买些英文故事书吧。

## CHAPTER28-09图书馆

Today's the day we go to the library.  
Let's apply for a library card.  
Want to find some books with a computer?  
How many books can I borrow?

今天是我们要去图书馆的日子。  
我们来申请借书证吧。  
要用电脑找书吗?  
我可以借多少本书?



We can only get 4 books.  
Don't rush. Take your time.  
Mom, read me this book.  
Can I sit here and read?  
Don't be loud in the library.  
Be quiet in the library.  
You should not read the books out loud.  
You should not eat in the library.  
You should not tear the books.  
Did you choose all the books?  
I found a good book.  
I want to read it immediately.  
Let's check them out.  
Give the librarian the card first.  
Read here until Mom chooses a book.  
Did you get all the books we need to return?  
The books are due on Wednesday.  
The library is closed today.

我们只能借4本。  
不用急，慢慢来。  
妈，读这本书给我听。  
我可以在这里读吗？  
不可以在图书馆喧哗。  
在图书馆要安静。  
你不能大声地把书念出来。  
你不可以去图书馆吃东西。  
你不可以把书撕破。  
你都选好书了吗？  
我发现了一本不错的书。  
我马上就想读。  
我们把它们借出去吧。  
先把卡片给图书馆员。  
在这里读书，直到妈妈选好书。  
我们要还的书，你都准备好了吗？  
这些书在星期三就会逾期。  
图书馆今天闭馆。

## CHAPTER28-10银行

What is a bank for?/ What does a bank do for us?  
What do you do at the bank?  
We keep money in the bank.  
Let's open an account for you.  
Get a number.  
We need to fill out the form.  
I want to save 10,000 to the bank.  
I want to take out 10,000 here./ I will withdraw  
10,000 here.  
Did you bring your account book and seal?  
What time does the bank open?  
It opens at 9:00 AM.  
After I fill my piggy bank, I'll bring it to the bank.

银行是做什么的地方？  
你在银行做什么？  
我们把钱保管在银行。  
我们来帮你开个账户。  
抽号码牌。  
我们要填好表格。  
我想要存一万元到银行。  
我在这里提一万元。  
你带了存折和印章吗？  
银行几点开门？  
早上九点开门。  
等我装满扑满，我就拿去银行。

## CHAPTER28-11消防局

Call 119 when there is a fire.  
Firefighters help put out fires.  
Don't ever prank call the fire department.  
Cars need to move out of the way when a fire  
truck is coming.  
I want to be a firefighter when I grow up.  
We can see firefighters and fire trucks at the fire  
department.

当发生火灾要打119。  
消防员会帮忙灭火。  
绝对不可以打恶作剧电话给消防局。  
当消防车来的时候，车子一定要让路。  
我长大后，想当个消防员。  
在消防局，我们可以看到消防员和消防  
车。

## CHAPTER28-12警察局

Wow, there's a police car.  
The police uniform is cool.  
I feel safe because we have a police station in  
town.

哇，有警车。  
警察制服很帅气。  
因为我们镇上有警察局，所以我感觉很  
安心。





I want to be a police officer when I grow up.  
You need to be brave if you want to be a police officer.  
Do you know the number of the police station?  
It's 110.  
The police protect people's lives and property.

我长大后，我要当个警察。  
如果你想当警察，你必须很勇敢。  
你知道警察局的电话吗？  
是110。  
警察保护人民的生命和财产。

## CHAPTER29去旅行

### CHAPTER29-01爬山

Let's go hiking.  
The air is fresh.  
It's great to go up to a mountain.  
The mountain is too high!  
Go up/down carefully.  
My legs hurt.  
Let's rest for a little bit.  
Want to drink some water from the fountain?  
We're finally at the top.  
We came all the way up here.  
Shout hooray!  
It was hard at first, but it feels good here at the top.

我们去健行吧。  
空气很新鲜。  
去爬山很好。  
山太高了！  
小心上去/下来。  
我的腿很痛。  
我们休息一下吧。  
要去饮水机那喝点水吗？  
我们终于到山顶了。  
我们从大老远来到这里。  
来呐喊一下万岁！  
刚开始很累，但是来到山顶后，感觉很棒。

### CHAPTER29-02海边旅行

Let's go on a trip to the sea.  
Wow, it's the sea!  
The beach is very clean.  
The waves are too high!  
The sand keeps getting in my shoes.  
Take off your shoes and go into the sea.  
The water's too cold/salty.  
Want to set up the tent here?  
Let's set a fire!  
Go sleep in the tent.

我们去海边旅行吧。  
哇，是海耶！  
海边好干净。  
海浪太高了！  
沙子一直跑进鞋子内。  
脱掉鞋子，去海边吧。  
水好冰/咸。  
要在这里搭帐篷吗？  
我们来生篝火。  
去帐篷里面睡。

### CHAPTER29-03游泳池

Shower before you go in the pool.  
Clean up and change into your swimming suit.  
Don't forget your swim cap and goggles, either.  
Go to the restroom before getting into the pool.  
Did you stretch?  
I'll inflate your inner tube.  
Be careful since the floor is slippery.  
Don't go into the deep end of the pool.  
Please don't dive.  
Try not to splash water on others.  
Don't goof around in the pool.

进泳池前，要先冲一下身体。  
洗干净之后，换上泳装。  
也不要忘记你的泳帽和蛙镜。  
进泳池前，先去上厕所。  
你做伸展操了吗？  
我会帮你的游泳圈充气。  
地板很滑，要小心。  
不要去泳池深处的一端。  
请不要跳水。  
试着不要让水溅到其他人。  
不要在泳池内胡闹。



Don't make loud noises in the pool.  
Don't swim right after you eat.  
Go in a little later.  
Don't stay in the water for too long.  
Your lips are blue. Stay warm for a minute.  
Let me dry you off with a towel.  
Mom will stick around in the pool area.  
The sun's rays are very strong. Put some sunscreen on.  
Do I have to put on sunscreen?  
I don't want to put any sunscreen on.  
It's sticky.  
Let's remove the air from your inner tube.  
Dry yourself off before you go into the changing room.

不要在泳池内制造噪音。  
刚吃完，不可以马上游戏。  
等一下再进去。  
不要在水里待太久。  
你的嘴唇变蓝了。先暖一下身体。  
我用毛巾帮你擦干。  
妈妈会在泳池附近。  
这太阳光太强了。擦些防晒霜吧。  
我一定要擦防晒霜吗？  
我不想擦防晒霜。  
这黏黏的。  
我们把游泳圈内的气漏掉吧。  
你进更衣室之前，要先擦掉身体。

## CHAPTER29-04游乐园

Let's go to the amusement park.  
Let's buy tickets for all of the rides.  
I'll get the tickets. Wait here.  
Wait in line.  
Want to ride this?  
I want to ride this, Mom.  
That looks too scary.  
You're too short to ride this.  
Let's go and watch the parade.  
The line's too long. Shall we ride something else?  
I want to ride the merry-go-round.  
Let's ride the Ferris wheel.  
I'm going to ride the roller coaster.  
I like the Viking Ride the most. / The Viking Ride is the most fun.  
I'm dizzy. I think I'm going to throw up.  
Let's rest in the shade.  
I want to ride it again.  
Can I ride it again?  
I don't want to ride alone.  
Want to ride with Mom?  
It's time to close.  
All of the rides are so fun.

我们进游乐园吧。  
我们去买自由使用所有游乐设施的票。  
我去拿票。在这里等。  
排队等。  
要搭这个吗？  
妈，我想要搭这个。  
那看起来太可怕了。  
你太矮了，不能搭这个。  
我们去参观游行。  
队伍太长了。我们去搭其他的好吗？  
我想要做旋转木马。  
我们做摩天轮吧。  
我要去做云霄飞车。  
海盗船最有趣了。  
我头晕了。我想我要吐了。  
我们在阴影下休息吧。  
我还想要搭。  
我还可以再搭吗？  
我不想一个人搭。  
要跟妈咪一起坐吗？  
要闭门了。  
所有的游乐设施都很好玩。

## CHAPTER29-05博物馆/美术馆

There's a motor show going on today.  
I heard the Snoopy Exhibition is coming up next month.  
Let's go to the dinosaur museum today.  
A museum is a place where historic things are displayed.

我们有个汽车展在正在举办。  
我听说下个月会有史努比的展览会。  
我们今天去恐龙博物馆吧。  
博物馆是展出有历史意义物品的地方。



Let's go to the art museum today.  
An art museum displays many works of art.  
Whose work of art is this?  
What do you think of this work?  
I want to draw something this cool.  
Read this descriptions here.  
Listen to what the guide says.  
Don't touch that. Just look at it.  
You are not allowed to take photos in the museum.  
You should be quiet in the showrooms.

今天我们去美术馆吧。  
美术馆是展出各种美术品的地方。  
这是谁的作品?  
你觉得这个作品如何?  
我也想画出这么棒的画。  
读读这里的说明。  
好好听导游的说明。  
不要碰。用看的就好。  
在博物馆内是禁止照相的。  
你在展区要保持安静。

## CHAPTER29-06照相

Let's take a picture here.  
Want to take a picture with your friend?  
Stand next to your friend.  
Move back a bit.  
Step ahead a little.  
Move to the left / right a little.  
Everyone, squeeze together.  
Say cheese!  
Smile for the camera.  
Make a big smile, please.  
You look nervous.  
Try to look good.  
Will you pose for my camera?  
Mom, take a picture of Jina and me.  
I'll take it this time.  
I don't want to take a picture of myself, Mom. / I don't want my picture taken, Mom.  
The camera was shaking. Let's take another picture.  
Wow, it looks great.  
My daughter is photogenic. / My girl looks great in a photo.  
Show me the picture.  
The picture looks good / bad.  
I'm not much of a photographer.  
Let's take a family photo.  
Let's ask someone to take a picture of us.  
Excuse me, but could you take a picture of us?

我们在这里拍张照。  
要跟你的朋友一起照吗?  
站在你朋友的旁边。  
往后退一点。  
往前站一点。  
往左/右边移一点。  
各位，靠在一起。  
说cheese!  
请对着镜头微笑。  
请给我一个大大的微笑。  
你看起来很紧张。  
摆出帅气的样子。  
你可以为我的相机摆个姿势吗?  
妈，帮我跟吉娜照张相。  
这次我来照。  
妈，我不想照相。  
相机晃了一下。我们再照一张。  
哇，这张看起来很棒。  
我女儿很上相。  
给我看照片  
这照片拍的很好/不好。  
我不太会照相。  
我们来照全家福。  
我们去请其他人帮我们照。  
不好意思，可以请您帮我们拍照吗?

## CHAPTER30交通工具

### CHAPTER30-01走路

Take a bus today.  
Let's take a taxi!

今天搭公车吧。  
我们搭计程车啦。



Will you walk to the library today?  
How long does it take by walking?  
About 20 minutes.  
I'm going to walk today.  
It's too far to walk.  
Hold my hand and walk.  
Don't goof around on the street.  
We're late. Let's walk faster.  
I'm breathless.  
We walked too much. Let's rest for a little.  
My legs hurt.  
It's nice to walk, isn't it?  
Let's walk our dog, too.  
We can be healthy if we walk.  
It seems like we came pretty far.  
Want to sing while we walk?  
Want to drink something since it's hot?

今天你要走路去图书馆吗?  
走路的话, 要花多久时间?  
20分钟左右。  
今天我走路去。  
走路的话, 太远了。  
握着我的手走。  
不可以在街上胡闹。  
我们晚了, 走快点。  
我很喘。  
我们走太多了, 休息一下吧。  
我腿很痛。  
走路很好, 不是吗?  
我们也遛狗吧。  
如果我们走路, 会更健康。  
我们好像走到相当远  
想要边走边唱歌吗?  
好热喔, 要喝点什么吗?

### CHAPTER30-02过马路

Always be careful of cars when crossing.  
you should cross at the crosswalk.  
Stop in front of the crosswalk.  
Don't run in the crosswalk.  
Mom, the light is green. Let's go.  
Look to both sides and walk when the light turns green.  
Hold your hand up when you cross.  
Stop when the green light is flickering.  
Let's wait for the next light.  
Don't jaywalk  
There are no lights here.  
Look carefully where there aren't any lights.  
There is an underpass.  
Let's cross on the overpass.  
Mom, that car's running the red light.  
The police will arrest the driver since he didn't follow the rules.

过马路时, 要小心车子。  
你应该走斑马线。  
要停在斑马线的前面。  
不可以在斑马线上跑。  
妈, 绿灯了。我们走吧。  
当变绿灯时, 也要看一下左右两侧再走。  
当你过马路时, 要举起你的手。  
当绿灯在闪的时候, 要停下来。  
我们等下一个信号灯吧。  
不可随便穿越马路。  
这里没有信号灯。  
没有信号灯的地方一定要小心看路。  
有地下道。  
我们过天桥吧。  
妈, 那辆车闯红灯。  
因为他没有遵守规则, 警察会逮捕他。

### CHAPTER30-03坐车

Let's get in the car.  
Who wants to get in first?  
Check before opening the door.  
See if there are any cars coming.  
Fasten your seatbelt.  
Did you buckle up?  
I don't want to buckle up.  
You need to buckle up when you're in the car.

我们上车。  
谁要先上?  
开门前先确认一下。  
看看是否有其他车过来。  
系上安全带。  
你扣好了吗?  
我不想扣。  
当你坐车的时候, 一定要扣。





I don't want to ride in the car seat.  
It makes me look like a baby .  
It's safer to sit in it, though.  
The door's not opening. Please open it for me.  
Can I ride in the front seat?  
The front seat's dangerous, so kids shouldn't sit there.  
Get the dirt off your shoes and get in the car.  
Sit back on your bottom.  
Sit still in the car. Okay?  
Check if you left anything before we move.  
Say "Go!"  
Go! / Move!

我不想坐儿童座椅。

这让我看起来像个小孩。  
不过，坐在里面更安全。  
这门打不开。请帮我开门。  
我可以坐前座吗？  
前座很危险，所以小孩子不可以坐。  
把你鞋子上的泥土弄掉后，再上车。  
屁股往后坐。  
在车内要乖乖坐好。好吗？  
出发前确认一下有没有什么没拿的。  
说“出发！”  
出发！

### CHAPTER30-04在车内

Be quiet. You're distracting Dad.  
Don't put your hand out the window.  
It's too hot. Roll down the window.  
Can I play my portable video game?  
For only 30 minutes.  
Your eyesight will get bad if you play the game in the car.  
Reading books in a car is bad for your eyes.  
Sing a song for Daddy to keep him awake.  
Dad, you're speeding.  
I want to go to the restroom.  
Let's stop at the rest area.  
Want me to play a CD?  
If you're tired, sleep a little.  
I'll wake you up when we get there.  
Are we there yet?  
How far should we go?  
How much more do we have to go?  
I feel like I'm getting carsick.

安静。你让爸爸的注意力分散了。  
不可以把手伸出车窗外。  
太热了。把窗户降下来吧。  
我可以玩我的随身游戏机吧？  
只能玩30分钟。  
如果你在车内打游戏的话，你的视力会变差。  
在车内读书对你的眼睛不好。  
唱首歌给爸爸保持清醒吧。  
爸，你超速了。  
我想去厕所。  
我们在休息站停一下。  
要放CD吗？  
如果你累了，就睡一下吧。  
到了的话，我会叫醒你的。  
我们已经到了吗？  
我们要开多远？  
我们还要开多久？  
我觉得我晕车了。

### CHAPTER30-05公车

Let's take a bus today.  
The bus stop is over there.  
Let's check the route.  
What number bus do we need to take?  
We can take the number 5538 or 571 bus.  
We should cross the street to take the bus.  
How come the bus isn't coming?  
What number bus is that?  
The bus is here. Let's get in.  
Grab the handle.  
Go sit in an empty seat.

今天我们搭公车吧。  
公车站在那里。  
我们来看一下线路图。  
我们要搭几号公车？  
我们可以搭5538或571公车。  
我们要过马路去搭公车。  
公车为什么还没来？  
那公车是几号？  
公车来了。我们上车吧。  
抓住把手。  
去坐在空位上。



Please give your seat to this lady.  
Sit here, ma'am / sir.  
Keep your voice down and behave.  
Don't play with your feet.  
You should not be loud inside the bus.

请把位子让给这位女士。  
爷爷/奶奶，请坐这里。  
说话小声点，乖乖坐好。  
不要玩你的脚。  
你不可以公车大声说话。

## CHAPTER30-06计程车

Let's take a taxi.  
Let's just take a cab since we're in a rush.  
Just the base fare will be charged.  
Taxi fares depend on the distance traveled.  
The fare turned out to be expensive.

我们去搭计程车吧。  
因为我们很赶，所以搭计程车吧。  
只会被收起跳的金额。  
计程车费是根据行车的距离来算。  
结果车资很贵。

## CHAPTER30-07地铁

Let's take the subway to visit your aunt.  
Which subway line do we need to take?  
We need to take the number one line.  
Mom, the train is coming.  
Is that the train we need to take?  
Right. Step behind the safety line.  
Get on the subway train after people get off.  
Hurry! Get in!  
Watch your step when you get on.  
Mom, there's an empty seat.  
Hand me the bag. I'll hold it.  
How many more stops are left?  
Three stops from here.  
Don't jump around in the subway train.

我们坐地铁去你阿姨家。  
我们要坐几号线?  
我们要坐一号线。  
妈，电车来了。  
那是我们要搭的电车吗?  
对。退到安全线后。  
等人们都下车后，我们再上去。  
快！上车！  
上车时，要小心脚。  
妈，有个空位。  
把包包给我，我来拿。  
还剩几站?  
还剩三站。  
不可以电车内跳。

# CHAPTER31教授的基本表现

## CHAPTER31-01颜色

What color is this?  
It's blue.  
Let's say the name of colors in English.  
What color is the fire truck?  
What color is this shirt?  
The color of the shirt is blue.  
What is your favorite color?  
My favorite color is red.  
Mom, what color is this?  
That is dark / light brown.  
What color will we get when we mix yellow and blue?  
Right! It turns green when we mix yellow and blue.  
What color feels warm / cold?

这是什么颜色  
这是蓝色。  
我们来用英文说颜色吧。  
消防车是什么颜色?  
这件衬衫是什么颜色?  
衬衫的颜色是蓝色。  
你最喜欢的颜色是什么  
我最喜欢红色。  
妈妈，这是什么颜色?  
这是深/浅褐色。  
如果我们把黄色和蓝色搅拌一起的话，  
会出现什么颜色?  
对！当我们混合黄色和蓝色就会变成绿色。  
什么颜色是暖色/冷色?



White,black,and gray are not colorful. / White, black, and gray have no hue.  
Mom, I like the colors of the rainbow.  
Red, yellow, and blue are the three primary color.  
Can you find something purple in our house?  
What color do you want this to be? / What color do you want for this?  
I want to color this pink.

白色、黑色和灰色都不鲜艳。  
妈，我喜欢彩虹的颜色。  
红色，黄色和蓝色是三原色。  
你能在家中找出紫色的东西吗？  
你想要把这个涂成什么颜色？  
我想把这个涂成粉红色。

## CHAPTER31-02数字

Let's learn numbers in English.  
Let's read up to ten.  
Can you count from one to ten?  
Can you count after / more than 10?  
Let's count by tens.  
Wow, you know how to say "100" in English?  
How many eyes does Mom have?  
You have two eyes.  
How many apples are on the plate?  
There are five apples.  
Let's see who has more marbles.  
I have more. / I'm the one who has more.  
I have seven marbles, and Jina has five.  
The numbers are different when counting the order.  
We use ordinal numbers to see which comes first.  
The desk has five drawers, right?  
Open the third drawer of the dresser.

我们来用英文学习数字。  
我们从一读到十吧。  
你能从一数到十吗？  
你能数十以上的数字吗？  
我们以十为单位来数。  
哇，你知道怎么用英文说“100”？  
妈妈有几只眼睛？  
你有两只眼睛。  
盘子上有几颗苹果？  
有五颗苹果。  
我们来看看谁的弹珠多。  
我的更多。  
我有七颗弹珠，吉娜有五颗。  
当我们数顺序时，数字的形式是不一样的。  
当我们看是哪个先的时候，使用序数。  
这个桌子有五个抽屉，对吧？  
打开化妆台的第三个抽屉。

## CHAPTER31-03图形

What shape is a book?  
It's a rectangle.  
What shape is a coat hanger?  
It's a triangle.  
What shape is colored paper?  
It's a square.  
What shape is a button?  
It's a circle.  
A circle has no points and no sides.  
Can you see something round in the room?  
The clock is round.  
A can is in the shape of a cylinder.  
A ball is a sphere.  
What shape is an ice cream cone?  
It's a cone.  
A dice is a cube.

书是什么形状？  
是长方形。  
大衣衣架是什么形状？  
是三角形。  
彩色纸是什么形状？  
是正方形。  
纽扣是什么形状？  
是圆形。  
圆没有端点，也没与边。  
你能在房间内看到圆形的东西吗？  
时钟是圆形的。  
罐头是圆柱体。  
球是球体。  
冰淇淋是什么模样？  
这是圆锥体。  
骰子是立方体。

## CHAPTER31-03-tips

circle

圆形



square  
rectangle  
triangle  
cone  
cube  
cylinder  
pyramid  
plane figure  
solid figure

正方形  
长方形  
三角形  
圆锥体  
立方体  
圆柱，圆筒  
角锥体  
平面图形  
立体图形

### CHAPTER31-04大小

The elephant is big, but the bunny is little.  
Dad is big, but you are small.  
The pencil is long, but the eraser is short.  
The building is high, but the house is low.  
Who is taller, you or Daddy?  
My sweet baby is smaller than his dad.  
Mom's hand is bigger than yours.  
My desk is larger than your desk.  
This street is narrower / wider than that one.  
Let's see how long this is. Use this ruler.

大象很大，兔子很小  
爸爸很大，但你很小。  
铅笔很长，但橡皮擦很短。  
大楼很高，但平房很矮。  
你和爸比，谁比较高？  
我的甜心宝贝比爸爸矮。  
妈妈的手比你大。  
我的书桌比你的大。  
这条街比那条窄/宽。  
我们来看看这与多长。用这把尺子量。

### CHAPTER31-05身体

Do you know the body parts in English?  
This is the head, and this is the face.  
What do we have on our faces?  
We have a nose, mouth, eyes, and ears.  
We also have eyebrows, eyelashes, a chin, and cheeks.  
Show me your arms and legs.  
Mom, I look at my fingers and toes.  
Where's your tummy and belly button?  
Turn your arms around.  
Where is your elbow?  
Stretch out your legs.  
Bend your knees and sit on the floor.  
Stomp your foot like this.  
Shake your hips, Honey.  
Mom's hips are huge!

你知道身体各部位的英文吗？  
这是头，这是脸。  
我们的脸上有什么？  
有鼻子、嘴巴、眼睛和耳朵。  
我们也有眉毛、眼睫毛、下巴和脸颊。  
让我看你的手臂和腿。  
妈，看我的手指和脚趾头。  
肚子和肚脐在哪里？  
转动一下你的手臂。  
你的手肘在哪里？  
伸出你的双腿。  
弯下膝盖坐在地板上。  
像这样跺脚。  
宝贝，摇动你的屁股。  
妈的屁股很大！

### CHAPTER31-06动物/植物

There are two kinds of animals: plant eaters and meat eaters.  
Human beings are animals, too.  
Tigers, rabbits, and dogs are mammals.  
They give birth to babies and breast-feed them.  
Birds have wings and lay eggs.  
Fish have gills and live in the water.

动物分为两种：草食性和肉食性。  
人类也是动物。  
老虎、兔子和狗是哺乳动物。  
它们生出小孩，并且给他们喂奶。  
鸟有翅膀，还会生蛋。  
鱼有鱼鳃，住在水里。





Reptiles like alligators are covered with scales and lay eggs.

Frogs and toads are amphibians.

They live both in water and on land.

Animals with wings and six legs are called

Insects like beetles, flies, and cicadas are animals, too.

What is the difference between an animal and a plant?

Animals move, but plants do not move.

Yes, that's right. Animals can move by themselves, but plants can't do that.

Animals and plants are living things.

Mom, what about worms? Are they animals, too?

Worms also move, so they are animals.

Trees and flowers are called plants.

Plants have three parts: roots, stems, and leaves.

The roots hold the plant strongly in the soil.

Plants make food in their leaves.

Plants need sunlight and water to grow.

爬虫类如短吻鳄全身用鳞片覆盖，也会生蛋。

青蛙和蟾蜍是属于两栖类。

它们可以住在水里及陆地。

有翅膀，还有六双脚的动物叫作昆虫。

甲虫、苍蝇和蝉等昆虫也是动物。

动物和植物的差别是什么？

动物可以动，但植物不会动。

是的，对哦，动物可以自己移动，但是植物却不行。

动物和植物都是生物。

妈妈，寄生虫呢？他们也是动物吗？

寄生虫也可以动，所以它们也是动物。

树和花叫做植物。

植物有根、茎和叶三部分。

根在土里紧紧地抓住植物。

植物用它们的叶子制造养分。

植物需要阳光和水才能成长。

## CHAPTER31-07日期

The calendar shows the date.

There are 12 months in a year.

A month has 30 or 31 days.

Today is the sixth of August.

Then what was the date yesterday?

It was August fifth.

Then what will be the date tomorrow?

It will be August seventh.

What date will it be five days from today?

What did you do the day before yesterday?

We have dinner plans the day after tomorrow.

There are two types of calendars: the lunar calendar and the western calendar.

February 7 is your birthday on the western calendar.

日历显示日期。

一年有12个月。

一个月有30天或31天。

今天是8月6日。

那么，昨天是几号？

8月5日。

那么，明天是几号？

8月7号。

五天后是几号？

前天你做了什么？

后天我们有晚餐的计划。

日历有两种形态：阴历以及西历(即阳历)

2月7日是你的阳历生日。

## CHAPTER31-07-tips说说日期

month

月

January

一月

February

二月

March

三月

April

四月

May

五月

June

六月

July

七月

August

八月



September

九月

October

十月

November

十一月

December

十二月

nineteen ninety-four

1994

two thousand eleven

2011

March third / the third of March

三月三日

## CHAPTER31-08星期

There are 7 days in a week.

一星期有七天。

From Monday to Friday are the weekdays.

从星期一到星期五是平日。

We call Saturday and Sunday the weekend.

我们把星期六和星期日叫做周末。

What day is it today?

今天是星期几?

Today is Thursday.

今天是星期四。

Yesterday was Wednesday.

昨天是星期三。

Tomorrow will be Friday.

明天是星期五。

What day comes after Monday?

星期一之后是星期几?

It's Tuesday.

是星期二。

I like Friday the most because I can rest the next day.

我最喜欢星期五，因为隔天我可以休息。

Monday is the busiest day.

星期一是最忙的一天。

## CHAPTER31-09时间

There are 24 hours in a day.

一天有24小时。

The clock shows only 12 hours.

时钟只显示12个小时。

So the hour hand goes around two times a day.

因此，时针一天跑两圈。

The short hand tells you the hour on the clock.

时钟的短针告诉你几点。

The long hand tells you the minute.

长针告诉你几分。

When the hour hand points to 1 and the minute hand points to 12, it's 1 o'clock.

当时针指在1，而分针指在12的时候，就是1点。

1 hour is 60 minutes.

一个小时有60分钟。

1 represents 5 minutes, and 2 represents 10 minutes.

1代表5分钟，而2代表10分钟。

It's like skip counting by 5s.

这好像以每五分钟来简略计算。

One second is equal to one blink of an eye.

一秒跟眼睛眨一下的时间差不多。

60 seconds are equal to 1 minute.

60秒就是1分钟。

AM is the morning, and PM is the midday and evening.

AM是早上，PM是下午和晚上。

What time is it now?

现在几点?

It's four forty-five.

4点45分。

It's fifteen to three.

还有15分，就3点了。

## CHAPTER31-10季节

Which season do you like the most?

你最喜欢哪一个季节?

I love spring the most.

我最喜欢春天。

We have four seasons in a year.

我们一年有四个季节。

In spring, the flowers bloom, and the green sprouts bud.

春天花会开，种子会发芽。

Summer is hot, and the trees are thick with

夏天很热，树的叶子很茂密。



Storms and the rainy season come during summer.  
During fall, trees change their colors to red, yellow, and orange.  
Winter is cold, and sometimes snow falls.  
It's August. What season are we in?  
The season is summer.  
Not all countries have four seasons.  
School starts in the spring.  
We all go on vacation in the summer.  
My school has a sports day in the fall.  
I love the long vacation in the winter.

暴风 and 雨季在夏天来临。

在秋天，树木的颜色会变换成红色、黄色和橙色。

冬天很冷，偶尔还会下雪。

现在是八月。我们在哪个季节？

现在的季节是夏天。

不是所有的国家都有四季。

学校在春天开学。

我们都会在夏天放假。

我的学校在秋天举办运动会。

我喜欢冬天的长假。

## CHAPTER31-11位置

There is a ball under the table.  
There is a cup on the desk.  
There is an eraser inside the pencil case.  
The doghouse is outside the house.  
Your cell phone is in front of your bag.  
Your cell phone is under the book.  
Look at the bottom right of the book.  
Look at the top left on the screen.  
There is a big department store across the street.  
There is a stationery store near our school.  
The supermarket is next to the hair salon.  
The supermarket is between the bank and the bookstore.  
There is the police station to the right of the library.  
There is a bakery to the left of the school entrance.

桌子的下面有球。

书桌的上面有杯子。

铅笔盒里面有橡皮擦。

狗屋在房子外面。

你的手机在你的包包前面。

你的手机在书的下面。

看一下书的右下端。

看一下书面的左上端。

对街有一家大型百货公司。

我们学校附件有文具店。

超市在美容院旁边。

超市在银行和书店之间。

图书馆的右边是警察局。

学校正门的左边是面包店。

## CHAPTER31-12职业

What do you do, sir?  
I'm a firefighter.  
I'm a doctor.  
I'm a dentist.  
I'm a policeman.  
I'm a mail carrier, so I deliver letters.  
Your grandfather was a fisherman.  
Your uncle is a farmer.  
There are a lot of different jobs in the world.  
Every job is important.

先生，你是做什么的？

我是个消防员。

我是医生。

我是牙科医生。

我是警察。

我是邮差，所以我要送信。

你的爷爷是渔夫。

你叔叔是农夫。

世界上有很多不一样的职业。

所有的职业都很重要。

## CHAPTER31-12职业-职业的种类

bank teller  
store owner  
vet(=veterinarian)  
secretary

银行员  
店长  
兽医  
秘书



photographer  
student  
teacher  
taxi driver  
scientist  
singer  
painter  
principal  
clerk  
nurse  
pilot  
actor/actress  
astronaut  
public servant

摄影家  
学生  
老师  
计程车司机  
科学家  
歌手  
画家  
校长  
店员  
护士  
飞机驾驶员  
电影演员  
太空人  
公务员

## CHAPTER32各科目的基础表现

### CHAPTER32-01英文发音

What is 10 plus 3?  
The sum is 13.  
Look at all these letters of the alphabet!  
Let's sing the alphabet song together.  
Each letter has a different sound.  
When we put some letters together, we can make words.  
See? I have a "c", "a", and "t". What is this?  
It's "CAT."  
t, t, t... The letter "t" sounds like /t/.  
How does the letter "a" sound?  
Let's listen to a short "a" sound.  
I'll say a long "a", and you say it after me.  
What letter should come between "c" and "t" to make "cat"?  
If we change the "c" to "b", what word do we have?  
It's "BAT".  
Let's read the word on the back of the card.  
Let's find the word with the /æ/ sound from the cards.  
Sometimes two letters make just one sound.  
The "s" and "h" make a /ʃ/ sound like in "ship".  
But this single letter has two different sounds.  
The letter "g" sounds like the /g/ in "go" or the /ʒ/ in "gel",  
When "k" comes before "n", it is silent.

10加3等于什么?  
总和是13.  
看这些英文字母!  
我们一起来唱英文字母歌。  
每个字母都有不同的发音。  
当我们把某些字母放在一起，就会变成单词。  
看？我有c, a, t。这是什么？  
这是“CAT, 猫。”  
t, t, t, 字母t的发音是t。  
字母a的发音是什么？  
我们听听看短音的a。  
我发出a的长音后，你跟着我唸唸看。  
c和t之间要出来什么字母，才会变成cat?  
如果我们将c变成b，那我们会得到什么单字？  
这是“BAT, 蝙蝠。”  
我们唸一下卡片后面的单字。  
我们找找看卡片中有哪个字发/æ/的音。  
有些时候，两个字母会只发一个音。  
s和h一起时，发 /ʃ/。如“SHIP, 船。”  
不过，这个单一字母有两种不同的发音。  
字母“g”在go的发音是/g/, 在gel中则发/ʒ/。  
k在n的前面时，不发音。





Look for the words that begin with the same sound.

Let's look for the word that starts with an /e/ sound.

Why don't you look for some words that rhyme with each other?

找找看开头发音相同的单词。

我们来找以/e/音开头的单词。

找出彼此互相押韵的单词吧？

## CHAPTER32-02数学

What's 3 plus 2?

3 plus 2 equals 5.

Look! 2 more birds came. How many birds are there in all?

There were 3 birds already. So there are 5 birds all together.

If we write it in a number sentence, it's  $3+2=5$ .

5 is 2 more than 3.

加法

3加2是多少？

3加2等于5。

看！多来了2只鸟。一共有多少只鸟？

原本有3只，所以总共有5只。

如果我们写成数学公式的话。就是 $3+2=5$ 。

5是2加上3。

减法

5减去2是多少？

5减去2等于3。

这里有5只鸟，不过飞走了3只，还剩多少只鸟呢？

从5那里拿掉3，现在还剩2只鸟。

我们把它写成公式吧。这就是 $5-3=2$ 。

我从5个苹果中拿走2个。那还剩下多少个？

我再多给你3个苹果。那你现在有多少个？

2比5小多少？

3比5少多少？

2比5少3。

乘法

3乘2是多少？

读读这个乘法公式。

3乘2等于6。

我有两组三支铅笔的组合。我有多少铅笔？

有6根。这个3加3是一样的。

除法

6除以2是多少？

读读这个除法公式。

6除以2等于3

把六支铅笔平均分给两个小孩，每个人可以有几支？

把6除以2的话，每个小孩可以有3支铅笔。

分数

What's 3 times 2?

Read this multiplication sentence.

3 times 2 equals 6.

I have 2 sets of 3 pencils. How many pencils do I have?

Six pencils. It's the same as 3 plus 3.

What's 6 divided by 2?

Read this division sentence.

6 divided by 2 equals 3.

Two kids will share 6 pencils equally. How many pencils can each have?

Each kid can have 3 pencils because 6 is divided by 2.



If I is equally divided by 3, each part is called one third.

It's read one fourth

Is it smaller than 1 ?

Let's cut this bread into 3 pieces. What do you call one piece?

One part is one third.

The fraction sentence looks like this .

### CHAPTER32-03科学 - 天体

it's midday. How do you know that ?

Because the sun is in the sky.

The sun gives us light and heat .

Without the sun, no living things could live.

It's dark at night. What do you see in the sky?

We can see the moon in the night sky.

Let's see how the moon changes its shape.

There are a full moon, a half moon, and a crescent moon.

What else can we see in the night sky?

We can see lots of stars.

Why don't we try finding the Big Dipper ?

### CHAPTER32-04科学 - 环境

Mom, what's recycling ?

It's when we try to use old things again.

We can recycle glass bottles to use them again.

Don't use too much shampoo.

It is said that we're running out of clean water.

You're wasting too much water.

We should save water by trying to use less.

It's not easy to breathe in the city.

Smoke from cars is polluting the air.

Bikes don't pollute the air.

When we ride our bikes, we can reduce our carbon footprint.

The Earth is sick now. We need to protect it.

Let's talk about our town.

There are houses, streets, and lots of buildings.

Let's draw a map of our town.

Tell the others something nice about our town.

What do we need more of for our town?

What are some differences between the city and the country?

There are many people living in the city

What is nice about living in the country / city?

What are some problems with living in the city / countryside?

如果把1平均地分成3块的话，每块就叫做3分之1.

这个读做4分之1.

这比1小吗？

我们把面包切成3块。一块叫做什么呢？

一块是3分之1.

分数的公式看起来像这样。

现在是正午，你怎么知道的呢？

因为天上有太阳。

太阳带给我们光和热

如果没有太阳，所有的生命都不能存活。

晚上很暗，你在天空上看到什么？

我们在夜空上看到月亮

我们看看月亮怎样变化模样。

有满月、半月和新月。

我们在夜空上还能看到什么？

我们能看见很多星星。

来找找北斗七星吧？

妈，什么是回收？

回收是我们试着再使用旧东西。

我们可以回收玻璃瓶后，再次使用。

不要用太多洗发精。

有人说干净的水快被我们消耗光了。

你浪费太多水了。

我们应该试着少用点水来节省水资源。

在城市连呼吸都不容易。

汽车排放的黑烟污染了空气。

脚踏车不会污染空气

我们骑脚踏车的话，可以减少碳足迹。

现在地球生病了，我们需要保护它。

我们来谈谈我们的城镇吧。

这里有房子、街道和很多建筑物。

我们来画我们镇上的地图。

跟别人说说我们镇上的优点。

我们的城外镇还需要些什么呢？

城市跟乡村的不同之处是什么？

城市里住着很多人。

住在乡下/城市的话，有什么好处？

住在城市/乡下的话，会有什么问题呢？



Can you remember when you went to the countryside?  
What are some jobs that are found in the city?  
My uncle is a farmer who lives in the countryside  
A fisherman catches fish and then sends them to the city .  
Miners are getting smaller in number

你记得什么时候去过乡下吗?  
在城市里可以找到哪些工作?  
我叔叔是住在乡下的农夫。  
渔夫抓到鱼后，把它们送到城市。  
矿工的人数越来越少。

## CHAPTER32-05体育

Let's have our PE class now.  
You'd better wear your gym clothes in PE class.  
I also want to wear my running shoes.  
Cool! Everyone, come out to the field.  
We will start with some warmup exercises.  
Stretch your arms and legs like this.  
We will divide into two teams and play a game.  
Let's have a race.  
Line up at the starting line.  
Run around the field one time.  
I will record your running time.  
Try your best.  
We do cool-down exercises at the end of PE.

我们现在来上体育课吧。  
上体育课的时候，你最好穿上体育服。  
我也想穿我的慢跑鞋。  
太棒了！大家都去运动场吧！  
我们从热身运动开始。  
像这样伸展你的手臂跟腿。  
我们分成两队进行比赛。  
我们来赛跑吧。  
请站在起跑线上。  
跑运动场一圈。  
我会记录你跑的时间。  
尽力跑。  
体育时间结束时，我们来做缓和运动。

# CHAPTER 33 要不要读英文故事书

## CHAPTER33-01选英文童话书

Do you want me to read you a book?  
Sure. This book looks fun.  
Okay, so what are we going to read today?  
I want to choose it by myself.  
I want you to pick for me, Mommy.  
Bring any book that you want to read.  
How many books are we going to read?  
Mom, I want you to read to me tonight.  
Why don't we take turns?  
I will read one book to you, and you read one book to me.  
Can I read this book instead of an English one?  
Then I will read you one English book and two books.  
Mom, I like the drawings in this book.  
I like books by this author very much.  
There are too many words in this book.  
I never get tired of reading this book.  
You have read that book too many times.  
Why don't you try to read some other books, too?  
It's fun every time I read it.

你希望我念一本书给你听吗?  
好的，这本看起来有趣。  
好，今天我们要读什么书?  
我想要自己选。  
妈，我想要你帮我选。  
把你读的书拿过来。  
我们要读几本书?  
妈，今晚你念书给我听。  
我们何不轮流读呢?  
我读一本给你听，你也读一本给我听。  
我可以读这本书代替读英文书吗?  
那么，我念一本英文书和两本书给你听。  
妈，我喜欢这本书的图画。  
我很喜欢这位作者写的书。  
这本书的字太多了。  
这本书再怎么读都不会烦。  
那本书你已经读太多次了。  
为什么你不试着也读一些其他的书呢?  
每次读，我都觉得很有趣。



This book looks fun.  
Wow, the cover looks pretty. How about this book?  
That book again?  
Is this book that much fun?  
You chose a book that mommy really likes.  
This book is too hard / difficult.  
Hmm, this book is for babies.  
Why don't you choose another one?  
Look at all the books that you brought!  
I'm going to lose my voice.

这本书看起来很有趣。  
哇，封面很漂亮，这本书怎么样？  
又是那本书？  
这本书有那么有趣吗？  
你选了一本妈咪真的很喜欢的书。  
这本书太难了。  
嗯，这是给小婴儿读的书。  
你为什么不选其他本呢？  
看你拿了这么多的书！  
我快失去声音了。

### CHAPTER33-02讲故事

Now I am going to tell you the story of this book.  
What is the title?  
This book's title is The Elves and the shoemaker.  
The authors are the brothers Grimm, and the illustrator is Hannah.  
Let's look at the cover first. What do you see?  
I see an old man, some shoes, and elves, too.  
so what do you think will happen in the story?  
Let's find out!  
Look more closely at the pictures.  
I know that story.  
Let's check if this story is one you already know  
What will happen on the next page?  
Look at the picture. What do you think is happening?  
I think the bird will fly away.  
Really? I'll read and see if your guess is correct.  
Bingo! What you said was actually right.  
Now, we are done reading the book. Did you guys like it?  
Yes. Read it again, please!  
Which part was the most interesting?  
It was so fun /sad /boring.  
I like when the paper Bag Princess kicked the prince.

现在，我要跟你讲这本书的故事了。  
书名是什么？  
这本书的书名是《小精灵和鞋匠》。  
作者是格林兄弟，插画家是汉娜。  
我们先看封面。你看到什么？  
我看到一个老人、一些鞋子和精灵。  
那么，你觉得会发生什么故事呢？我们来找出来吧！  
把图看得更仔细一点。  
我知道那个故事。  
我们来确定一下这个故事是不是你已经知道了。  
下一页，会发生什么事呢？  
看一下图，你觉得正在发生什么事情呢？  
我想那鸟要飞走了  
真的吗？我来读读看你的猜测对不对。  
结果！你说的是正确的。  
现在，我们读完这本书了。你们喜欢吗？  
是的，请再读一次！  
哪一个部分最有趣呢？  
太有趣/伤感/无聊了。  
我喜欢纸袋公主踹王子的那一段。

### CHAPTER33-03大声朗读

Let's try reading it out loud.  
You can read it slowly.  
I will read this page, and you read the other side.  
I think I have a sore throat from reading.  
Your voice does not have to be very loud.  
As long as you can hear yourself, it's fine.  
I can't hear you at all.  
It's okay if you get it wrong. I will help you.

我们大声念出来吧。  
你可以慢慢地念。  
我念这一页，你念它的另一面。  
我念完之后，觉得喉咙痛。  
你的声音不需要太大声。  
只要你自己能听得到就好。  
我根本就听不到你念的声音。  
错了也没关系，我会帮你。





I want you to repeat after me as I read line by line.  
I don't know how to read this word.  
I can't really pronounce it.  
Try to sound it out. It starts with an "l".  
I will record it and let you listen to it .  
If you keep on practicing, you will get better for sure. /Practice makes perfect.  
If I can't read, I want you to help me

当我一行一行的念，我希望你跟着复诵。  
我不知道这个字怎么念。  
我发不出这个音。  
你试着发音看看，从[l]开始。  
我帮你录起来给你听。  
如果你持续练习的话，你一定会念得更好。  
如果我念不出来，请帮我。

### CHAPTER33-04 安静阅读

I don't want to read the book out loud.  
Well, then today you can read silently.  
But you still have to read it thoroughly.  
Mom, I want the house to be quiet.  
Mom, I finished reading one book already.  
Wow, you read that fast?  
Is there anything that you didn't understand while you were reading ?  
You can always ask me.  
Even if you don't know some words, just keep on reading.  
At the beginning, you might find it hard to read books silently.  
You will get used to it very soon.  
Pay attention to the pictures, too. They all look interesting.  
Think about what the story is about as you are reading the book.  
It seems like you're not paying attention.

我不想要朗读这本书。  
那么，今天你就静静地读吧。  
不过你还是必须把它读完。  
妈，我希望房间保持安静  
妈，我已经读完一本了。  
哇，你读得那样快？  
你读的时候，有什么不懂的地方吗？  
你随时都可以问我。  
就算有些字你不懂，也要继续读下去。  
刚开始，你或许会发现很难安静地读书。  
你很快就会习惯。  
你也要好好看图，它们看起来都很有趣。  
你一边读的时候，要一边想这是关于什么的故事。  
你好像没有集中精神。

### CHAPTER33-05 理解单字的意思

Is there any word that you don't know on this page?  
Do you remember this word?  
I remember seeing this word in another book.  
Oh! I know that word! I've heard it.  
Is this your first time to see this word?  
Let's take a look at the new words once more.  
Should we mark the words that you learned today?  
Mommy will write the words on the blackboard.  
What does it mean in the story, Mom?  
Try to guess its meaning.  
Try to guess its meaning by looking before and after the word.  
Let's look it up in the dictionary.  
Do you want to look it up in the dictionary?  
That word means "strong".

在这页，你有不懂的单字吗？  
你记得这个字吗？  
我记得这个字在其他书中也出现过。  
喔！我知道那个字！我曾经听过。  
这是你第一次看到这个字吗？  
我们在看一次新的单字  
我们要标记一下你今天学的单字吗？  
妈妈会在黑板上写下这引起单字。  
妈，它在故事里面是什么意思？  
试着猜它的意思。  
透过这个单字的前后文猜猜它的意思。  
我们用字典查一下。  
你想要用字典查吗？  
那单字的意思是【强壮】。



Try to think about what the word might mean one more time.

Mom, its meaning is different from what I learned before.

The word has several meanings.

再想一想这个单字可能是什么意思。

妈，那个意思跟我之前学的不一样。

这个单字有几种意思。

### CHAPTER33-06描述故事情节

Who is the main character of the story?

The main characters are Hansel and Gretel.

What is the kid doing, and where is he doing it ?

Why did he act that way ?

What happened in the beginning?

Why did that happen?

What happened in the middle of the story?

Now let's see the results of that action.

How would he have felt in this situation?

What would you have done if that were you ?

I don't think I would have done that if I were him.

After that, what happened?

What do you think will happen in the end?

What happened at the end of the story?

How would you like the story to end ?

How is the problem solved?

The main character overcame the difficulty / challenge.

The problem was solved when they found the lost key.

I'm so relieved that the story ended happily.

这个故事的主人公是谁？

主人公是什Hansel和Gretel。

那个小孩在做什么，他是在哪里做？

为什么他那样做？

刚开始，发生了什么事？

为什么会发生那样的事？

故事的中间发生了什么事？

现在，我们来看看那样做的结果。

这样的情况下，他的心情如何/

如果是你的话，你会怎么做？

如果我是他的话，我想我不会那样做。

接下来，发生了什么事？

你觉得最后会怎样发展？

故事的最后发生了什么事/

你希望故事怎样结束？

问题是如何解决的？

主人公克服了困难/挑战。

当他们找到遗失的钥匙，问题就解决了。

我很欣慰是个幸福的结局。

### CHAPTER33-07谈谈登场人物

Let's see what characters are in this book.

An animal is the main character of this book.

What is the girl doing?

Why was the boy mad in this part?

What kind of person is he?

Who do you like the most? / Who is your favorite character?

I like Kipper the most.

How old is Arthur?

Mom, Nate always eats pancakes.

How come the fly talk?

Well, in books, animals can talk with one another.

Mom, I think this boy is really silly.

Mom, where is this child's mother?

Does he/she live alone?

How come the princess is so ugly?

There are several main characters in this book.

我们看看这本书有什么角色

动物是这本书的主人公

那个女孩在做什么

这一段，为什么男孩生气了？

他是个怎么样的人？

你最喜欢谁？

我最喜欢Kipper。

Arthur几岁了？

妈，Nate总是吃薄煎饼。

苍蝇为何能说话？

嗯，在书中动物可以彼此交谈。

妈，我觉得这男孩真傻。

妈，这孩子的妈妈在哪里？

他/她一个人生活吗？

公主怎么会那么凶呢？

这本书有好几位主人公。



I think DW is more like the main character than Arthur.

What does the main character look like?

What did the main character do?

Where, and with whom, does the main character live?

How did his feelings change throughout the book?

我想DW比Arthur更像主人公。

主角看起来像什么？

主角做了什么？

主角在哪里，和谁住在一起？

随着故事的发展，他的心情是怎么改变的？

## CHAPTER33-08听CD

Please listen carefully.

Concentrate and listen to the story.

You will hear a story from the CD.

Look at the words as you are listening to it.

You can point to the words with your finger while listening.

Okay, I'll play the CD then.

Think about the story while you are listening.

I want to listen to it one more time.

Can you play the last few seconds again? / Can you play that last minute again?

Can you go back and play the last track?

Mom, can you stop the CD for a minute?

I don't know where to read because the person is speaking too fast.

Turn the page. It's on the middle part.

It's the 5th line from the bottom / top.

The voice sounds really funny. Haha!

It's too difficult. I want to listen to a different one.

I want you to read the book to me.

Do you want me to put the headphones on you?

Are you doing fine listening to the story?

Mommy finds this part to be the most fun, too.

You missed that part.

请仔细听。

集中精神听故事。

你会从CD中听到故事。

一边听一边看着这些字。

你可以边听边用手指头指着这些字。

好，那么我播放CD罗。

边听边想想看这是什么故事。

我想再听一次。

你能把最后的那几秒再播放一遍吗？

你能回去播放上一节吗？

妈，你能暂停一下CD吗？

那个人读得太快，我不知道该看哪里了。

翻这一页，这是中间的部分。

从下面/上面算来第五行。

那个声音真的很好笑。哈哈！

这太难了。我想听其他的。

我想要你念这本书给我听。

你想要我帮你戴耳机吗？

你在好好听故事吗？

妈咪也觉得这部分最有趣了。

你错过了那个部分罗。

## CHAPTER33-09阅读后的活动

How was the book?

It was moving / fun / just okay.

Was it too difficult for you?

I understood most of it.

I don't know what the story is about.

Do you want to talk about the story with Mommy?

Let's summarize the story together.

Mom, let me tell you what the story is about.

Do you want to try writing a book report?

Let's write a letter to the main character.

Why don't you and I do the role-playing activity together?

这本书如何？

很感动/有趣/一般。

对你来说，太难了吗？

我几乎都能懂。

我不知道故事内容是什么。

你想跟妈咪讲讲这个帮事吗？

我们一起来对这个故事作个简短的总结。

妈，我跟你说这个故事在讲什么。

你要讲着写读书心得吗？

我们写封信给主人公吧。

你要不要和我一起玩角色扮演？



Write in your reading log since you're done reading it.

I've read 200 books so far.

既然你都读完了，就写在阅读记录表上。

到目前为止，我读了200本书。

## CHAPTER34 观赏英文影片

### CHAPTER34-01选英文影片

Mom, it's time to watch a DVD!

Mom, can I watch a DVD?

What DVD do you want to watch today?

Want to watch the new one that we recently bought?

Why don't you pick one by yourself?

Please play *Caillou*.

I want to watch the *Magic School Bus*.

Do you want me to choose it for you?

You have watched it too many times.

Why don't you try to choose another one?

Can I see two DVDs today?

Well, you know that watching too much TV is not good for you.

Can I watch it again?

I want to watch the one that I saw yesterday.

It's my turn to choose the DVD because Minsu picked his favorite yesterday.

We'll watch the DVD for 30 minutes only. Okay?

I like the Disney animations the most.

I want the English subtitles.

Can I watch it with the subtitles on?

Let's watch it without any subtitles.

You can watch it this time only.

Well, let's stop here today.

妈，是看DVD的时间了！

妈，我可以看DVD吗？

今天你要看什么DVD？

你要看最近我们新买的那片吗？

自己选一片，如何？

请播放《Caillou》。

我要看《Magic School Bus》。

你要我帮你选吗？

那个你已经看过很多次了。

试着选其他的看，如何？

今天我可以看两片DVD吗？

哦，你知道看太多电视对你不好。

我可以再看一次吗？

我想看我昨天看的那一片。

因为昨天民肃选了他喜欢的，这次轮到  
我选DVD了。

我们只看30分钟的DVD，知道吗？

我最喜欢迪士尼的卡通了。

我要有英文字幕的。

我可以打开字幕看吗？

我们来看没有字幕的。

你只能看这一次。

嗯，我们今天就到这吧。

### CHAPTER34-02播放DVD

Mom, how do I play the DVD?

I will show you how, so watch carefully.

Let's try to control it with the remote control.

Place the DVD into the player.

Handle it by inserting your index finger into the center hole.

If DVDs get scratched, they can be broken.

Mom, I want to play the DVD by myself.

Okay, sure. Give it a try!

Put the lid back and push the play button.

Change the TV into "outside input" mode.

Mom, it does not work. / it's not working.

妈，我要怎么播放DVD？

我示范给你看，仔细看好。

我们试着用遥控器来操作。

把DVD放进播放器内。

把你的食指放入中间的洞来拿着。

如果DVD被刮伤了，它们会被弄坏。

妈，我想要自己播放DVD。

好，可以。你试试！

盖上盖子后，按下播放键。

把电视转到“外部输入”的模式。

妈，它不动耶。





I saw this part already. Please skip the movie to the next part.  
It's too loud. Please turn it down.  
Don't you think the sound is already too loud?  
I think this will be just right.  
Can you please turn the volume up a little?  
Do you want me to turn up the volume a little bit?  
If you listen to it that loud, your ears will get hurt.  
Press the stop button.  
When the disc stops spinning, we'll take it out.  
When you are finished, be sure to turn the TV and audio off.  
Put the DVD back into the case carefully.

我已经看过这部分了，请跳到下一部分。  
声音太大了。请转小声。  
你不觉得声音已经太大了吗？  
我想这刚刚好。  
你能把音量调大一点吗？  
你要我把音量调大一点吗？  
如果你听得那么大声，你的耳朵会受伤的。  
按下停止键。  
当光碟停止转动，我们就把它拿出来。  
当你看完时，一定要把电视和音响关掉。  
把DVD小心地放入盒子内。

## CHAPTER35 英文日记/读书心得

### CHAPTER35-01英文读书心得

The title of the book is *Thank You, Mr. Falker*.  
The author of the book is Patricia Polacco.  
The illustrator is Amanda Smith.  
The main character of the story is Trisha.  
The main characters are Trisha and Mr. Falker.  
The setting of the story is the 1950s.  
I like the story because Mr. Falker is a great teacher.  
My favorite part is when Trisha learns how to read with Mr. Falker.

这本书的书名是《Thank YOU, Mr. Falker》  
这本书的作者是Patricia Polacco。  
插画家是Amanda Smith。  
故事的主人公是Trisha。  
主人公是Trisha和Falker先生。  
故事的背景是1950年代。  
我喜欢这个故事，因为Falker先生是很优秀的老师。  
我最喜欢的部分是Trisha跟Falker先生学习怎样阅读。

### CHAPTER35-02英文日记

I will write a journal in English.  
I was so excited today.  
Playing tag was really fun.  
Today is such a fantastic day!  
I hope every day will be like today.  
I am so happy my mom bought me new pants.  
I was so happy that I jumped up and down.  
I will never forget today.  
I'm very happy because I got a perfect score on my test.  
I was laughing to death.  
It was my first time to ride on a train, and I felt amazing.  
I feel terrible.  
I'm really distressed.  
I fought with my friend.  
I lost my money.

我将要用英文写日记。  
今天我很兴奋。  
玩捉迷藏真的很有趣。  
今天这么棒的一天！  
我希望每天都可以像今天这样。  
我妈买了新的裤子给我，我好开心。  
我太开心了，所以我蹦蹦跳跳地。  
我绝对忘不了今天。  
因为我考试考了满分，所以我很开心。  
我笑死了。  
这次我第一次搭火车，我感到很惊奇。  
我心情很差。  
我真的很伤心。  
我和朋友打架了。  
我把钱弄不见了。



I got annoyed at everything.  
The toy that I like the most is broken.  
I am worried that I might not be able to get it fixed.  
A big kid hit me in the back at school.  
I had to force myself not to cry. / I tried not to cry very hard.  
I feel sorry for my brother because I got mad at him.  
I am very depressed because I got scolded by Mom.  
I was very sad because my friend moved away.  
I feel bad and sad about not winning the prize.  
I wanted to hit my sister so much.  
I could not go out today because of the rain.  
So many bad things kept happening today.  
My heart was aching so much because my fish died.

我对所有事情都感到很烦。  
我最喜欢的玩具坏了。  
我担心我可能无法把它修好。  
在学校有个高大的小孩打我的背。  
我必须强迫自己不要哭。/我试着不要哭太大声。  
我对我弟弟感到很抱歉，因为我对他发脾气了。  
我蜚常郁闷，因为我被妈妈责备了。  
因为我朋友搬家了，所以我很伤心。  
我对于没有得奖感到又伤心又难受。  
我真的很想打我姐姐。  
因为下雨，我今天不能出门。  
今天一直发生很多坏事。  
我的心很痛，因为我的鱼死了。

## CHAPTER36 孩子即将出生

### CHAPTER36-01宣布怀孕的消息

I have some really good news for you.  
Mom is having a baby!  
Mommy has a baby here.  
You will have a baby brother or sister soon.  
You're going to be a big sister.  
The baby will look exactly like you.  
Wow, am I going to be a big sister now?  
Now I have a baby brother!  
Now I have a baby sister!  
I have always envied my friends who have younger brothers / sisters.  
Are you going to play well with your baby brother or sister?  
I will be nice to the baby.  
I will share my toys with my brother or sister.  
Let's call Grandma and tell her the good news!

我有个好消息要告诉你。  
妈妈有小宝宝了！  
妈咪这里有小宝宝。  
你很快就会有个弟弟或妹妹了。  
你要当姐姐了。  
小孩会看起来跟你很像。  
哇！我现在要当姐姐了吗？  
现在，我也有弟弟了！  
现在，我也有妹妹了！  
我一直很羡慕有弟弟/妹妹的朋友。

你会跟你的弟弟或妹妹好好玩吧。

我会对小宝宝很好的。  
我会把我的玩具分给弟弟或妹妹玩。  
我们给奶奶打电话，告诉她这个好消息吧。

### CHAPTER36-02是妹妹？还是弟弟？

What's the baby's name?  
We haven't decided yet. Let's just call it Rabbit for now.  
The baby's pre-birth name is Button.  
Do you want a baby sister or brother?  
I want a pretty baby sister.  
What do you like for your baby brother's name?

小孩的名字是什么？  
我们还没有决定。现在我们先叫他“兔兔”吧。  
小宝宝的胎名是“纽扣”。  
你想要妹妹，还是弟弟？  
我想要美丽的妹妹。  
你想要你的弟弟叫什么名字？



I think Wensu will be a good name.  
I want to call him Wensu.  
Make sure you don't only love the baby. Okay?  
Both of you are our children, so I will love both of you equally.  
Of course! Mom loves Songjin the most. The baby is the next.  
Is there a baby inside Mummy's tummy?  
The baby will be growing in my tummy for the next ten months.  
So I need help from you from now on.  
Don't worry, Mom. I will help you out with all the hard work.

我想文宿是个好名字。  
我想叫他文宿。  
你保证不可以只疼小宝宝，好吗？  
你们两个都是我的小孩，所以你们两个我都爱。  
当然！妈妈最爱宋锦了，然后才是小宝宝。  
妈咪的肚子里有个小宝宝吗？  
接下来是个月小宝宝会在妈妈的肚子里面长大。  
所以，从现在起我需要你的帮忙。  
妈咪，不用担心，我会帮你做所有辛苦的事情。

### CHAPTER36-03谈预产期

I have to see my doctor for a regular checkup today.  
When is the baby due?  
How many days are left till the due date?  
Why isn't the baby coming out yet?  
Well, it's still far away.  
You have to wait a long time.  
It seems like he's /she's not ready to see the world.  
The baby will be born in a month.  
Fifteen days are left till the baby's due date.  
In a week or so, the baby will come out.  
It's almost time for the baby to come.  
In a few days, you will meet your baby brother.  
Tommorow is the due date for the baby.  
Well, the due date has passed, but the baby is still not coming out.  
I can't wait to see my baby brother.

我今天要去看医生做定期检查。  
小宝宝何时出来？  
离预产期还有多少天？  
为什么小宝宝还没出来？  
是呀，还久呢。  
你还要等一段时间。  
听起来，他\她还没有做好来世界的准备。  
小宝宝会在一个月后出生。  
离预产期还有15天。  
大约再过一周，小宝宝就要出来了。  
小宝宝出生的时间快到了。  
再过几天，你就会看到你的弟弟了。  
明天就是宝宝的预产期了。  
哎呀，预产期已经过了，但是小宝宝还是没有出来。  
我等不及跟我的弟弟见面了。

### CHAPTER36-04对肚子内的小宝宝说话

Hi, baby. This is your Mommy.  
Sweetie, do you hear Mommy's voice?  
Mummy and Daddy are so happy to have you.  
Whenever I think of you, I feel so happy.  
You are Mummy and Daddy's gift and joy.  
Mummy and Daddy can't wait to see you.  
You can't also wait to see Mummy and Daddy?  
Mummy is going to sing you a song.  
This is Mummy's favorite song. Listen to it.  
Mummy will read you a story.  
Mummy will tell you a story.  
Oh, Sweetie, you're kicking now! Wow, look at how strong you are.

嗨，小宝宝，我是妈咪。  
甜心，你听到妈妈的声音了吗？  
妈咪和爸比都很开心有了你。  
每当我想起你的时候，我都感到很幸福。  
你是妈妈和爸爸的礼物和喜悦。  
妈咪和爸比都很想快点儿见到你。  
你也等不及想见到妈咪和爸比吧？  
妈妈唱歌给你听。  
这是妈妈最喜欢的歌，好好听。  
妈妈读故事给你听。  
妈妈告诉你一个故事。  
喔，甜心，你现在在踢呢！哇，看看你多强壮啊！



Mommy is eating the delicious strawberries for you. Aren't they delicious?  
Mommy is listening to some beautiful songs now. Can you hear them?  
My dear baby brother, I can't wait to see you, too.  
When we meet, let's play soccer and some games together.  
I will take good care of you, I promise.  
When you come out. I will play with you every day.  
Don't give Mommy a hard time, Okay?  
Be nice to Mommy, dear brother!  
I look forward to seeing you very much!

妈妈为了你在吃很好吃的草莓。它们不是很好吃吗?

妈妈正在听好听的歌，你能听到吗?

亲爱的弟弟，我也迫不及待地想见你。

当我们见面后，我们一起踢足球和玩游戏吧。

我会好好照顾你的，我发誓。

你出生后，我会每天陪你玩。

不要让妈妈太辛苦，好吗?

要好好地对妈咪，亲爱的弟弟!

我非常期待见到你!

## CHAPTER36-05小宝宝的出生

I'm going to have our baby today. / I'm going to give birth today.  
Hi, my baby. I'm your Mommy.  
Did you have a hard time coming to see the world?  
You really, really did a good job.  
Mommy is very proud of you. Sweetie.  
You look so much prettier than Mommy imagined.  
You have no idea how much we were waiting to see you.  
Mommy and Daddy are so happy that you are a healthy baby.  
I really wanted to see you, my baby brother.  
I'm your big sister.

今天，我要去生小宝宝了。

你好，我的宝宝。我是妈妈。

你为了来看世界，辛苦了吧?

你真的，真的做得很好。

甜心，妈妈非常以你为荣。

你比妈妈想象得漂亮多了。

你不知道我们等了多久才见到你。

妈咪和爸比很高兴你是个健康的宝宝。

我的弟弟，我真的很想见到你。

我是你的姐姐。

## CHAPTER36-06双胞胎

The babies are identical twins.  
The babies are fraternal twins. / The twins look different from each other.  
Their eyes, nose, and lips all look the same.  
Both of them are so adorable!  
I can't tell who's who.  
Who do you think the younger one is?  
The baby who was born first is the older brother / sister.  
We will need two of everything.  
Mommy will have twice as hard a time taking care of the twins.  
It will be really nice if Jina can help Mommy.  
One of my friends is a twin, too.  
Let's celebrate the birth of the twins!  
We are now one family.

宝宝们是同卵双胞胎。

宝宝们是异卵双胞胎。

他们的眼睛，鼻子，嘴巴都看起来一模一样。

两个都很可爱。

我不能分辨他们是谁。

你觉得谁是弟弟?

先出生的宝宝是哥哥/姐姐。

每一样东西，我们都需要两份。

妈咪要照顾双胞胎，会加倍地辛苦。

如果吉娜能帮助妈妈，那就真的太好了。

我的朋友也是双胞胎之一。

我们来庆祝双胞胎的出生吧!

现在，我们是一家人了。





## CHAPTER37 孩子，有你真好！（0-12个月）

### CHAPTER37-01喂牛奶

It's time for some milk.  
Are you hungry? Do you want some milk,  
Okay, okay. Mommy will feed you very soon.  
Mommy will mix a bottle. Just wait for a second.  
Okay?  
Mummy will nurse you soon.  
I look like you prefer the breast to the bottle.  
Were you hungry? Drink the milk and grow well.  
Oh, that hurts. Don't bite Mommy!  
It is too hard to suck Mom's breast?  
Okay. We'll take a break for a second.  
Look at you! You are eating very well.  
Why don't you have a little bit more?  
Oh, you want to stop? Are you full now?  
Is too much milk coming out? You are coughing!  
The milk won't come out well? Sorry. My breast  
milk is not coughing!  
See how Mummy nurses our baby.  
You were just like this years ago.  
Okay, baby, now you need to burp.  
Let me help you burp.  
Mummy will gently pat your back.  
Wow, you did it!  
Gosh, you threw up!

该喝牛奶了。  
你饿了吗？甜心，你喝牛奶吗？  
好，好，妈咪马上喂你。  
妈妈这就调牛奶。稍等一下，知道吗？  
妈妈马上给你喂奶。  
看起来，比起用奶瓶喂，你更喜欢妈妈亲喂。  
你饿了吗？喝奶快快长大喔。  
啊，好痛，不要咬妈妈。  
吸母乳很难吧？  
好，我们休息一下。  
看看你！你很会吃喔！  
为什么你不再多吃一点呢？  
喔，你不吃了吗？你饱了吗？  
太多母乳出来吗？你在咳嗽！  
母乳出来的不顺吗？抱歉，我的母乳不太够。  
看妈妈怎样喂宝宝。  
几年前，你也是这样。  
好，宝宝，现在你需要打嗝。  
我来帮你打嗝。  
妈妈轻轻地拍你的背。  
哇，你做到了。  
哎呀，你吐了。

### CHAPTER37-02 换尿布

Oops! Your diaper is wet.  
Did you wet your diaper?  
Okay, baby, it's time to change your diaper.  
Let's see. Hmm...Is it wet?  
Oh, the diaper is still okay.  
Wow, your pooped a lot.  
Oh, you even made some poo-poo. It stinks!  
Your poop looks too watery. Was your tummy  
sick?  
Mummy didn't know you peed / pooped.  
Eeek! Let me take off the dirty diaper.  
Okay, stay still.  
Let's clean your hips with baby wipes. Wishy-  
washy!  
We also have to put some powder on.  
So, how do you feel now, Sweetie? Feel dry and  
fresh?  
Okay, now put your pretty hips upward.

喔！你的尿布湿了。  
你在尿布上尿尿了吗？  
好，宝贝，我们该换尿布了。  
让我们看看，嗯，湿了吗？  
喔，尿布还好。  
哇，你拉了很多便便。  
喔，你还便便了。好臭喔！  
你的便便看起来水水的。你肚子疼吗？  
妈咪不知道你尿尿/便便了。  
啊！让我把脏的尿布拿掉。  
好，不要动。  
我们用湿纸巾擦屁股。轻轻地擦。  
我们拍点粉在上面。  
好，甜心，现在你感觉如何？有没有感觉  
很干净清爽？  
好，现在把你的漂亮屁股抬高。



You want Mommy to massage your legs, Honey?  
Stretch~stretch! Mommy will give you a massage.  
Okay, now bend your knees. Then stretch them up!

Now let's put your pretty legs up toward the sky!

Now, let's put on a new diaper.

Yay! Your diaper has been changed. Feel great?

### CHAPTER37-03 洗澡

Hey, Sweetie, it's time for a bath.

Now, let's get rid of your clothes and your diaper, too.

Let's get into the tub.

Doesn't the water feel nice and warm? Or is it not warm enough?

Let's play with the toy duck. Quack, quack!

Why don't you paddle your feet? Splash! Splash!

Let's wash your hair first.

Mommy will make some bubbles with the shampoo.

Let's wash it with some clean water.

This slippery thing is called soap.

Now, let's wash your face and rub your body.

Do your eyes hurt?

Mommy will rinse it off quickly.

Okay, now let's wash off all the soap.

It's all done. Let me dry you off with a towel.

You are even prettier /more handsome after a bath.

Do you feel clean, baby?

Now that we have taken a bath, how do you feel?

### CHAPTER37-04 抱/背

Do you want me to hold you?

Do you want me to give you a piggy-back ride?

Come here, Sweetie. Let me give you a piggy-back ride.

Mommy will bring the baby strap.

Mummy will hold you with the baby carrier.

How is it? Are you comfortable?

Is there anything that's bothering you?

Just lean on Mummy.

Sweetie, do you like riding on Mummy's back?

Why don't you sleep on Mummy's back?

Can you hear Mummy's heartbeat?

Do you want to come down now?

Why don't you get down? Mummy's arms hurt.

Want to stay on Mummy's back for a little longer?

宝贝，你要妈咪帮你按摩腿吗？

把脚伸开！妈妈帮你按摩。

好，现在弯下膝盖。然后，把脚伸开。

现在，我们把你漂亮的双腿往天空抬起。

现在，我们来穿新的尿布。

耶！尿布换好了。感觉很棒吧？

嘿，甜心，要洗澡了喔。

现在，我们把衣服和尿布都脱了。

我们进浴缸里吧。

这水是不是又棒又温暖呢？还是不够热？

我们跟鸭子玩具一起玩吧。呱呱！

你何不用脚划水呢？划呀，划呀！

我们先洗头发吧。

妈妈把洗发精搓成泡泡。

我们用些干净的水来洗。

这个滑滑的东西叫做肥皂。

现在，我们来洗脸和身体。

眼睛很刺痛吗？

妈妈很快冲掉它。

好，现在我们来把肥皂洗掉。

都洗好了。我来用毛巾把你擦干。

洗完澡后，你变得更漂亮/帅了。

宝贝，你觉得干净吗？

现在我们洗完澡了，你觉得如何？

你要妈妈抱吗？

你要妈妈背吗？

甜心，过来，妈妈背你。

妈咪去拿婴儿背带。

妈咪用婴儿背带抱你。

怎么样？你觉得舒服吗？

有什么东西让你不舒服吗？

靠着妈妈就好。

甜心，你喜欢让妈妈背吗？

在妈妈的背上睡觉，好吗？

你能听到妈妈的心跳吗？

你现在想下来了么？

你何不下来呢？妈妈的手臂疼了。

你要在妈妈的背上多呆一会吗？



Okay, let me put you down now.

好，现在让你下来。

## CHAPTER37-04 抱/背-婴儿用品的名称

baby carrier

我们经常使用的婴儿背带，可以把婴儿固定在前面或后面。

baby sling

西洋式的婴儿背巾

baby car seat

婴儿汽车安全座椅，有时有手把，可以将婴儿提着走。

crib

婴儿床

baby stroller

婴儿推车

baby swing seat

婴儿用的摇摇椅

## CHAPTER37-05 哄宝宝睡觉

It's time for a nap.

该睡午觉了。

Why are you crying? Are you sleepy?

你为什么哭，你想睡了吗？

You are starting to whine.

你开始哀哀叫了。

Are you tired? I think it's time to sleep.

你累了么？我想你该睡觉了。

Come here. Mummy will put you to sleep.

来这里，妈咪哄你睡。

Do you want to lie beside Mom and sleep together?

你想躺在妈妈旁边一起睡吗？

Want to ride piggy-back while you try to sleep?

你想趴在妈妈的背上睡吗？

Do you want to ride in the stroller as you try to sleep?

你想坐在婴儿推车上睡吗？

Sleep tight for a while, Sweetie.

甜心，睡个好觉。

Do you want me to sing you a lullaby?

你想听我唱摇篮曲吗？

Go to dreamland as you listen to Mummy's

边听妈妈的摇篮曲，边进入梦乡吧。

A good girl / boy never gets peevish before sleeping.

乖小孩在睡觉前都不会生气哦。

You are so cranky tonight.

你今晚很烦躁。

Here's your pacifier.

你的奶嘴在这里。

You have to sleep so that you can grow.

你一定要睡觉，才能长大。

Sweetie, close your eyes now and sleep tight.

甜心，现在闭上你的眼睛，好好睡吧。

The more you sleep, the more you grow.

你越睡，就会越长。

You can meet Mummy in your dreams, Sweetie.

甜心，你会在梦里见到妈妈。

Wow, you sleep like an angel.

哇，你睡的样子像个天使。

## CHAPTER37-06 牙牙学语

Hey, you started babbling.

嘿，你开始学说话了！

You've been cooing all day long.

你一整天都在小声说话。

You keep gurgling. Are you feeling good?

你一直发出咯咯声。你的心情很好吗？

Right. That's right.

对，那样就对了。

Oh, sweet baby, do you want to talk?

喔，甜心，你想要说话吗？

You will be able to talk soon.

你很快就会说话了。

Look at Mommy and keep talking.

看着妈咪，继续说吧。

What are you saying? / What do you mean?

你在说什么？ / 那是什么意思？

Here we have a chatty baby.

我们有个多话宝宝。

Oh my, stop cooing now.

喔，现在不在嘀咕了。

Stop cooing and eat, Sweetie.

甜心，不要再嘀咕了，吃点东西。

Yay! It seems like you're feeling great.

耶！你看起来心情很好喔。

Arms waving. Legs kicking. Are you that happy?

手摇脚晃。你那么开心吗？



You look so excited. I'm excited to see you.

你看起来很兴奋。我看着也跟着兴奋起来。

### CHAPTER37-07哄在哭的小孩

Why do you keep on crying? What's bothering you?

你为什么一直在哭？什么在烦你呢？

What's wrong, honey?

宝贝，有什么问题吗？

I wonder what's going on ?

我想知道发生什么事了？

Okay, okay, Sweetie. Mommy's here.

好，好，甜心。妈咪在这里。

Stop! Stop crying, Sweetie.

停！不要哭了，甜心。

Is your diaper wet?

尿布湿了吗？

Are you sick? Let me check if you have a fever.

你生病了吗？我看看你有没有发烧？

Are you sleepy? Do you want to take a nap?

你困了吗？你想睡个午觉吗？

Are you hungry? Is that why you are crying?

你饿了吗？那是你为什么哭吗？

Do you want some milk?

你想要喝些奶吗？

Do you want me to give you a bottle?

你要我帮你泡一杯牛奶吗？

Please stop whining, baby.

宝贝，请不要再哀嚎了。

You're such a demanding baby.

你真是个难搞的宝贝。

If you keep on crying, a scary monster will come and get you.

如果你还一直哭的话，可怕的怪物就会来把你抓走。

### CHAPTER37-08翻身

You don't want to lie on your back?

你不要仰睡吗？

Do you want to roll over?

你想要翻身吗？

Are you going to turn over and move around?

你想要翻身移动一下吗？

Look at you! You are trying to turn yourself over.

看看你！你正努力翻身呢？

Okay, you are almost there. Try a little bit harder.

好，你几乎快做到了。再努力一点点。

Wow, you finally turned over by yourself!

哇，你终于靠自己翻身了。

Wow, you made it, baby!

哇，宝贝，你做到了！

It was pretty tough, wasn't it, Sweetie?

甜心，这很辛苦，不是吗？

Oh, no! Don't turn over while I am changing your diaper.

喔，我在帮你换尿布时，不可以翻身。

### CHAPTER37-09坐

Do you want to sit up?

你想坐起来吗？

Oh, you might fall down. Be careful!

喔，你会摔倒的。小心！

Now straighten your back and hold it strongly.

现在，挺直你的背，用力撑住。

You are sitting, sitting...sitting...

坐起来，坐起来、、坐起来、、

Ah, you were almost there.

喔，你几乎要做到了。

Are you tired now? Do you want to lie down again?

你现在累了吗？你想要再躺下来吗？

Will you sit in the baby walker?

你要不要坐学步车？

### CHAPTER37-10爬行

It's time for tummy time.

该趴一下了。

Oh my! You can push yourself up on your tummy.

喔，天呀！你能趴着用手把自己撑起来了。

Now you have learned how to crawl!

现在你学会了爬行！

Do you want to crawl?

你想爬吗？

Want to crawl to the front /back?

你想要往前/后爬吗？





Put a little more effort into it. There you go.  
You are using your knees to crawl.  
You are crawling with your knees up.  
Crawl over to Mommy.  
Okay, put more effort into it. Crawl to Mommy.  
You are crawling so well.  
You're crawling all over the house.  
Oh, no! This crawling baby touches everything.

再努力一点，就是那样。  
你在用你的膝盖爬。  
你抬起膝盖爬耶。  
爬向妈咪。  
好，再努力一点。爬向妈咪。  
你爬得很好。  
你满屋子爬。  
喔，不！这个爬来爬去的小捣蛋到处乱摸。

### CHAPTER37-11长牙的时候

Let me look in your mouth.  
Don't your gums feel itchy? / Your gums must be itching.  
Here's your teether.  
It seems like your baby teeth will come out.  
Congratulations! You're about to get your first teeth.  
Finally, your baby teeth are coming out!  
Hey, baby, you have teeth now!  
I see two front teeth on the bottom.  
I think you will have two front upper teeth soon.  
Mommy will brush your teeth, Sweetie.  
Mommy will massage you gums.  
Oh my! You drool too much, Honey.  
You've gotten a rash from all that drooling.

让我看看你的嘴巴里面。  
你的牙床不会痒痒的吗？/你的牙床一定很痒。  
这是给你要的玩具哦。  
看起来你的乳牙要长出来了。  
恭喜！你的第一颗牙齿要长出来了。  
终于，你的乳牙长出来了。  
嘿，宝贝，你现在有牙齿了！  
我看到在下面有两颗门牙。  
我想你很快就会有两颗在上面的门牙。  
甜心，妈咪帮你刷牙。  
妈妈帮你按摩牙床。  
喔！宝贝，你流太多口水了。  
你流这么多的口水，长疹子了。

### CHAPTER37-12抓着走路

Let's try standing up.  
Do you think you can stand up now, baby?  
Hold on to Mommy's hands.  
Okay, now we're standing up.  
Don't give up. You are almost there.  
That's right. You are doing great!  
Don't let go of Mommy's hands.  
Be careful. You might fall down.  
Oops, you fell down.  
Doesn't it hurt? Are you okay?  
Don't cry. It's all right. We'll try one more time.  
Now you are standing up!

我们试着站起来。  
宝贝，你想你现在能站得起来吗？  
抓住妈妈的手。  
好，现在我们站起来了。  
不要放弃。你快做到了。  
对。你做得很好！  
不要放开妈妈的手。  
小心。你可能会摔倒。  
喔，你摔倒了。  
不痛吗？你还好吗？  
不要哭。没事的。我们再试一次。  
现在你站起来了！

### CHAPTER37-13喂副食品

It's time for your meal, Sweetie.  
You must be hungry. Let's eat now.  
What will we have to eat today?  
It is very delicious vegetable porridge.  
Hmm. It smells nice, right?  
Look! Isn't the color so pretty?  
Say "Ah." Delicious, isn't it?

甜心，该吃你的饭饭了。  
你一定很饿了。我们现在就来吃吧。  
我们今天要吃什么呢？  
这是很美味的蔬菜粥。  
嗯，闻起来很棒，对吧？  
看！颜色很漂亮吧？  
说‘啊’。很好吃，不是吗？



Enjoy your meal, Honey.  
Don't forget to chew before you swallow.  
Wow, you can chew really well.  
You spilled some.  
You got food all over your face. Let me wipe it off for you.  
No, no! Don't eat food that has fallen on the floor.  
Come on. Spit it out.  
Why don't you have one more bite?  
You want some more?  
You don't want to eat anymore? Are you full now?  
You've spilled more food than you've actually eaten.  
My lovely baby is such a good eater!  
It seems like you've eaten enough.

宝贝，好好享受你的饭饭。  
在你吞下去之前，不要忘记咬一咬。  
哇，你能咀嚼的很好。  
你流出一些了。  
你满脸都是食物。我帮你擦掉。  
不，不！不要吃掉在地上的食物。  
来，吐出来。  
你要不要多吃一口。  
你想再多吃一些吗？  
你不想再吃了吗？现在你觉得饱了吗？  
你流掉的食物比你吃的食物还要多。  
我可爱的宝贝吃得很好。  
看起来你已经吃够了。

## CHAPTER38一天一天地长大

### CHAPTER38-01学走路

Okay, Sweetie, let's try walking now.  
Hold Mommy's hands.  
Okay, now take one step.  
Now one foot. Now the other.  
Good! You are doing really well.  
Now Mommy will let go of your hands.  
Do you think you can walk by yourself?  
It's okay to fall down.  
Mommy will hold you.  
Can you walk all the way up to Mommy?  
Easy! Easy does it!  
Oops, you fell down.  
Don't cry. It's all right. We can try one more time.  
You will walk very well if you practice a little bit more.  
Let's stop here for today.  
Yay! My Minsuo is finally walking!

好，甜心，我们现在试着走路。  
抓住妈妈的手。  
好，现在跨出第一步。  
一脚，再一脚。  
好！你真的做的很好！  
现在，妈妈要放开你的手了。  
你觉得你可以走吗？  
摔倒也没关系。  
妈咪会抓住你的。  
你能一直走到妈咪这边吗？  
慢一点！慢慢来！  
喔，你摔倒了。  
不要哭。没有关系。我们可以再试一次。  
。你要你再多练习一点，你就会走得很好。  
。今天我们就到这里结束吧  
耶！我的悯所终于走路了。

### CHAPTER38-02排便训练

Do you want to pee/poop?  
Do you want to go to the bathroom?  
Don't you feel like peeing?  
It's time to go pee with Mom.  
Pull down your underpants and sit on the potty.  
Since you are a boy, you have to stand when you pee.  
Did you pee on your pants?  
Did you need to go that badly?

你想要尿尿/ 便便吗？  
你想要去厕所吗？  
你想要尿尿吗？  
该跟妈妈去尿尿了  
拉下你的裤子，坐到马桶上。  
因为你是男生，所以你要站着尿尿。  
你尿在裤子上了吗？  
你需要那样急吗？



You should not hold it. You should go to the potty.  
If you pee anywhere, Mom will have a very hard time.

It's all right. You will do better next time.

When you feel like peeing, just call me.

You peed in the potty. Very good!

You'll have to poop in this potty from now on.

You have to sit here when you poo.

Are you finished?

Let me wipe it off. Turn your butt toward Mommy.

Pull up your underwear first. Then, pull up your pants.

Good! You did really well.

You've done with diaper, Sweetie!

No more diapers anymore.

你不应该忍着。你应该去上马桶。

如果你到处尿的话，妈妈会很辛苦。

没关系。下次你会做得更好。

当你想尿尿，请叫我一下。

你尿在马桶内了。非常好！

你从现在开始一定要在这个马桶里便便。

你一定要坐在这里便便。

你好了吗？

我来把它擦掉。把你的屁屁转向妈咪。

先穿上你的内裤后，再穿上你的裤子。

好！你真的做得很好。

甜心，你戒掉尿布了。

不用再使用尿布了。

### CHAPTER38-03戒掉奶瓶

From now on, you have to eat meals instead of drinking milk.

Crying won't do anything.

Bottles are for babies lying in bed.

Mommy already got rid of all the baby bottles.

The bottles all gone since you're a big boy.

Let's say bye to the baby bottles now.

Let's drink milk from a cup.

This is a really pretty cup.

I will pour the milk into a cup with a straw.

Try drinking milk like Mom.

You need meals to grow.

I bought a plate and a spoon for you.

Do you want some delicious food here?

My baby uses a spoon like Mom and Dad.

从现在开始，你一定要吃饭来代替喝奶。

哭也没有用。

奶瓶是给躺在床上的婴儿用的。

妈咪已经把所有的奶瓶丢掉了。

因为你是个大男孩了，奶瓶都不见喽

我们现在跟奶瓶说再见吧。

我们用杯子和牛奶吧。

这真的是个很漂亮的杯子。

我会把牛奶倒入有吸管的杯子内。

试着像妈妈一样和牛奶。

你必须吃饭才能长大。

我给你买了盘子和汤匙。

你想在这放些美味的食物吗？

我的宝贝跟爸爸妈妈一样用汤匙耶。

### CHAPTER38-04舔手指的习惯

No, no. You should not put your finger into your mouth.

Take out your finger now.

There's a lot of dirt on your finger.

If you lick it, your tummy will hurt.

Your finger will get ugly, too.

Look at what you are doing.

Your finger is in your mouth again.

Does it even taste good?

Your hand is now all covered with your saliva.

Mommy will wipe it off for you.

I don't know how to stop you from sucking your fingers.

不，不。你不可以把手指头放进嘴巴里。

现在把手指拿出来。

手指头上有很多脏东西。

如果你舔手指头的话，你会肚子痛的。

你的手指头也会变丑。

看看你在做什么？

你又把手指头放进嘴里了。

那是好吃的东西吗？

现在你满手都是口水。

妈咪帮你擦掉。

我不知道怎样做，才能让你不吸手指。



Mommy really wants you to stop sucking your fingers.

妈咪真的希望你不要再吸手指了。

### CHAPTER38-05带婴儿出门

Let's get into the stroller now.  
Put your legs through here.  
How is it? Is it comfortable?  
Let's put on the sunshade, too.  
You have to fasten the seatbelt/ safety belt.  
The belt is too loose /tight.  
Vroom, vroom. Here we go!  
Hold on tightly to the handle.  
It will rattle, so hold on tightly.  
Lean your body backwards.

现在，我们要坐婴儿车了。  
把你的脚穿过这里。  
怎么样？舒服吗？  
我们也把遮阳帽戴上。  
你一定要扣上安全带。  
这安全带太紧/松了。  
呜呜，我们走吧！  
抓紧手把。  
这边有点不平，一定要抓紧。  
把你的身体往后靠。

### CHAPTER38-06婴儿安全座椅

This is your seat from now on.  
Sweetie, let me help you to sit in the car seat.  
Why? Don't you want to sit there?  
Place your back all the way to the backrest.  
Do you feel at home there?  
It is safe to sit in the car seat.  
You can look out the window better from the car seat.  
Okay, we are going!  
Everyone, get out of the way!  
You are getting cranky again in the car seat.  
Hold on for a second. We are almost there.

从现在起，这里就是你的座位。  
甜心，我来帮你坐进安全座椅。  
怎么了？你不想坐那里吗？  
把你的背紧紧靠在椅背上。  
你觉得哪里像在家一样吗？  
坐在婴儿座椅内才安全。  
你从婴儿座椅可以更简单地看到窗外。  
好，我们出发！  
各位，请让路！  
你又在婴儿座椅上闹脾气了。  
再忍一下。我们快到了。

### CHAPTER38-06拒绝给点心

Do you want a snack again?  
They are all gone. You already ate them up.  
This is the last snack of the day.  
Your searching for snacks won't help.  
It's not there. You won't find it.  
You can't find it anywhere.  
I said no more. Okay?  
Eat your meal first.  
You should eat a snack after your meal.  
Once you are done with the meal, I will give you something.  
If you eat a snack first, you will lose your appetite for the meal.  
If you keep on whining, I won't tell you where the candy is.  
It's no use crying, Honey.  
We've eaten all the snacks already. Let's wait till tomorrow.

你又想要点心了吗？  
都没有了。你已经都吃完了。  
这是今天最后的点心了。  
你再怎样找点心也是没用的。  
不在那里。你找不到的。  
你在哪里都找不到的。  
我说过不能再吃，知道吗？  
先吃你的饭。  
你应该先吃饭，才能吃点心。  
一旦你吃完饭，我会给你一些。  
如果你先吃点心的话，会没有胃口吃饭的。  
如果你还持续哭着抱怨，我就不告诉你糖果在哪里。  
宝贝，哭也没用的。  
我们已经吃完点心了。等到明天吧。

### CHAPTER38-07性别的疑惑





Why do only girls wear skirts?  
Men and women are different.  
Mom, why are your breasts big?  
It's because I'm a woman.  
Is there milk inside your breasts?  
Yes. There used to be milk to feed you.  
Women pee sitting down because we don't have  
penis.  
Mom, why do I have a penis?  
Why doesn't a girl have one?  
Men and women have different bodies.  
Men have penises while women don't have them.  
Men are big while women are small.  
I want to be strong like my dad.

为什么只有女生穿裙子？  
男生跟女生是不一样的。  
妈，为什么你的胸部很大？  
这是因为我是女生。  
妈妈的乳房内有牛奶吧？  
嗯，以前有喂你的母乳。  
女生坐着尿尿，因为我们没有小鸡鸡。  
妈，为什么我有小鸡鸡？  
为什么女生没有呢？  
男生跟女生的身体不一样。  
男生有小鸡鸡，女生则没有。  
男生块头大，相反地女生的则小。  
我想变得跟爸比一样强。

## CHAPTER38-08男孩/女孩会说的话

Mon, I like skirts.  
I don't like clothes that aren't pink.  
I want to marry Daddy.  
I love playing with dolls.  
Mom, will you play house with me?  
Dress me like a princess.  
Women have long hair.  
I want to wear dress shoes like you.  
I want to have the newest car.  
Mom, buy me the dinosaur book.  
I love playing with robots very much.  
Can you take me outside and play with me?  
Why do girls cry so often?  
I don't cry because I am a man.  
Men are taller than women.  
I run faster than girls.  
Only girls wear skirts and dresses.  
You have to be nice to girls.  
Only a dummy hits a girl.

妈，我喜欢裙子。  
我不喜欢不是粉红色的衣服。  
我要跟爸比结婚。  
我喜欢跟娃娃玩。  
妈，你要跟我玩家家酒吗？  
把我打扮成公主。  
女生有长头发。  
我想跟你一样穿礼鞋。  
我想要最新型的汽车。  
妈，买恐龙的书给我。  
我非常喜欢玩机器人。  
你能带我去外面玩吗？  
为什么女性一直哭？  
我不哭，因为我是男生。  
男生比女生高。  
我跑得比女生快。  
只有女生穿裙子和洋装。  
你必须好好地对待女生。  
只有傻瓜才会打女生。

## CHAPTER39有弟弟妹妹了

### CHAPTER39-01疼弟弟妹妹的时候

I wish he were not here!  
You are a big sister. Let him have it.  
Look at who's here! This is our new baby!  
Wow, I'm a big sister now!  
How do you feel about having a baby sister?  
I'm really happy to have her.  
She is so cute!  
Her hands are so small and cute.

真希望他不在这里就好了！  
你是姐姐。让他玩玩具。  
看是谁在这里！是我们家的新宝宝！  
哇，现在我是大姐姐了！  
有了妹妹，你觉得如何？  
我真的很高兴有她。  
她好可爱！  
她的手好小好可爱。



She is better looking than me.  
She looks the best when she smiles like this.  
She is the cutest baby in the world!  
You are very cute, too!  
He is cuter than Minsu's brother.  
I want to pinch him because he is so adorable !  
She looks like a pretty doll.  
I'm so glad you love your brother so much.  
Your brother likes you just as much as you like him.

她长得比我可爱。  
当好这样笑的时候，最好看了。  
她是世界上最可爱的宝宝！  
你也很可爱！  
他比民肃的弟弟还可爱。  
因为他太可爱，我很想捏他！  
她看起来像漂亮的娃娃。  
我很高兴你很爱你弟弟。  
你的弟弟也会跟你爱他一样那样爱你。

### CHAPTER39-02讨厌弟弟妹妹的时候

I don't like my brother.  
Why do you not like him?  
He bothers me too much.  
He is a troublemaker.  
He is too mischievous.  
He keeps messing up my work.  
He licks my toys. It's gross!  
I want you to give him away to another family.  
I wish that he was gone.  
You should not say that.  
Your brother will be sad if he hears that.  
You should love your brother.  
You do not know how much Jinsu loves you.  
He just keeps crying very loudly.  
Well, you were just like him when you were a baby.  
I tell him to stop touching my things, but he does not listen.  
Okay, then I'm going to give him away.  
Come to think of it, he might be very sad.  
I'll get along well with the baby.

我讨厌我弟弟。  
你为什么不喜歡他？  
他太会烦我了。  
他是个捣蛋鬼。  
他太调皮了。  
他总是把我的事情弄得很糟。  
他舔我的玩具。真让人讨厌！  
我希望你把他送去别人家里。  
我希望他不在了。  
你不可以那样说。  
如果你弟弟听到的话，他会很伤心的。  
你应该爱你的弟弟。  
你不知道谨夙有多爱你。  
他只是大声地哭闹着。  
好，当你还是个婴儿时，你也跟他一样。  
我告诉他不可以碰我的东西，但是他就是不听。  
好，那么我把他送走。  
想一想，他可能会很伤心。  
我会跟宝宝好好相处的。

### CHAPTER39-03吃醋的时候

Why do you like only Minsuo?  
What do you mean? I love you just as much as I love him.  
You and your brother are both important to me.  
But you only hold Minsuo.  
Well, Minsuo is a baby. That's why I'm holding him often.  
I want you to hold me, too.  
Please feed me like you feed the baby.  
Give me a piggy-back ride. My legs hurt.  
Let me sleep with you in your bed.  
Well, I held you a lot when you were a baby.  
Come here, and I'll give you a hug.

为什么妈妈只喜欢悯所呢？  
那是什么意思？我爱你跟爱他一样多。  
你和弟弟对我来说都很重要。  
但是你只抱悯所。  
好，悯所是个婴儿。所以我才会经常抱他。  
我也想要你抱我。  
请跟喂宝宝一样喂我。  
请背我。我脚痛。  
让我去你的床上跟你一起睡。  
嗯，当你还是个婴儿时，妈妈也经常抱你。  
过来，我给你抱抱。



You don't know how much Mommy loves you.  
But you only praise Minsuo.  
And you always scold me.  
I scolded you because you did something wrong.  
Minsuo is only a baby. He still does not know anything.  
So you think that Mommy only loves Minsuo?  
That's why you were sad.  
I'm just helping him more because he is a baby.  
Both of you mean a lot to Mommy./You are both so precious to me.  
I love you both the same.  
You are the first present from God to us.  
I love you more than anyone else in the whole world.

你不知道妈咪有多么爱你。  
但是，你只称赞悯所。  
还有，你总是责备我。  
因为你做错事情，我才责备你。  
悯所还只是个婴儿。他还什么都不知道。  
所以，你认为妈妈只爱悯所吗？  
那就是你为什么伤心。  
我帮他更多，因为他是个婴儿。  
你们两个对妈妈来说都很重要。  
我对你们两个的爱是一样的。  
你是神给我们的第一个礼物。  
在这个世界上，我比谁都还爱你。

## CHAPTER40 上幼稚园

### CHAPTER40-01幼稚园入学

Peter, what's the name of you kindergarten?  
It's Sunlight kindergarten.  
Finally, you are going to kindergarten.  
I can't believe that you are already in  
Doesn't this book bag look nice?  
You will carry this backpack when you go to school.  
Mommy, I don't want to go.  
Why not? Kindergarten is such a fun place.  
If you go there, you will have a great teacher and a lot of friends.  
Mom, what do I do at school?  
Well, you play and study with your friends.  
There is a big playground there.  
You'll see many toys and games that you don't have at home.  
The school will serve a wonderful lunch every  
This is the kindergarten that you will be going to.  
I'm so glad to have a teacher and new friends.

彼得，你幼稚园的名字是什么？  
是“阳光幼稚园”。  
终于，你要去上幼稚园了。  
我不敢相信你已经要上幼稚园了。  
这个书包不是很漂亮吗？  
你去学校时，就可以背着这个书包。  
妈咪，我不想去。  
为什么不去？幼稚园是个那么好玩的地方。  
如果你去那里，你就会有很好的老师和许多朋友。  
妈妈，我在学校要做什么？  
嗯，你跟朋友一起玩，一起学习。  
那里有很大的游乐场。  
你会看到很多家里没有的玩具和游戏。  
学校还会每天提供好吃的午餐。  
这里就是你要去的幼稚园。  
我很高兴有了老师和新朋友。

### CHAPTER40-02班级/老师的分配

You are in the class called Yellow.  
There are 12 students in Class Yellow.  
This is the classroom for Yellow.  
But I don't like yellow. Can I be in Class Pink?  
I want to transfer to Class Pink.  
I want to be in the same class with Yejiu.

你是黄色班。  
黄色班有12名学生。  
这是黄色班的教室。  
但是，我不喜欢黄色。我可以去粉红色班吗？  
我想转去粉红色班。  
我想跟叶就同班。



I'm glad Yejiu is in our class.  
Well, Class Pink is for 7 year olds.  
You are six, and six year olds go to Class Yellow.  
Who is my teacher?  
Miss Wu is the teacher of Class Yellow.  
Wow, my teacher is really pretty.  
I like my teacher the most.  
The teacher looks scary / strict.  
Shall we go and say hello to your teacher?  
Your teacher is like your mother when you are at school.

我很高兴叶就在我们班。  
嗯，粉红色班是七岁上的喔。  
你是六岁，六岁都要去黄色班。  
我的老师是谁？  
黄色班的老师是吴老师。  
哇，我的老师真漂亮。  
我最喜欢我的老师了。  
老师看起来很可怕/严格。  
我们应该去跟老师打招呼吧？  
你在学校的时候，你的老师就像是你的妈妈。

## CHAPTER40-03伙食

Mom, what's for lunch today?  
The teacher gave me the menu for the school lunch.  
Well, I don't know, but it must be good as usual.  
Well, I guess I have to take a look at the menu.  
It seems like you will have a lot of delicious food.  
I'm glad you're not picky about food at school.  
A special lunch will be served because there is a party today.  
Yay! I will eat chicken and cakes, too!  
What did you have for lunch today?  
Was your lunch delicious?  
I had my favorite food-fried potatoes.  
It was really good.  
The noodles were terrible today.  
Did you eat a lot of kimchi?  
Did you eat everything without leaving anything left over?  
I left some food on my plate because I was too full.  
Try to finish all of your food so that you can be healthier.  
My teacher will scold me if I don't finish my lunch.

妈，今天的午餐是什么？  
老师给了我学校午餐的菜单。  
嗯，我不知道。但是，一定跟平常一样好吃。  
嗯，我想我一定要看一下菜单。  
看起来你会有很多好吃的食物。  
我很高兴你在学校不挑食。  
因为今天有派对，所以会提供特别的午餐。  
耶！我也会吃到炸鸡和蛋糕！  
你今天的午餐吃了什么？  
午餐好吃吗？  
我吃了我最喜欢的油炸马铃薯。  
真的很好吃。  
今天的面很糟糕。  
你吃了很多泡菜吗？  
你一点都不剩地吃完了吗？  
我太饱了，剩了一些在盘子内。  
试着把食物都吃光，那样，你才会更健康。  
如果我没有吃完午餐，老师会责备我。

## CHAPTER40-04收集贴纸

The teacher gave me a sticker today.  
How can you receive a praise sticker?  
She gives one whenever we do something nice / good.  
You can get one when you answer a question correctly.  
If you follow the rules, you can get stickers.  
If you help a friend who is sick, you can get three stickers.  
Wow, that is a really pretty sticker!

今天老师给我一张贴纸。  
你要怎样才能得到一张嘉奖贴纸呢？  
每当我们做了好事，她就会给一张。  
当你正确地说出答案时，就可以得到一张。  
如果你守规矩的话，你可以得到贴纸。  
如果你帮助生病的朋友，你可以得到三张贴纸。  
哇，那真是美丽的贴纸。





Let's stick it in the sticker book.  
Look at all the stickers I've got!  
Wow, you have collected a lot of stickers!  
The person with the most stickers will be rewarded.  
If I collect 20 stickers, the teacher will give me a big present.  
Oh, really? Then you should try hard to get the stickers.  
So, who has the most stickers?  
Jina does.  
I've got only 10 stickers so far.  
When you collect 100 stickers, I'll give you a good present.  
If you read 3 books a day, I'll give you 5 stickers.

我们把它贴在黏贴簿上吧。  
看所有我得到的贴纸。  
哇，你已经收集了很多贴纸！  
收集最多贴纸的人可以得到奖赏。  
如果我收集20张贴纸，老师会给我一个  
大礼物。  
喔，真的吗？那么，你一定要努力收集  
。  
那么，谁收集的贴纸最多？  
是吉娜。  
我到现在只收集了10张贴纸。  
当你收集了100张贴纸，我会给你很棒的  
礼物。  
如果你一天读三本书，我会给你五张贴  
纸。

## CHAPTER40-05放假/升级

Your vacation begins today!  
Mom, what is a vacation?  
Vacation means no school.  
No waking up early! Hooray!  
I don't want vacation then. I want to go to kindergarten.  
The vacation is too long.  
I can't wait to go back to kindergarten.  
I don't like vacation, Mommy.  
I miss my teacher and my friends.  
How many days are left until I go back to school?  
You have to wait for ten more days.  
I won't go back to kindergarten after the vacation.  
I like staying home with you.  
You'll go to the older kids' class after vacation.  
Well, then I'll be in Class Pink soon.  
Your classroom and teacher will change, too.  
What about my classmates?  
There will be some old faces, but there will also be some new students.  
I don't want to be in a different class than Minsuo's.

你的假期从今天开始！  
妈，放假是什么？  
放假的意思是不用去上学。  
不用早起床！太好了！  
那么我不想放假。我想去幼稚园。  
假期太长了。  
我想快点回去幼稚园。  
妈咪，我不喜欢放假。  
我想我的老师和朋友。  
距离我回去学校，还有几天呢？  
你还要等十天。  
放假结束后，我不要回幼稚园了。  
我喜欢跟妈妈待在家里。  
放假后，你将会去高年級的班。  
那么，我很快就会在粉红色班。  
你的教室和老师也都会换喔。  
我的同学呢？  
会有些旧面孔，不过，也会有些新同学  
。  
我不想跟悯所不同班。

## CHAPTER40-06才艺表演/毕业典礼

We are going to have a talent show next week.  
Our class will do a puppet dance.  
Our class will do a play.  
Our class will form a choir. / Our class will sing as a choir at the show.  
Tomorrow is your graduation day.  
I can't believe that you are already graduating!

我们下周会有一个才艺表演。  
我们班会表演木偶舞。  
我们班会表演戏剧。  
我们班会表演合唱。  
明天是你的毕业典礼。  
我不敢相信你已经要毕业了！



You will become an elementary school student.  
You've been really good at school. I'm so proud of you, Sweetie.  
I don't want to graduate.  
I want to keep going to kindergarten.  
Will I be able to see my teacher if I graduate?  
Well, you can always visit when you want to.  
Sit still during the graduation ceremony.  
Mom will be standing at the back of the classroom.  
Congratulations!  
I got a good behavior award.  
Let's take some pictures with your friends and teacher.  
Let's go and say thank you to your teacher.  
I will miss my friends and teacher so much.  
This is your graduation gift from Mommy.  
The graduation photos came out really well.

你将要变成一个小学生了。  
你在学校真的表现得很好。甜心，我为你感到骄傲。  
我不想要毕业。  
我想继续上幼稚园。  
如果我毕业的话，还能见到我的老师吗？  
嗯，只要你想，任何时候都可以去拜访。  
毕业典礼时，你要乖乖坐好。  
妈妈会站在教室后面。  
恭喜你！  
我得到了模范奖。  
我们跟你的老师、朋友们一起照相吧。  
我们去跟老师说谢谢。  
我会非常想念我的朋友和老师。  
这是妈咪给你的毕业礼物。  
毕业照拍得很好。

## CHAPTER41 当上小学生

### CHAPTER41-01 入学/去上学

Now you are going to elementary school.  
Yeah, I'm not a baby anymore.  
I can't believe that you're a student already!  
You'll go to an elementary school from now on.  
Hurry up. We need to go to the opening.  
Congratulations for starting elementary school!  
Now you're a big boy/ girl and not a baby anymore.  
Are you excited about going to school?  
Well, I'm excited, but I'm kind of scared, too.  
What class should my son go to?  
I'm in Class 4 in the 1st grade.  
You have to wear indoor shoes in the classroom.  
Put your shoe bag on the shoe shelf.  
Mommy will take you to school.  
We have to be at school by 8:30 AM.  
But the teacher said that we have to be there by 10 minutes before 8:30 AM.  
My bag is very heavy because we have a lot of classes today.  
You can leave your textbooks in your cubby.  
Put the things inside your locker if you always use them at school.  
Lunchtime for our class is 12 o'clock.

现在你要上小学了。  
耶，我已经不再是小宝宝了。  
我不敢相信你已经是个学生了！  
你从现在开始要去上小学了。  
快一点。我们要去参加开学典礼。  
恭喜你开始上小学！  
现在你是大哥哥/大姐姐，再也不是小孩子了。  
要去学校了，你会兴奋吗？  
嗯，我很兴奋，但是我也有点害怕。  
儿子你要去第几班？  
我是在一年四班。  
在教室内，你一定要穿室内鞋。  
把你的鞋袋放在鞋架上。  
妈妈会带你去学校。  
我们早上8:30之前要到学校。  
不过，老师说我们要在8:30的前10分到。  
我的书包很重，因为我们今天有很多课。  
你可以把你的教科书放在置物柜内。  
如果都是在学校使用的物品的话，就放进你的置物柜内。  
我们班的午餐时间是12点。



Mom, did you wash my classroom shoes?  
Listen carefully to the teacher at school.  
You need to listen carefully to your teacher.  
Get along well with your friends.  
Have a good day!  
At what time will your school be over today?  
I'll be waiting for you at the school gate.

妈，你洗了我的教室用鞋吗？  
你在学校要仔细听老师的话。  
你需要好好听老师的话。  
跟你的朋友们好好相处。  
祝你有个美好一天！  
今天学校几点放学？  
我会在学校正门口等你。

## CHAPTER41-02自我介绍

Let me introduce myself.  
My name is Jina Ji.  
I'm 8 years old.  
I live in ABC Apartment.  
There are four people in my family: my dad, mom, my younger brother, and me.  
My height is 130cm, and my weight is 25kg.  
My favorite food is chocolate.  
I like reading books very much.  
I have a pet dog.  
I'm Minsu Li. I'm in the first grade in class 3.  
My nickname is Lightfoot because I'm a fast runner.  
I like sports although I'm not really good at them.  
I want to be good friends with all of you.  
I want to be a soccer player when I grow up.  
My dream is to be a doctor when I grow up.  
I want to be a scientist and create the best robot in the world.  
I will study hard to be a great person.

我来自我介绍一下。  
我的名字是季吉娜。  
我八岁。  
我住在ABC公寓。  
我家有四个人：爸爸，妈妈，弟弟和我。  
我身高有130公分，体重是25公斤。  
我最喜欢的食物是巧克力。  
我非常喜欢阅读。  
我养了一只狗当宠物。  
我是李民肃。我是一年三班的学生。  
因为我跑很快，所以我的绰号是飞毛腿。  
虽然我不太擅长运动，但是我很喜欢。  
我希望跟大家都成为好朋友。  
我长大后，想当一个足球选手。  
我的梦想是长大后当一名医生。  
我想成为科学家，做出世界上最棒的机器人。  
我会努力学习来成为伟大的人。

## CHAPTER41-03换座位

We change seats once a week.  
Let's decide on seatmates by drawing lots.  
Minji, you are my seatmate this time.  
You are my seatmate again.  
I'm really happy to be your seatmate!  
We are made for each other! / We are just meant to be!  
Sir, please change our seats.  
Can we stay in our seats? We don't want to change seats.  
Who is your seatmate?  
Would you prefer a girl seatmate or a boy seatmate?  
I like both.  
I want to sit with Minsuo.  
Where is your seat this time?  
I'm sitting in the 3rd row of the first column.

我们一周会换一次座位。  
我们用抽签来决定谁跟谁坐在一起。  
敏基，这次你跟我坐同桌。  
你又跟我坐同桌了。  
我很高兴成为你的同桌伙伴！  
我们很合得来。  
老师，请帮我们换座位。  
我们可以待在原位吗？我们不想换座位。  
谁是你的同桌伙伴？  
你喜欢跟女生同桌，还是跟男生同桌？  
我都喜欢。  
我想跟悯所坐在一起。  
这次你的座位在哪？  
我坐在第一排的第三个位置。



Do you like your seatmate?

Well, not really.

I don't know yet.

Sir, I want to sit at the front because I cannot see clearly.

You need to sit in the back because you are very tall.

你喜欢你的同桌伙伴吗?

嗯，没有很喜欢。

我还不知道。

老师，我想坐到前面，因为我看不太清楚。

因为你很高，所以你必须坐在后面。

## CHAPTER41-04课程

How many classes do you have today?

I have five classes today.

School ends early today.

The school hours are shortened today.

What is your favorite class / subject?

I like PE class the most.

How long does each class last?

It lasts for 40 minutes.

What do you do during your break time?

I play picture card games with my friends during recess.

What did you learn at school today?

The teacher told us a very funny story.

What did your teacher ask?

Did you answer the question with a loud voice?

Did you participate in class today?

Did you make a good presentation today?

I constantly raised my hand during the class, but I didn't get a chance to answer.

All of today's classes are my favorite ones.

Today's class was not fun at all.

I was very tired at school.

I kept on falling asleep during my classes.

We had a class in the lab / music room / art room.

你今天有多少堂课?

我今天有五堂课。

今天学校提早放学了。

今天学校的时间缩短了。

你最喜欢的课程是什么?

我最喜欢体育课。

每堂课有多久?

有40分钟。

休息时间的时候，你做什么?

休息时间的时候，我跟朋友们玩卡片游戏。

今天你在学校学了什么?

老师跟我们讲了一个非常有趣的故事。

老师问了什么问题?

你大声地回答老师的问题了吗?

你今天好好上课了吗?

今天你做了很棒的发表吗?

上课的时候，我一直举手，但是都没有机会回答。

今天所有的课都是我最喜欢的。

今天的课一点都不有趣。

我在学校觉得很累。

上课时，我一直打瞌睡。

我们在实验室/音乐教室/美术教室上课。

## CHAPTER41-05作业/准备物品/提醒单

Why don't you finish your homework first?

We don't have any homework today.

I can't remember today's homework.

Check your homework reminders.

I have to finish up to page 23 in my workbook.

Are you done with your homework?

I'm still working on it.

I'm not done yet.

I left my assignment notebook at school.

What do you need for tomorrow's class?

Watercolors, a palette, and brushes.

Mom, I need to buy some materials for my class.

你何不先完成你的家庭作业呢?

我们今天没有家庭作业。

我想不起来今天的作业。

去看一下你的作业提醒单。

到习题本的第23页，我都必须完成。

你的作业都做好了吗?

我还在做。

我还没有做好。

我把作业簿放在学校了。

你明天的课程需要什么?

水彩、调色盘还有画笔。

妈，我需要买些上课用的材料。





I will go to the stationery store to buy some school supplies.

我会去文具店买些学校用品。

Don't forget to bring the materials for tomorrow's class!

不要忘记带明天上课要用的材料。

Carefully see if there is anything missing.

仔细看有没有任何漏掉的。

Call your friend to ask him about what you need to bring tomorrow.

打电话给你的朋友，问他明天要带什么去学校。

Mom, there are two handouts today.

妈，今天有两张通知单。

Mom, read the announcement letter from the school.

妈，请读学校的通知信。

Mom, can you please sign my school planner?

妈妈，可以请你在我的学校计划簿上签名吗？

Okay, bring me your school planner then. Write more neatly when you write on your agenda.

好，把你的学校计划簿拿来。  
当你在计划簿上写东西的时候，要写得更整齐一点。

## CHAPTER41-06做作业

Do you have any homework today?

你今天有任何作业吗？

Yes. I have to do an oral report on some daily sentences.

有。我要用一些日常用语做一个口头报告。

The homework is due tomorrow.

这个作业明天就要交。

Do your homework together with me.

跟我一起做功课吧。

I'll help you then.

那么，我来帮你。

Try to do your homework by yourself.

试着自己做功课看看。

Bring your language notebook to practice it.

把你的语言笔记本拿来练习。

Are you still working on your homework?

你还在做作业吗？

Mom, the homework is too hard for me.

妈，这作业对我来说太难了。

I've got too much homework today.

今天我有太多的功课了。

Look at how well you do your homework!

看你把家庭作业做得多好！

I like my homework. It's so fun!

我喜欢我的作业。这很有趣！

My teacher told us not to forget about the homework.

老师跟我们说不要忘记作业。

If I do my homework, my teacher will give me sticker.

如果我做功课的话，老师会给我贴纸。

I have to bring my homework on Thursdays.

我在星期四要把作业带去。

I've worked enough at school. Why should I do work at home?

我在学校已经做得够多了。为什么我还要在家里做呢？

Your homework helps you review what you learned.

你的作业可以帮助你复习学过的东西

Without homework, you could forget what you learned.

如果没有作业，你会忘记学过的东西

## CHAPTER41-07迟到/早退/缺席

You will be late for school!

你上学要迟到了！

I will never be late for school again.

我再也不要上学迟到了！

I think I might be late for school. Can you give me a ride?

我想我可能上学会迟到。你能载我去吗？

If you're late one more time, you will be in trouble.

如果你再迟到一次的话，你会挨骂的。

Phew, I made it without being late!

呼，我没有迟到地到学校了！



I don't think I can go to school today because I'm sick.

I think you should just skip school today

Take a rest at home.

Let me call your teacher and tell her you'll miss school

Well, try not to miss school as much as possible.

If it's too hard for you to stay in school, just tell your teacher.

Can I go home early today, sir?

You can leave early today. Just stay home and take a rest.

Jina is absent because she is sick.

因为我不舒服，我想我今天不能去学校了。

我想你今天不要去学校了。

在家休息吧。

我打电话给你的老师跟她说你会缺席。

好，试着尽可能不要缺课。

如果待在学校决定很不舒服的话，跟你的老师报告。

老师，我今天可以早点回家吗？

你今天可以早退。在家里休息。

吉娜因为身体不舒服缺席了。

## CHAPTER41-08课后活动

What do you want to study after school?

I want to learn the violin.

The Chinese character lesson should be fun.

The ballet lessons are scheduled for twice a week.

The robot class is the most popular popular fare-school program.

Here's the brochure for the after-school lessons.

The art lesson overlaps with the piano lesson according to the schedule.

You can't do everything that you want to do, so just choose two.

Do you want to learn origami?

Where do you take your violin lesson?

It's in classroom 3 of the 2nd grade.

You have to come home straight after those lessons.

All of your after-school programs are over.

下课后，你想学什么

我想学小提琴。

汉字课应该很有趣。

芭蕾课排定一周两节。

机器人课是最热门的放学后课程。

这个是课后课程的介绍小册。

根据这张课程表，美术课和钢琴课的时间重叠了。

你不可能做所有你想做的，你只能挑两个。

你想要学折纸吗？

你在哪里上小提琴课？

在2年级3班的教室。

那些课程结束后，你要马上回家。

你所有的课后课程都结束了。

## CHAPTER41-09星期六的活动

You don't have to go to school on Saturday.

Why do we have that day?

So that you can experience a lot of things outside school with your family.

Then what about this week.

What do you want to do on Saturday?

What are we doing this Saturday?

We will go to a museum.

I want to go to an art museum this time.

Can't we own a weekend farm so that we can grow vegetables?

My teacher told us to write a report about our experience this Saturday.

在星期六，你不需要去学校。

为什么会有那一天。

那是为了让你可以跟家人讨论很多校外的事情。

那么，这个礼拜呢？

你在星期六想要做什么呢？

这个星期六我们要去做什么呢？

我们去博物馆。

这次我想去美术馆。

我们不能有个可以种植蔬菜的周末农场吗？

老师要我们写一份有关我们这个星期六经历的报告。



I'm so happy because tomorrow is a No-school Saturday!  
I wish that every day were a No-school Saturday.  
Well, I hope every Saturday is just a school day.  
Next Saturday we go to school, so I will only have Saturday to rest.

因为明天是不用上课的星期六，所以我很开心！  
我希望每天都是不用上课的星期六。  
嗯，我希望每个周六都是上课的日子。  
下周六，我们要去学校补课。因此，我只有周日可以休息。

## CHAPTER 41-10 管理零用钱

Mom, I want an allowance.  
How much are you going to give me?  
Well, I will give you 100 a week.  
That's too little.  
I think that is just about right.  
You don't have much to spend money anyway.

妈妈，我想要零用钱。  
你要给我多少？  
嗯，我一周给你100元。  
那太少了。  
我想那应该刚刚好。  
反正你没有什么地方要花钱。

What are you going to spend your allowance on?  
Try not to waste your money.  
It's important to spend money wisely.  
Mom, please raise my allowance.  
By how much?  
By 50.  
I think it's too much. I will raise it by 5.  
If you keep on asking for a raise, I won't give you one.  
Do not forget to keep a good record of the money you spend.  
Did you already spend all of your allowance?  
Mom, my allowance is too tight for me.  
If you do some errands, will you give me a bigger allowance?  
I will wash the dishes, will you give me some money for it?  
I will save my leftover allowance.

你要把零花钱花在什么上面？  
试着不要浪费钱。  
明智的用钱是很重要的。  
妈，请增加我的零用钱。  
增加多少？  
增加50元。  
我想这太多了。我多给你5元。  
如果你一直要求增加的话，我就不给你。  
不要忘记你好好保持你的支出记录。  
你已经花完你所有的零花钱了吗？  
妈，我的零花钱很吃紧。  
如果我帮你做事的话，你会给我更多的零花钱吗？  
我来洗碗。因此，你给我些零花钱。  
我会把剩余的零花钱存起来。

## CHAPTER 42 交到朋友了

### CHAPTER 42-01 同班同学

How many students are in your class?  
We have thirty.  
How many girls are there?  
We have fourteen girls and sixteen boys.  
I like all of my classmates.  
Who do you like the most among your classmate?  
I like Suwa the most.  
Do you know all of your classmates names?  
I'm trying to memorize them.  
There is a friend who has the same name as me.

你们班有几名学生。  
我们有30名。  
女生有几名？  
我们有14名女生和16名男生。  
我喜欢我们班所有的同学。  
在你们班的同学中，你最喜欢谁？  
我最喜欢苏娃。  
你知道所有同学的名字吗？  
我正努力背起来。  
有一个朋友的名字和我一样。



We have two kids whose names are Minji.  
We have twins in our class.  
Jina lives in our apartment complex.  
Minjiu lives in your apartment building.  
Great! You can both go to school together in the morning.

我们两个小朋友都叫敏基。  
我们班上有双胞胎。  
吉娜住在我们的公寓社区内。  
旻久住在我们公寓大楼。  
那很好！你们早上可以一起去上学。

## CHAPTER 42-02介绍朋友

Mom, this is my classmate Minsu.  
Oh, hello, I'm Jinhong's mother.  
I've heard a lot about you.  
My classmate named Suhong is really nice.  
Hajin from my class always gets scolded by the teacher.  
Junsuo from my class is really smart.  
Minhou is such a good student.  
Jiwong is such a troublemaker in our class.  
I want to get closer to Minsuo from my class.  
Do you? Why don't we invite him over?  
There is a new student in my class.  
Oh, what's his name?  
Where did he transfer from?  
I want to get closer to Jisu, but Jisu only plays with Hajin.  
Well, then the three of you can play together.  
I will go to school together with Hajin from tomorrow.  
Suhong and I ride the same bus back home.

妈妈，这个是我的同学民肃。  
喔，你好。我是金宏的妈妈。  
我听到很多有关你的事情。  
我那名叫苏洪的同学真的很好。  
我们班的哈金德是被老师责罚的。  
我们班的君梭真的很聪明。  
民候是个非常好的学生。  
继望在我们班完全是个捣蛋鬼。  
我想跟我班上的炯所变得更好。  
是吗？我们为何不邀请他来玩呢？  
我的班上有新同学。  
喔，他叫什么名字？  
他从哪里转来的？  
我只想跟记溯亲近，但是记溯只跟哈金玩。  
嗯，那么，你们三个人可以一起玩。  
从明天起，我和哈金一起去上学。  
苏洪和我搭同一台公车回家。

## CHAPTER 42-03朋友的问题

I got in a fight with my friend.  
Why did you fight?  
We both wanted the same toy.  
He took my toys away.  
You should take turns.  
I thought you two were getting along.  
You need to learn how to play together.  
I'm upset because of my friend.  
He keeps making fun of me.  
He keeps hitting me.  
He keeps saying bad things.  
He keeps annoying me.  
You must be upset.  
You shouldn't act the same way as your friend.  
Say "No", clearly.  
Be nice to your friend.  
Try to understand your friend.  
Try to get along with your friends.

我和我的同学吵架了。  
你为什么吵架。  
我们都想要同一个玩具。  
他抢了我的玩具。  
你们应该轮流来。  
我还以为你们处的很好。  
你应该学习如何一起玩。  
我因为朋友而感到伤心。  
他一直取笑我。  
他一直打我。  
他一直说脏话。  
他一直烦我。  
你一定很难过。  
你不可以跟你朋友做同样的行为。  
清楚的说“不”。  
要对朋友好。  
试着了解你的朋友。  
试着跟你的朋友好好相处。





Don't tell on your friend to the teacher.  
They might all you a tattletale.  
I want to make friends with Jina.  
Some kids pick on me.  
I feel like they are bullying me.  
You need to learn how to depend yourself.  
You guys could become better friends after  
frighting.  
There are manners to keep even among close  
friends.  
I am glad you're such a sociable child.

即使那样也不要跟老师告状。  
他们可能会叫你告密者。  
我想和吉娜做朋友。  
有几个小孩欺负我。  
我觉得他们霸凌我。  
你需要学习怎么保护你自己。  
你们打完架后，也有可能变成更好的朋友。  
即使是好朋友，也要保持礼貌。  
我很高兴你是个善交际的小孩。

## CHAPTER 42-04集体霸凌

Does anyone from your class pick on you?  
Jihou keeps bullying me.  
How does he bully you?  
He keeps hitting me.  
He keeps teasing me.  
He says bad stuff about me to my other friends  
He yells and swears at me.  
I don't want to go to school because of him.  
I want to transfer to another school.  
Since when did he do that?  
From the start of the school year.  
Don't worry, Sweetie. Mommy will help you.  
Let's talk to your teacher about it.  
It must've been hard for you to deal with.  
My friends keep picking on Jina.  
That's not very nice. You should not do that. Okay?  
Why don't you stop your friends from picking on  
her?

在你们班有人欺负你吗?  
积厚一直欺负我。  
他怎样欺负你。  
他一直打我。  
他一直嘲笑我。  
他跟我的其他朋友说我的坏话。  
他用脏话对我大吼大叫  
因为他，我不想去上学了。  
我想转到其他学校。  
他是从什么时候开始的。  
从学期初。  
甜心，别担心。妈妈会帮你的。  
我们告诉老师这事情。  
对你来说，应付这个真的太难了。  
我的朋友一直欺负吉娜  
那不是很好。你不可以那样做，好吗?  
你何不阻止你朋友去欺负她。

## CHAPTER 42-05去朋友家玩

I want to go and play at Jina's house.  
Mom, can I go and play at my friend's house?  
Today is the day I am going to play at Jisu's  
house, right?  
I promised to go and play at Minjiu's house.  
Do I know her?  
Go and play after you finish your homework.  
Really? Does Minjiu's mom know about that?  
Mommy will call her house.  
Suwa said she does not have time today.  
Go and play for two hours.  
I'll come and pick you up in two hours.  
Come home before dinner.  
Can I play for one more hour?

我想去吉娜家玩。  
妈，我可以去我朋友家玩吗?  
今天是我要去记溯家玩的日子，对吧。  
我答应要去泯久的家玩了。  
我认识她吗?  
完成你的作业后，再去。  
真的吗？旻久的妈妈也知道吗?  
妈咪打电话到她家一下。  
苏娃说她今天没有时间。  
去玩两个小时就回来。  
我两个小时之后去接你。  
五点之前回家。  
我可以多玩一个小时吗?



You shouldn't stay at someone else house for a long time.

Come home before dinner.

Don't fight with Mina and play nicely.

Listen to Mina's mom.

Be polite to Mina's parents.

Give me your friend's number.

Clean up after you play there.

Invite her to our house next time.

Don't make a mess at her house.

Behave yourself.

Mom, can I take this?

Take this and eat it with your friend.

Bye. See you later.

Mom, can you take me there?

Sure, I will take you.

Please come to pick me up later.

你不可以在别人家待太久。

晚餐之前要回家。

不要跟米娜打架，要好好玩。

要听米娜妈妈的话。

对米娜的爸妈要有礼貌。

给我你朋友的电话号码。

玩之后，要整理干净。

下次邀请她来我们家玩。

不要把她家弄脏乱。

注意你的行为举止。

妈，我可以带这个去吗？

把这个带去跟朋友一起吃。

再见，等一下见。

妈，你能带我去那里吗？

当然，我带你去。

请等一下来接我。

## CHAPTER 42-06在朋友家睡

Can I sleep over at Minsu's house on Saturday.

I'm invited to a sleepover on Saturday.

Wow, a pajama party!

Did you get his parent's permission?

His parents invited me.

Did you prepare all the things you need?

Can you sleep without Mommy?

Mom, I'm grown-up now.

It's your first sleepover at your friend's house.

Did you prepare your toothbrush and underwear already?

Try not to bother Minsu's parents. Okay?

Don't be too noisy.

这个星期六，我可以在民肃家过夜吗？

我收到周六睡衣派对的邀请。

哇，是睡衣派对啊。

你得到他的父母的许可了吗。

是他父母邀请我的。

你把需要的东西都准备好了吗？

没有妈妈，你能睡得着吗？

妈，我现在是大人了。

这是你第一次去朋友家里睡。

你已经把牙刷和内衣都准备好了吗？

不要打扰民肃的父母，知道吗？

你不可以晚起。

Be sure to brush your teeth before you go to bed.

Have a fun sleepover!

I think it's going to be really fun.

I can't wait! I'm so excited.

I'll see you tomorrow, Mom!

If there's anything wrong, just call me.

你睡之前，一定要刷牙。

好好享受睡衣派对！

我想这样会很有趣。

我好想快点去！真的好兴奋。

妈妈，明天见！

如果有什么事，就打电话给我。

## CHAPTER 43 学校课业

### CHAPTER 43-01 学习

Did you do well on your test?

I think I did.

It's time to study!

Study ahead for tomorrow's lesson.

考试考得怎么样？

我想我考的不错

该学习了喔。

预习明天要学习的功课。



Why don't you review today's lesson?  
 Listen to your teacher intensively during class.  
 You should not keep putting off your studies.  
 Did you finish the workbook?  
 You should not be looking at the answer key.  
 I don't want to study.  
 Can I get some rest first and then study?  
 Can I take a break?  
 I think I studied too much today.  
 Studying needs consistency!  
 I find studying to be interesting./I enjoy studying.  
 I think I need to solve the math problems one more time.  
 Check over the questions that you got wrong.  
 Mom, I don't understand this one.  
 Okay, Mommy will help you.  
 So, do you understand it now?  
 Why do you keep getting the same question wrong?  
 I know it's hard to keep on studying.  
 I'm very proud to see you studying hard.

你要不要复习今天的功课?  
 上课的时候,要认真听老师讲课。  
 你不可以一直拖延你的学习。  
 你写作业都写完了吗?  
 你不可以看答案。  
 我不想学习。  
 我可以先休息一下之后,再学习吗?  
 我可以休息一下吗?  
 我想我今天学习的太多了。  
 学习需要坚持不懈。  
 我发现学习很有趣。  
 我想我需要再解一次这些数学题。  
 检查你做错的题目。  
 妈,我不懂这题。  
 好,妈咪来帮你。  
 所以,现在你理解了吗?  
 为什么你一直做错相同的问题?  
 我知道坚持学习是很辛苦的。  
 看到你努力学习的模样,我感到很自豪。

## CHAPTER43-02考试

When is your test?  
 Do you know the test range?  
 You should not cram when studying for an exam.  
 The midterm/final exam will begin next week.  
 This week is the midterm/final period.  
 Study hard for your exam.  
 The test covers too many CHAPTERS.  
 I'm very nervous about taking the test.  
 We had a quiz/CHAPTER test today.  
 Did you do well on your test?  
 I think I did well on the exam.  
 I don't think I did well.  
 It was a little hard.  
 It was easy, but I made a mistake.  
 I did not have enough time.  
 I got two questions wrong by mistake.  
 You shouldn't miss a question you know.  
 Let's go over the questions you missed.  
 Review your answers carefully.  
 Check over the answers to make double sure.  
 Your test score will reflect how much you studied.  
 You get what you deserve.

你什么时候考试?  
 你知道考试范围吗?  
 当你准备考试的时候,不可以死记硬背。  
 下周开始是期中/期末考试。  
 这周是期中/期末考试的时间。  
 你要认真准备考试。  
 考试范围太广了。  
 对于考试,我很紧张。  
 我们今天有小考/单元考试。  
 考试考得好吗?  
 我想我这次考试考得不错。  
 我想我考的不好。  
 有点难。  
 很简单,但是我做错了。  
 我没有足够时间。  
 我不小心做错了两题。  
 你不应该做错你知道的题目。  
 我们来检讨你做错的题目。  
 再次仔细检查你的答案。  
 再次确认你的答案。  
 你的成绩将反应出你学习了多少。  
 你得到了你应得的。



Don't be so disappointed . You can do better next time.

You'll do better next time.

If you did your best, that's what counts.

How come you keep on playing around when you have a test tomorrow?

不要那么失望。下次，你能做的更好。

下次，你会做得更好。

如果你已经尽力了，那才是最重要的。

明天就要考试了，你怎么还一直在玩？

### CHAPTER43-03 成绩

How is your report card?

I am number one in my class/grade.

I am in the top 10 of my class.

I don't think I can make it into the top 10.

What score did you get on the test?

What's your average/total score?

What do you think your grade will be?

My average/total score is 82.

I got a 90 in math.

Jina's grade was higher /lower than mine.

My grade went up/down.

Compared to before, my grade went up/down by 10 points.

My grade is ruined because of my score on the math test.

I got a perfect score in every subject.

I got a one hundred in math.

I think I will get the highest/lowest score in my class.

Don't be too upset.

Don't compare yourself with your friends.

If you tried your best, then that's all that matters.

Your studying habits may be wrong.

I'm going to be the top student in my class on the next exam.

Well, I tried my best this time.

I'm sorry. Did I make you disappointed?

Well, your score is actually pretty good.

I'm sure you can do better next time, right?

You studied so hard, and now look what you got on your test!

Your grades improved a bit.

It seems like you've made a lot of progress.

I'm very glad that you improved a lot this time.

I think you need to try harder.

Don't be too proud of yourself.

If you try hard, you can get good grades.

You need to focus when you're taking a test.

你的成绩单如何？

我在我们班/年级得到第一名。

我进入班上前十名。

我不认为我可以进前十名。

你这次考试得到几分？

你的平均/总成绩是多少？

你觉得你会考几分？

我的平均/总分是82分。

我数学考了90分。

吉娜的分数比我高/低。

我的分数提高/降低了。

跟之前相比，我的分数提高/降低了10分。

我的成绩因为数学分数被搞砸了。

我每科都考到很好地分数。

我数学考了100分。

我想我会得到全班最高/最低分。

不要太过难过。

不要把自己跟朋友作比较。

如果你尽力了，那才是最重要的。

有可能你的学习方法错了。

下次考试我要考到全班第一名。

哎，这次我已经尽全力了。

抱歉，我让你失望了吗？

嗯，事实上你的成绩不错了。

我确定你下次会考的更好，对吧？

你这么努力用功，现在来看看你考了几分！

你的分数变好了一点。

看起来，你进步了很多。

我很高兴你这次的考试进步了很多。

我想你要更努力一点。

不要太自满。

如果你努力，就能考到好成绩。

当你考试的时候，你一定要集中注意力。





You've done well in class, but you did badly on the test.

Just because I got a few questions wrong, does that make me a lazy student?

That's not fair.

That's why you need to pay attention to each problem.

Whatever the result, I love you, Honey.

I'll try hard.

I didn't do well on the test.

I won't make any mistake next time.

你很认真听课，但考试却考得很差。

就因为我做错了几个题目，我就变成懒惰的学生了吗？

那是不公平的。

那就是为什么你每个题目都要很小心。

不管结果如何，我都爱你，宝贝。

我会努力的。

我考试考得不好。

我下次不会再犯错了。

## CHAPTER43-04得奖

I received an award.

I got the grand prize/second prize.

I got an award for being a class/school representative.

The principal gave out the award during the school assembly.

I stood in front of the whole school and got an award.

Did you go up to the front to get the award?

I am on the honor roll this semester.

I was so happy because I got the award.

I got a certificate for the award and a medal/trophy.

I want to receive an award, too.

I will try my best to get an award.

They even gave me a scholarship.

It's an award given to only two students in our class.

You're happy because I got the award, aren't you?

I can't tell you how happy I am, Honey!

This is the award that I really wanted.

I wanted the gold medal.

I wasn't satisfied a bit by receiving the bronze medal.

Let's put the certificate for the award up on the wall.

I'm really proud of you.

我得奖了。

我得到大奖/次奖。

我因为当了班上/学校代表而得奖了。

校长在全校集会上颁奖给我。

得到这个奖的时候，我站在全校师生前面。

你到前面去领奖吗？

这学期，我在优等生的名单内了。

我好高兴，因为我得奖了。

我得到了奖状和奖章/奖品。

我也想得奖。

我会尽全力去得奖。

他们甚至给了我奖学金。

我们班只有两位学生得奖。

我得了奖，所以你很开心，对吗？

宝贝，我高兴的说不出话了。

这是我真的很想得到的奖。

我想得到金牌。

我得了铜牌，有点不太满意。

我们把奖状挂在墙壁上吧。

我真以你为荣。

## CHAPTER43-05放假

When does your summer/winter vacation begin?

Do you have any place that you want to visit?

What do you think is good to do during vacation?

For how long does your vacation last?

It's over a month.

I want to learn swimming during the vacation.

暑假/寒假是什么时候开始？

什么想去旅行的地方吗？

你认为放假期间做什么好呢？

你的假期持续多久呢？

超过一个月。

我想在放假期间学游泳。



Let's visit your grandma's house since it's your vacation.  
You should not oversleep just because you don't go to school.  
Let's make a day planner for your vacation.  
You should not put off your homework.  
I just want to rest for the whole vacation.  
The vacation is too short.  
What's your vacation homework?  
I have to keep a diary, read some books, write a letter, and write some book reports.  
When does school start again?/When do you go back to school?  
I don't want school to start again.  
Are you finished with all of your vacation homework?  
School will start after a few days.  
I'm not finished with it yet.  
I told you not to put it off.

既然你放假，我们去你奶奶家吧。  
你不可以因为不用去学校就睡懒觉。  
我们来定放假生活计划表吧。  
你不可以拖延你的作业。  
整个假期我只想休息。  
这次的假期太短了。  
你的假日作业是什么？  
我要写日记，读几本书，写信，还有写读书笔记。  
什么时候开学？  
我不想开学。  
你做完所有的假日作业了吗？  
再过几天，就要开学了。  
我还没有做完。  
我告诉过你不可以拖延的。

## CHAPTER44学校活动

### CHAPTER44-01郊游/校外教学

Where are you going for your field trip?  
We are going to the amusement park.  
How many days are left till the field trip day?  
You only have two more days to go.  
Yay! I'm going on a field trip in two days!  
You must be really happy!  
When is your field trip?  
You should be able to congratulate the winners.  
Even after you lose to them?

你们要去哪里校外教学？  
我们要去游乐园玩。  
离去郊游还有几天？  
你还有两天就要去了。  
耶！在两天，我就要去郊游了。  
你一定很开心吧？  
郊游是什么时候？  
你应该去恭喜赢的人。  
即使你输给了他们？

### CHAPTER44-03健康检查

The school told me to get a medical examination.  
I have to do it by next week.  
Today is the day of your medical examination.  
What hospital should we go to?  
Do I get a shot when I get the medical examination?  
We'll have just a simple checkup.  
Wow, my boy/my girl has grown up a lot.  
You've grown 5cm more.  
You've gained 5kg.  
You have to get a dental/physical/an eye  
You have to go to the dentist because your back tooth has a cavity.

学校要我们做健康检查。  
我下周之前一定要去查。  
今天是你要做健康检查的日子。  
我们要去哪一家医院？  
我做健康检查时，要打针吗？  
我们只做简单的检查。  
哇，我儿子/女儿长高很多了。  
你长高了5公分。  
你增加了5公斤。  
你要做牙齿/身高/眼睛的检查。  
因为你的白齿有蛀洞，所以你一定要去看牙医。



Since your eyesight is bad, you need to wear glasses.

Mom, what's my blood type?

You blood type is A.

Let me fill out your medical record for you .

The nurse will take your body temperature.

The nurse will take your blood pressure.

You need to fill this cup with urine. Can you do it

Mom, is everything normal with me ?

Absolutely! You are a healthy child.

They will let you know if there's anything wrong with you.

因为你视力不好，你需要戴眼镜。

妈，我是什么血型？

你是A型。

我来帮你检查记录。

护士会帮你测何体温。

护士也会帮你量血压。

你要用这个杯子装尿液。你可以吗？

妈，我一要都正常吗？

当然！你是个健康的小孩。

如果有什么异常，他们会告诉你的。

## CHAPTER44-04观摩教学

There is an observation class on next

Here's the announcement letter about it .

You have to be in the auditorium first .

I can't wait to see the class.

I'm really sorry, but I don't think I can make it .

Mom, please come on time.

Mom, how did I do? Did I do well?

I was excited/nervous during the class because you were there.

I was so proud of you, Sweetie. You were so well spoken!

I was sad that you couldn't come.

I promise that I will go next time.

下周三我们有一个观摩教学。

这是相关的通知信。

首先你必须到地旁听席。

我等不及去看上课。

很抱歉，我想我去不了。

妈，请准时到。

妈，我怎么样？我做得好吗？

因为你来，我上课的时候好兴奋/紧张。

甜心，我太以你为荣了。你说得太好了。

如果我没去，我感到很伤心。

我答应你下次我一定去。

## CHAPTER44-05各种竞赛

I want to participate in English.

I'm competing in the math competition.

Great! It's great honor to be chosen for that.

How's the preparation for the competition going?

I have to work on some workbooks designed for the contest.

There is a drawing competition. The drawings should be about the books I read.

What book will your drawing be about?

I'm the class/school representative in the essay contest.

I won the gold medal /first prize.

Congratulations! Let me see the medal.

There was an awards ceremony for the competition.

I went up to the front and got a prize as the representative.

I don't want to participate in the contest this time.

I don't think I'm prepared enough.

Participating itself is a meaningful effort.

我想参加各种英文演讲比赛。

我正在数学大赛与人竞争。

太棒了！被选上真的是件光荣的事。

比赛的准备进行得如何了？

我必须去解为比赛所设计的题库。

有个画画比赛，要画的是我读过的书。

你要画什么书？

我代表班上/学校去参加作文比赛。

我得到了金牌/第一名。

恭喜！让我看看你奖章。

这个比赛有个颁奖典礼。

我以代表的身份走到前面去领奖。

我不想参加这次的比赛。

我想我的准备还不够。

参与本身就很有意义。



## CHAPTER44-06家长会谈

There's a parent-teacher conference tomorrow.  
You can come to the classroom by 1 o'clock.  
I'm going to ask how you're doing at school.  
Be sure to look pretty tomorrow, Mom!  
I wonder what the teacher will say to you.  
Where should I wait while you have a talk with my teacher?  
Why don't you go and stay in the library while I talk to your teacher?  
Mom, what did the teacher say?  
The teacher told me that my son is such a model student.  
I was happy to hear that you're getting along with your friends very well.  
She said that you concentrate well in class.  
It's such a relief to hear that you're doing great in school.  
She told me that you are always very active and enthusiastic.  
Your teacher is really nice.  
She told me a lot of nice things.  
She said a lot of nice things about you.  
The teacher told me that you need more confidence.  
She said you are likely to get distracted during class.  
She was worried that you often argue with your friend.  
I'm sorry. I will try not to fight again.

明天有一个家长会谈。  
你一点之前到教室就可以了。  
我要问你在学校的表现如何。  
妈，明天你要打扮得很漂亮。  
我想知道老师会跟你说什么。  
当你跟老师面谈的时候，我要在哪里等你？  
我跟老师面谈时，你何不去图书馆呢？  
妈，老师说了什么？  
老师跟我说我儿子是一个很棒的模范生。  
我很高兴听到你跟朋友们都处得很好。  
她说你在课上很认真。  
听到你在学校表现得不错，我就很安心了。  
她跟我说你一直很积极和热心。  
你的老师很好。  
她跟我说了很多好话。  
老师称赞了你很多事情。  
老师告诉我你需要更多的自信。  
她说你上课的时候好像有点分心。  
她担心你经常跟朋友吵架。  
抱歉，我会试着不再争吵。

## CHAPTER44-07校庆

When is the school's foundation day?  
It's September 5.  
Tomorrow is our school's foundation day.  
What is a school's foundation day?  
It's the date to go to school on the school's foundation day.  
You don't go to school on the school's foundation day.  
I hope that every day is a foundation day.  
How old is your school?  
Since it's the 20th anniversary of our school, it's twenty years old now.  
It's been twenty years since your school was founded.

校庆是什么时候？  
是九月五日。  
明天是我们学校的创校纪念日。  
创校纪念日是什么呢？  
那是你的学校第一天开办的日子。  
校庆的那天，你不用去学校。  
我希望每天都是校庆。  
你们学校成立多久了？  
因为这次是20周年纪念日。  
创校至今，已经过了20年了。

## CHAPTER44-08毕业

It's already graduation.

已经是毕业的时候了。





I can't believe that my son is already graduating!  
Time flies.

It feels like yesterday when you were born.

Congratulations on your graduation/Happy graduation!

What time does the ceremony start?

Your grandma and grandpa will come to your graduation ceremony.

Since it's your graduation day, you have to look great.

Please give these flowers to your teacher.

Don't forget to say thank you to your teacher, too.

I think I should say thank you to your teacher, too.

I almost cried during the graduation ceremony.

I think I will miss my friends/school a lot.

Here are some flowers for you.

Let me take a picture of you with your friends.

Why don't me go to eat some delicious food? It's a special day!

Wow, now you are a middle school student!

You're done a great job in school.

I really appreciate your hard work.

我不敢相信我儿子已经要毕业了。

时间过得真快。

你出生的时候，感觉上还是昨天。

恭喜你毕业了。

毕业典礼是几点？

爷爷奶奶会去参加你的毕业典礼。

因为是你毕业的日子，你要穿得帅一点。

请把这些花送给你的老师。

不要忘记跟老师说声谢谢。

我想我也要跟你老师说谢谢。

毕业典礼的时候，我差点哭了。

我想我会很想我的朋友/学校。

这是送给你的花。

我来帮你跟朋友们照相。

我们去吃好吃的如何？因为这是个特别的日子。

哇，你现在是中学生了。

你在学校表现的不错。

我真的很感谢你的努力。

## CHAPTER45英文幼稚园/补习班

### CHAPTER45-1经常使用的教室英文

Hello, everyone!

How was your weekend ?

Shall we introduce ourselves?

Let me take attendance.

It's time to call the roll.

Did anyone forget to bring their books?

Where did we stop last time?

Okay, let's turn to page 10.

What do we call it English?

Anyone who knows the answer, please raise your hand.

So who wants to share his /her opinion?

Who wants to go first?

Repeat after me.

Listen carefully.

Is everything clear?

Did you guys understand everything?

What do you think?

Did you do your homework.

Please submit your homework by Friday.

Please pass around the worksheets.

大家好！

周末过得怎么样？

我们来自介绍一下吧？

我来点名。

该点名了。

有人忘了带课本吗？

上次我们学到哪儿了？

好，我们翻到第10页。

这个的英文叫做什么呢？

知道答案的人，请举手。

那么谁想分享他/她的意见？

谁要先说呢？

跟着我念一次。

仔细听。

都清楚了吗？

你们都懂了吗？

你怎么想？

你做功课了吗？

请在周五之前交出你的作业。

请把这些练习题传下去。



Will you pass out the handouts to everyone?  
Please pass this along to the next person.  
Please take one and pass the rest back.  
Let's play a game.  
Group yourselves into 4./Make groups of 4, please.  
So, whose turn is it now?  
Okay, this is it for today's lesson.  
Let's stop here for today?  
See you next time.  
Please speak English.  
I forgot to bring the book.  
I haven't finished my homework yet.  
I can't see it clearly.  
I have a question.  
Sir/madam, I need your help.  
Me, me! I want to go first.  
This is too difficult /easy.  
I can't come to school on Monday./I have to miss school on Monday.  
Can I go to the bathe room?  
Can I speak in Chinese?  
How do I say this?  
I don't know what this is.  
Can I get a sticker?

你能把讲义分给所有人吗?  
请把这个给下一个人。  
拿一张，然后把其他的往后传。  
我们来玩个游戏吧。  
你们四个一组。  
那，现在轮到谁了?  
好，这是今天的课就到这里。  
今天就到此结束。  
下次见。  
请说英文。  
我忘记把书带来了。  
我还没有完成我的家庭作业。  
我看不清楚。  
我有疑问。  
先生/女士，我需要帮助。  
我，我！我想先回答。  
这个太难了/容易了。  
我星期一不来。  
我可以去厕所吗?  
我能讲英文吗?  
这个怎么说?  
我不知道这个是什么?  
我可以得到一张贴纸吗?

## chapter45-02英文名字

What is your English name?  
My name is Kelly.  
I got this name from the main character of my favorite story.  
I don't have an English name.  
My name is easy to say.  
Foreigners can say my name easily.  
Your name is hard to pronounce.  
My name is jennifer, but you can call me Jenny.  
Call me Sophia.  
Wow, it's the name of a famous actress.  
How do you spell it?  
It's spelled S,O,P,H,I,A.

你的英文名字是什么?  
我的名字是Kelly.  
我根据我最喜欢的故事的主角取了这个名字。  
我没有英文名字。  
我的名字很好发音。  
外国人能很轻松地叫我的名字。  
你的名字很难发音。  
我的名字是Jennifer，但你可以叫我Jenny。  
叫我Sophia。  
哇，那是知名女星的名字。  
那要怎么拼呢?  
它拼成S. O. P. H. I. A.

## CHAPTER45-03年龄

How old are you?  
I'm 6 year old.  
You are very tall for your age.  
In what year were you born?  
I was born in the year 2005.

你几岁了?  
我六岁了。  
你比同龄人高很多。  
你是哪一年出生的?  
我是2005年出生的。



I was born in February 2003.

I was born in the year of the monkey.

He/She is the same age as me.

I'm a year younger than she /he.

What grade are you in ?

I'm in the second grade.

I'm still 7 years old although I'm already in the first grade.

I was enrolled in elementary school a year early.

我是2003年2月出生的。

我是猴年出生的。

他/她跟我同龄。

我比她/他小一岁。

你是几年级？

我是二年级。

我还只有7岁，但是我已经是一年级了。

我提早一年进去小学。

## CHAPTER45-04老师指示行动

Be quiet, please.

No talking, please.

Be quiet, please.

No talking, please.

Concentrate, please. / Pay attention, please.

Sit properly, please.

Do not joke around./ Stop playing around.

Do not swear.

Please talk in a quiet voice.

No chatting with the person sitting next to you.

Do not play with your hands, please.

Try not to make any noise with your chairs.

It's very dangerous to play around in the stairway.

No running in the hallway! / Do not run in the hallway.

Say hello to an adult in a polite way.

Please spit out the gum.

You should raise your hand before you talk.

First come, first served.

Who raise his/ her hand first? Let's follow the order.

Do not interrupt your friend while he/she is talking.

Please stand in line.

I will give you a warning for hitting your friends.

Please do not waste school supplies.

You should speak politely./ You should speak in a polite way.

Please behave well.

Let's put the trash in the trash can.

Let's conserve our resources and energy.

请安静。

不要说话。

请安静。

不要说话。

请集中注意力。

请坐好。

不要捣蛋。

不要说脏话。

请小声说话。

不要跟旁边的人聊天。

请不要玩你的手。

不要让你的椅子发生噪音。

在楼梯玩是非常危险的。

不要在走廊上跑！

对大人要很有礼貌地打招呼。

请把口香糖吐出来。

你发言之前应该先举手。

先到先用。

谁先举手的？我们要依照顺序。

当你的朋友在发言时，不要打断他/她。

请站成一排。

如果你打朋友的话，我会给你一个警告。

请不要浪费学校用品。

你应该要有礼貌地讲话。

请表现好一点。

我们把垃圾放进垃圾桶内吧。

我们要借阅资源和能源。

## CHAPTER46和外籍老师相谈

### CHAPTER46-01老师-夸奖学生的优点

Minsu concentrates well during class.

民肃上课时很专心。



He is smart/ intelligent.  
He participates well in class.  
He is passionate about study.  
He love learning.  
He has a good memory.  
He is very active and enthusiastic in everything he does.  
He adapts well to a new environment.  
He has a lot of perseverance.  
He has a lot of curiosity.  
He is diligent.  
He works hard at everything./ He is a hard  
He is ahead of other kids his age in everything.  
He is very friendly/ kind to others.  
He is very thoughtful and considerate of others.  
He is humble/ modest.  
He is very active./ He is full of energy.  
He is very positive.  
He is very responsible.  
He has a great personality.  
He gets along well with everyone.  
He has a lot of friends around him.  
He is more mature than his age.

他很聪明。  
他上课时积极参与。  
他对学习很有热情。  
他很爱学习。  
他记忆力很好。  
他做任何事情都很积极和热心。  
他在新的环境适应的很好。  
他很会忍耐。  
他好奇心很强。  
他很勤奋。  
他做什么事情都很努力。  
他在任何方面都比同年龄的小孩快。  
他对其他人都很亲切。  
他对其他人都相当细心体贴。  
他很谦虚。  
他很活泼。  
他很积极。  
他很有责任感。  
他性格很好。  
他跟大家都处得很好。  
他有很多朋友在身边。  
他比他的年纪要成熟。

#### CHAPTER46-01老师-指出学生的缺点

She is stubborn.  
She is very shy.  
She is easily frightened.  
She is timid.  
She is not very patient.  
She is impatient.  
She gets tired/ bored of things very easily.  
She is passive at everything.  
She is afraid of new environments.  
She does not get along with her friends.  
She gets anxious/ nervous when her mother is not around.  
She has some difficulty with math.  
She does not seem to be interested in class.  
She gets easily upset.  
She easily gets mad at even small things.  
She does not show respect to adults.  
She tends to talk a lot./ She is talkative.  
She is too reserved.  
She often hits others.  
She is not considerate of others.  
She has trouble waiting for her turn.

她很倔强。  
她很容易害羞。  
她很容易受到惊吓。  
她很胆小。  
她不是很有耐心。  
她很没有耐心。  
她很容易感到厌烦。  
她做任何事都很消极。  
她很害怕新环境。  
她没能跟朋友们好好相处。  
当妈妈不在身边时，她会很焦虑。  
她对数学有学习障碍。  
她看起来对上课不感兴趣。  
她很容易不开心。  
她在小事上也很容易生气。  
她不尊重大人。  
她的话很多。  
她太沉默了。  
她经常打其他人。  
她不会体谅其他人。  
她不会遵守自己的顺序。





She is easily distracted.  
She does not concentrate well.  
She has trouble staying focused.  
She has a hard time staying on task.  
She does not like simple repeating tasks.  
She often cries.  
She is picky about food.

她很容易不专心。  
她不太能专心。  
她没办法保持注意力。  
她没办法长时间持续做一件事情。  
她不喜欢单纯反复的事情。  
她经常哭。  
她会挑食。

## CHAPTER46-02父母-询问上课态度

How is his behavior in class?  
I was wondering if he listens to you.  
Does he often speak up during class?  
Does he participate actively during class time?  
Does he ever disrupt the class?  
Does he understand the lessons well?  
Does he follow the school rules?  
Is there anything that he needs to improve on?  
Which part of his school life does he need to work on?  
Does he understand you well?  
In your opinion, in which field does he show any interest?  
Does he eat well during lunchtime?  
I want to know if he answers your question well.  
Does he concentrate in class?  
Doesn't he talk with his seatmate too much?

他的上课态度如何?  
我想知道他是否听你的话。  
上课时，他经常发言吗?  
他有积极参与上课吗?  
他曾妨碍你上课吗?  
他有听懂上课内容吗?  
他有遵守学校规定吗?  
有什么地方是他需要去改善的呢?  
在学校生活中，有哪一部分是他应该多花点心思的?  
他很了解你的教法吗?  
在你看来，哪个领域是他感兴趣的?  
午餐时间，他有好好吃饭吗?  
我想知道他是否能好好回答你的问题。  
他上课时专心吗?  
他跟同桌同学没有说太多话吗?

## CHAPTER46-02父母-询问成绩

I'd like to talk about her report card with you.  
Is she showing any progress these days?  
Is she studying hard in class?  
Which subject does she need more effort?  
I'm not sure if her English is good.  
Should she improve her reading and writing  
In what level has she been placed? / In which level does she belong?  
How is her English proficiency?  
Can she read well?  
I want to help her read at home. What should I do?  
Did she do well on her tests?  
Does this score qualify her in the top part of her class?  
Compared to her classmates, how well did she do?  
What is her weakest part?  
Does she fall behind her classmates?  
Does she find it hard to work in this class?

我想跟你谈谈她的成绩单。  
最近她有进步的表现吗?  
她上课时努力学习吗?  
哪一个科目是她需要更努力的?  
我不知道她英文好不好。  
她应该增进她的阅读和写作能力吗?  
她属于哪一个等级?  
她的英文能力如何?  
她能读得很好吗?  
我想在家里帮助她读书，我应该怎样做呢?  
她考试考得好吗?  
她这样的成绩能让她在班上排名前段吗?  
跟同班同学相比，她做到哪个程度了?  
她最弱的是哪一个部分?  
她落后她的同学们吗?  
她上这堂课很辛苦吗?



She seems to have some difficulty with the classwork.

I was wondering if you grade homework.

Do you think she has the potential to be in the top group?

她对作业好像感到很困难。

我想知道作业是否也算成绩。

你认为她有进质优班的潜能吗？

## CHAPTER46-02父母-询问交友状况

Who is he especially close to?

He talks a lot about Minsuo at home.

How is his relationship with others?

Does he get along with his friends?

Does he interact with his friends well?

Does he talk well with his friends?

Does he ever bully his classmates?

Does he not hit his classmates?

Has he ever fought with his other friends?

He said that Minsuo bullies him a lot.

I was wondering if you're aware that someone is bullying my child.

I was wondering if you're aware that some kids are picking on my child.

Are there any new students?

Has any student left school recently?

He once told me that he had a fight with Jiwang.

Did they make up with each other?

He is only hanging around with Jina.

Please help him make friends with his other classmates.

他跟谁特别亲近？

他在家经常讲闵所的事情。

他跟其他人的关系如何？

他跟朋友们相处得好吗？

他跟朋友们互动得好吗？

他跟朋友们谈得来吗？

他经常欺负同学吗？

他曾经打同学吗？

他曾跟其他朋友打过架吗？

他说闵所很会欺负他。

我想知道你是否发觉到有人在欺负我的小孩。

我想知道你是否发觉有些小朋友在欺负我的小孩。

你们班上有新同学吗？

最近，有学生转学了吗？

他曾告诉我他跟继望打过架。

他们跟对方和好了吗？

他只跟吉娜一起玩。

请帮他跟其他的同学做朋友。

## CHAPTER46-02父母-询问准备物品

Are there any materials needed for tomorrow's class?

Does she need to bring anything for Monday's class?

Should she wear gym clothes every Wednesday?

Please write down what my child needs to bring to her class.

What does she need to bring for her field trip?

I brought the supplies that she forgot to bring this morning.

I sent the materials with her. Please check if everything is there.

If you let me know about the materials needed for tomorrow's class, I will make sure that she brings everything.

明天的课程需要什么物品吗？

她星期一的课需要带任何东西去吗？

每周三她都要穿体育服吗？

请写下来我的小孩带什么去上课。

郊游时，她需要带什么去？

我把她早上忘记拿的准备物品带来了。

我送走她时，也让她带着东西了。请确认是否都齐全。

如果你告诉我明天的课需要的准备物品，我会确认她都带齐了。

## CHAPTER46-03感谢信

Thank you for teaching and guiding my child so

He has shown great progress under your excellent care and support.

感谢您这段时间教导我的小孩。

在老师的照顾与支持下，小孩表现了极大的进步。



He enjoys going to kindergarten because he loves you.  
Thank you for your sincere love for my child.  
I will never forget your warm smile for us.  
I wish you all the best and good health in the next year.  
Thank you for teaching me for the entire year.  
You help me in everything very kindly.  
I love to go to school because of you.

因为他很喜欢您，所以很喜欢去幼稚园。  
感谢您对我小孩付出真诚的爱心。  
我不会忘记老师对我们温暖的微笑。  
希望您明年健健康康，一切顺利。  
感谢您一年以来对我的教导。  
老师在任何事情上都很亲切地帮助我。  
我很喜欢去有老师在学校。

#### CHAPTER46-04信件用语

Thank you for taking care of my child.  
Thank you for loving my child.  
I thank you for all the wonderful work you have done with Jina.  
Have a very fun and happy vacation.  
It was all because of your help and support.  
Thank you for working hard for the entire school year.  
I bought a small gift as a sign of appreciation.  
I wish you good health and happiness.  
My child will miss you a lot.  
I'm always grateful for your effort.  
I think that my child is really lucky to have you as a teacher.  
Thank you very much for all your work.  
Because of you, my child could feel at home at school.  
Because of you, his English skills improved a lot.  
I thank you for encouraging him to participate in the class.  
Minsu is really enjoying his school because of you.  
I feel bad for not having talked enough with you because of my limited English.  
I didn't even have a chance to thank you because my English is not that good.  
I wish you all the best in your future endeavors.

感谢您把我的小孩照顾得很好。  
感谢您爱我的小孩。  
我感谢您为吉娜所做的一切美好的事情。  
祝您有个有趣且愉快的假期。  
一切都是因为有老师的帮助和支持。  
谢谢您整个学年辛苦的付出。  
我带了个小礼物，以表我的感谢之意。  
我希望你健康幸福。  
我的小孩将会很想念你。  
我会永远感谢你的努力。  
有你当他的老师，我想我的小孩真的很幸福。  
非常感谢您所做的一切。  
托您的福，我的小孩才可以自在地上学。  
我真的很欣赏您帮助他学习的方法。  
我感谢您鼓励他参与上课。  
托您的福，民肃真的很享受他的学校生活。  
因为我的英文能力有限，不能跟老师讲很多，我感到很可惜。  
因为我的英文不好，所以没能好好地表达出我的感谢。  
我希望你未来所做的事情都会很顺利。

#### CHAPTER46-05祝贺信-教师节

Happy Teacher's Day!  
Congratulations and best wishes to you on this special day.  
It's nice that there is Teacher's Day because it allows me to show my appreciation to you.  
I know it's too late to say this, but I'm always thankful for your work.

教师节快乐!  
在这个特别的日子，恭喜您，也祝福您。  
有教师节真的很好，因为可以让我对您表达感谢之意。  
我知道有点晚了，但是我一直很感谢您的付出。

#### CHAPTER46-05祝贺信-新年

Have a very merry Christmas!

圣诞节快乐!



Wishing you peace, love, and joy this Christmas!  
Wishing you and your family a wonderful Christmas!  
May the Christmas season bring only happiness and joy to you and your loved ones.  
May the joy and happiness of Christmas last throughout the new year!  
I hope that everything goes well in the new year.  
Best wished for a happy and prosperous new year.

希望你这次的圣诞节充满和平、爱和喜乐！

希望您跟家人有个很棒的圣诞节！

希望这个圣诞节带给您跟您所爱的人幸福和喜乐。

希望圣诞节和欢乐和愉快一直延续到新的一年！

我希望在新的一年里您万事顺利。

祝您有一个幸福丰盛的新年。

## CHAPTER46-05祝贺信-道歉信

I'm writing to apologize for my child's misbehavior.  
I'm sorry about the things he said yesterday.  
I'm sorry for his mistakes.  
I'm sorry for the wrongdoing that my child committed.  
I'm sorry for any trouble that my child may have caused you.  
I apologize to you because she obviously did a poor job.  
I found out that she lied to you. I would like to apologize for that.  
I'll have her apologize to you for that.  
I promise I won't let this happen again.  
I found out that she lied to you. I would like to apologize for that.  
I'll have her apologize to you for that.  
I promise I won't let this happen again.

我为我的小孩的无礼写信向您道歉。

我对小孩昨天所说的话表示道歉。

我对他的错误感到很抱歉。

我对我的小孩所犯的错感到很抱歉。

对于我的小孩为你所制造的麻烦，我很抱歉。

因为她确实做错了，我向您道歉。

我发现她对您说谎。我对此道歉。

我会让他对此事向您道歉。

我保证不会让这种事情再发生。

我发现她对您说谎。我对此道歉。

我会让他对此事向您道歉。

我保证不会让这种事情再发生。

\*感谢两棵树群友的辛苦录入：郑州Sunny妈06B10B、欢乐超起点、瞳妈1310G、Henry妈201204、川-烱妈1003B、沪灏妈201201B、宁波季昀妈20111028、seaview、京-京002G、钮钮妈1312G、重紫、Skype妈、浙-奕宝妈-1111G、太原卓卓妈10.07G、浙昊昊爸1110B、简单、苏州Lele13.06G、晴天妈0812B、石家庄冬冬妈1411B、京多多爸11.06B、烟台新新妈1409B、京一帅妈1206B、杭州淇淇201003、深圳臻臻妈/G、沐籽Sophie、北京绅绅妈07B、江苏宸妈1403B、飞尘云泥、鄂Echo10.01G、粤鹤妈0910、常州轩妈07.08B、欣然一笑、溪溪1410G、瑞涵妈1206、苏丹青妈1109双、月妈201201G、石家庄crysty妈妈11.06G、冀岳妞儿妈08G、璞语1105B（排名不分先后）。